DS AUTOMOBILES

HANDBOOK - DS 4

On-line handbook

Select one of the following means of access to view your handbook on-line.

Find your handbook on the DS AUTOMOBILES, website, under "MyDS".

This personal and customisable space allows you to establish direct and special contact with the manufacturer.

If the "MyDS" function is not available on the DS public website for your country, you can find your handbook at the following address:
http://service.dsautomobiles.com

Select:
- the language,
- the vehicle, its body style,
- the print edition of your handbook appropriate for the date of registration of your vehicle.

Scan this code for direct access to your handbook.

Referring to the handbook on-line also gives you access to the latest information available, easily identified by the bookmark, associated with this symbol:

This handbook covers all of the variations in equipment available across the whole DS 4 range. Your vehicle will be fitted with only some of the equipment described in this document, depending on its trim level, version and the specification for the country in which it was sold.

The descriptions and illustrations are given as indications only.
The manufacturer, represented by Automobiles CITROËN reserves the right to modify the technical characteristics, equipment and accessories without having to update this edition of the handbook.

This document forms an integral part of your vehicle. Remember to pass it on to the new owner in the event of the sale of the vehicle.

Key

! safety warning

i additional information

e contributes to the protection of the environment

We thank you for choosing a DS 4.

This handbook has been designed to help you to make the most of your vehicle in all circumstances and in complete safety.

Please take the time to read through it.

Happy motoring!

4 Overview

10 Eco-driving

01 Instruments

14 Instrument panels
16 Rev counter
17 Indicator and warning lamps
33 Indicators
43 Manual test
46 Customising the instrument panel colours
47 Monochrome screen C
51 Touch screen tablet
56 Trip computer

02 Access

64 Remote control key
70 "Keyless Entry and Starting"
80 Doors
81 Boot
83 Alarm
87 Electric windows

03 Ease of use and comfort

92 Front seats
98 Rear seats
99 Steering wheel adjustment
100 Mirrors
104 Manual air conditioning
106 Dual-zone digital air conditioning
110 Front demist - defrost
111 Rear screen demist - defrost
112 Front fittings
114 Panoramic windscreen
115 Centre consoles
117 Front armrest
121 Rear fittings
122 Boot fittings

04 Lighting and visibility

128 Lighting control
132 Automatic illumination of headlamps
133 Welcome lighting
134 Headlamp beam height adjustment
135 Directional lighting
137 Wiper control
138 Automatic rain sensitive wipers
142 Courtesy lamps
143 Interior mood lighting
144 Boot lamp

05 Safety

148 General safety recommendations
149 Hazard warning lamps
149 Horn
150 Emergency or assistance
154 Braking assistance systems
155 Trajectory control systems
157 Front seat belts
161 Airbags
166 Child seats
168 Deactivating the passenger's front airbag
175 ISOFIX child seats
180 Child lock

06 Driving

184 Driving recommendations
186 Starting / Switching off the engine with the key
189 Starting / Switching off the engine with Keyless Entry and Starting
192 Manual parking brake
193 Electric parking brake
197 Manual gearbox
198 Automatic gearbox
202 Hill start assist
203 Gear efficiency indicator
204 Tyre under-inflation detection
206 Stop & Start
209 Lane departure warning system
210 Blind spot monitoring system
213 Memorising speeds
215 Speed limiter
218 Cruise control
221 Parking sensors
223 Reversing camera

07 Practical information

227 Fuel
229 Misfuel prevention (Diesel)
231 Snow chains
232 Very cold climate screen
233 Towbar with quickly detachable towball
238 Towing a trailer
239 Energy economy mode
240 Fitting roof bars
241 Changing a wiper blade
242 Bonnet
243 Petrol underbonnet layout
244 Diesel under the bonnet
245 Checking levels
250 Checking components
253 AdBlue® and SCR system (BlueHDi Diesel)

08 In the event of a breakdown

260 Temporary puncture repair kit
271 Spare wheel
279 Changing a bulb
288 Changing a fuse
292 12 V battery
296 Towing the vehicle
298 Running out of fuel (Diesel)

09 Technical data

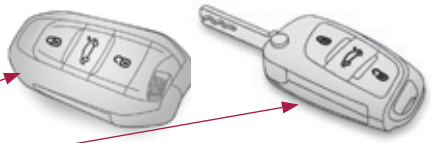
302 Engines
302 Weights
307 Dimensions
308 Identification markings

Audio and telematics

313 7-inch touch screen tablet
377 Audio system

406 Alphabetical index

Exterior



Keyless Entry and Starting 70-77
Remote control 64-69, 77
- opening / closing
- back-up control
- battery
Alarm 83-86

Roof bars 240

Wiper control 137-141
Changing a wiper blade 241

Boot 65, 70, 81-82
Reversing camera 223
AdBlue, topping up 37-42, 254-256

Changing bulbs 285-287
- rear lamps
- 3rd brake lamp
- number plate lamp

Parking sensors 221-222
Towbar 185, 238
Quickly detachable towball 233-237
Towing 296-297

Fuel tank 227-230
Misfuel prevention 238

Door mirrors 100-101
Blind spot sensors 210-212

Lighting control 128-132
Headlamp adjustment 134
Guide-me-home lighting 131, 132
Welcome lighting 133
Directional lighting systems 135-136
Changing bulbs 279-284
- front lamps
- front foglamps
- side repeaters

Doors 78-79, 80
Keyless Entry and Starting 70-77
- opening / closing
- back-up control
Manual child lock 180
Electric windows 87-88

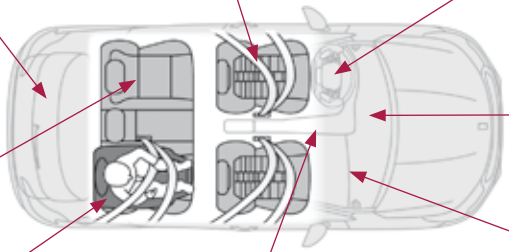
Braking assistance 154-155
Trajectory control 155-156
Tyre under-inflation detection 204-205
Tyre pressures 204, 266, 270, 308
Snow chains 231
Temporary puncture repair kit 260-270
Changing a wheel 271-278
- tools
- removing / refitting

Interior

Front seats 92-97
Seat belts 157-160

Airbags 161-165

Boot fittings 122-124
- rear parcel shelf
- hooks
- 12 V socket
- torch
- lashing eyes



Panoramic windscreen 114
- blinds
- sun visor

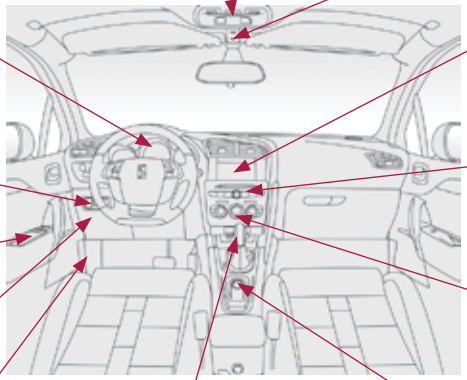
Rear seats 98-99
Rear fittings 121
- 12 V socket
- rear armrest
- ski flap

Child seats 166-179
ISOFIX mountings 175-179

Front fittings 112-113, 115-120
- auxiliary socket / USB port
- 12 V socket
- front armrest
- 230 V / 50 Hz socket
- mats
- storage drawers

Glove box 112
Deactivating the passenger's front airbag 163, 168-170

Instruments and controls



Rear view mirror 102
Courtesy lamps 142

Instrument panels 14-16
Warning lamps 17-32
Indicators 33-42
Manual test 43
Setting buttons 44-46
- trip distance recorder
- dashboard lighting dimmer / black panel
- customisation of dials and screens

Adjusting headlamps 134

Door mirrors 100-101
Electric windows 87-88

Dashboard fuses 288-290

Opening the bonnet 242

Interior mood lighting 143

Monochrome screen 47-50
Seat belt / front passenger airbag warning lamp display 158-159, 163
Reversing camera 223

Audio system 377-404
Setting the date / time 50
Touch screen tablet 51-54, 313-376
Setting the date / time 55

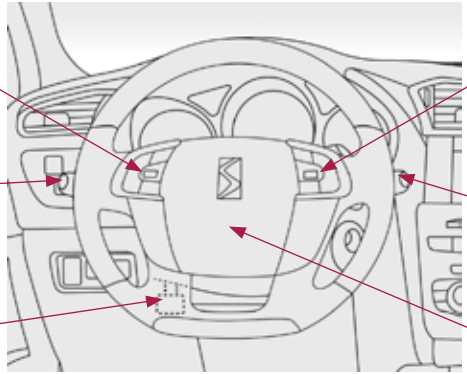
Ventilation 103
Manual air conditioning 104-105
Digital air conditioning 106-109
Front Demisting / Defrosting 110
Demisting / Defrosting the rear screen 111

Ignition switch / Steering lock / Starting with the key 186-188
Steering lock / Starting with the START/ STOP button 186, 189-191

Manual gearbox 197
Automatic gearbox 198-201
Parking brake 192
Electric parking brake 31-32, 193-196

Instruments and controls

Multifunction steering wheel

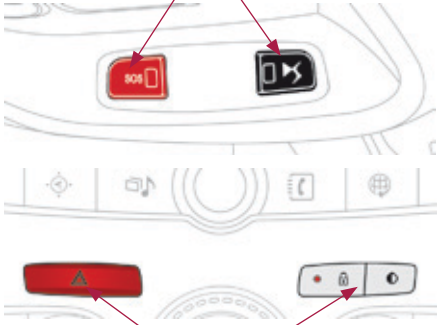


Speed limiter	215-217
Cruise control	218-220
Memorising speeds	213-214
Lighting controls	128-132
Adjusting the steering wheel	99
Audio and telephone controls for the Audio system	379
Audio and telephone controls for the touch screen tablet	316
Wiper controls	137-141
Trip computer	56-60
Horn	149

Instruments and controls

Central switch panels

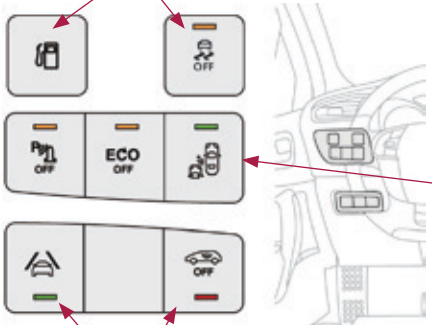
Emergency call	150-153
Assistance call	150-153



Hazard warning lamps	149
Central locking	78-79
Black panel (comfortable night-driving display)	46

Side switch panels

Fuel filler flap	227-230
DSC/ASR system	155-156



Parking sensors	221-222
Stop & Start	206-208
Blind spot sensors	210-212

Lane departure warning system	209
Alarm volumetric monitoring	83-86
Electric child lock	181

Technical data - Maintenance

Petrol engines 302-304
Diesel engines 302, 305-306
Dimensions 307
Identification markings 308

Running out of Diesel fuel 298

Battery 292-295
Energy economy mode 239

Checking levels 245-249
- oil
- brake fluid
- coolant
- power steering fluid
- screenwash / headlamp wash fluid
- additive (Diesel with particle filter)

AdBlue 253-256

Engine compartment fuses 288-289, 291

Changing bulbs 279-287
- front
- rear

Bonnet 242
Petrol underbonnet 243
Diesel underbonnet 244

Checking components 250-252
- battery
- air filter / passenger compartment filter
- oil filter
- particle filter (Diesel)
- brake pads / discs

Eco-driving

Eco-driving is a range of everyday practices that allow the motorist to optimise their fuel consumption and CO_2 emissions.

Optimise the use of your gearbox

With a manual gearbox, move off gently and change up without waiting. During acceleration change up early.

With an automatic gearbox, give preference to automatic mode and avoid pressing the accelerator pedal heavily or suddenly.

The gear efficiency indicator invites you to engage the most suitable gear: as soon as the indication is displayed in the instrument panel, follow it straight away.
For vehicles fitted with an automatic gearbox, this indicator appears only in manual mode.

Drive smoothly

Maintain a safe distance between vehicles, use engine braking rather than the brake pedal, and press the accelerator progressively. These practices contribute towards a reduction in fuel consumption and CO_2 emissions and also help reduce the background traffic noise.

If your vehicle has cruise control, make use of the system at speeds above 25 mph (40 km/h) when the traffic is flowing well.

Control the use of your electrical equipment

Before moving off, if the passenger compartment is too warm, ventilate it by opening the windows and air vents before using the air conditioning. Above 30 mph (50 km/h), close the windows and leave the air vents open.
Remember to make use of equipment that can help keep the temperature in the passenger compartment down (sunroof and window blinds...).

Switch off the air conditioning, unless it has automatic regulation, as soon as the desired temperature is attained.
Switch off the demisting and defrosting controls, if not automatic.
Switch off the heated seat as soon as possible.

Switch off the headlamps and front foglamps when the ambient light level does not require their use.

Avoid running the engine before moving off, particularly in winter; your vehicle will warm up much faster while driving.

As a passenger, if you avoid connecting your multimedia devices (film, music, video game...), you will contribute towards limiting the consumption of electrical energy, and so of fuel.
Disconnect your portable devices before leaving the vehicle.

Limit the causes of excess consumption

Spread loads throughout the vehicle; place the heaviest items in the bottom of the boot, as close as possible to the rear seats.
Limit the loads carried in the vehicle and reduce wind resistance (roof bars, roof rack, bicycle carrier, trailer...). Use a roof box in preference.
Remove roof bars and roof racks after use.

At the end of winter, remove snow tyres and refit your summer tyres.

Observe the recommendations on maintenance

Check the tyre pressures regularly, when cold, referring to the label in the door aperture, driver's side.
Carry out this check in particular:
- before a long journey,
- at each change of season,
- after a long period out of use.

Don't forget the spare wheel and the tyres on any trailer or caravan.

Have your vehicle serviced regularly (engine oil, oil filter, air filter, passenger compartment filter...) and observe the schedule of operations recommended in the manufacturer's service schedule.

With a BlueHDi Diesel engine, if the SCR system is faulty your vehicle becomes polluting; go to a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop without delay to have the emissions of nitrogen oxides brought back to the legal level.

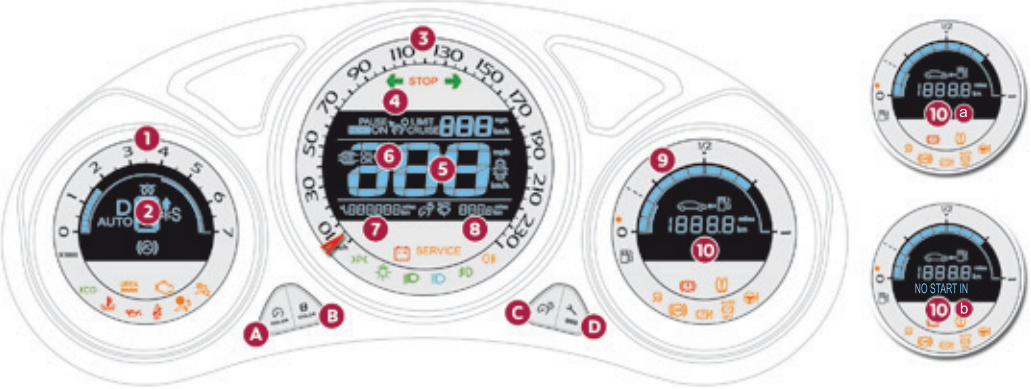
When refuelling, do not continue after the third cut-off of the nozzle to avoid any overflow.

At the wheel of your new vehicle, it is only after the first 1 800 miles (3 000 kilometres) that you will see the fuel consumption settle down to a consistent average.

ON-BOARD INSTRUMENTS

01

Customisable colour instrument panel - Type 1



Dials and screens

1. Rev counter (x 1 000 rpm or tr/min).
2. Gear efficiency indicator or gear lever position and gear for an automatic gearbox.
3. Analogue speedometer (mph or km/h).
4. Cruise control or speed limiter setting.
5. Digital speedometer (mph or km/h).
6. Engine oil level indicator*.
7. Service indicator (miles or km) then, total mileage recorder. These two functions are displayed successively on switching on the ignition. Lighting dimmer setting (when making an adjustment).
8. Trip mileage recorder (miles or km).
9. Fuel gauge and associated low fuel warning lamp.
10. Range (miles or km) for the fuel **(a)** or the AdBlue additive and SCR system **(b)**.

* Depending on version.

Control buttons

A. Dial COLOUR: customisation of the background colour of the dials.
B. Screen COLOUR: customisation of the background colour of the screens.
C. Lighting dimmer (available in night mode).
D. Reset the service indicator or the trip mileage recorder.

Customisable colour instrument panel - Type 2

Dials and screens

1. Rev counter (x 1 000 rpm or tr/min).
2. Gear efficiency indicator or gear lever position and gear for an automatic gearbox.
3. Speedometer (mph or km/h).
4. Central screen.
5. Fuel gauge and associated low fuel level warning lamp.
6. Trip mileage recorder (miles or km).
7. Service spanner (if a service is due or missed),
   total mileage recorder (miles or km).

Control buttons

A. Dial COLOUR: customisation of the background colour of the dials.
B. Screen COLOUR: customisation of the background colour of the screens.
C. Dashboard lighting dimmer (in night mode).
D. Start a manual test (procedure for checking the status of systems and display of vehicle alerts).
Reset service indicator or trip mileage recorder.

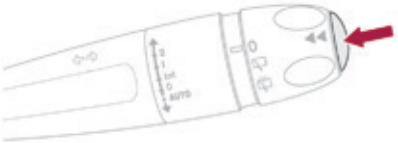
Type 2 instrument panel central screen and controls

Display zones

1. Speed limiter or cruise control settings.
2. Engine oil level indicator*.
   Service indicator.
   Range indicators (miles or km) related to the AdBlue additive and the SCR system (BlueHDi).
   Trip computer.
   Current audio source playing.
   Repeat of the navigation instruction.
   Repeat of the vehicle's speed.

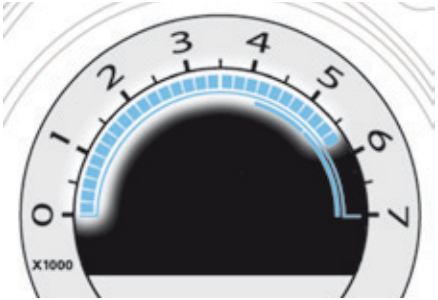
Alert or information messages can also be displayed temporarily.

Control



Press the button on the end of the wiper control stalk to cycle through the different active functions available (trip computer, current audio source, navigation...).

Rev counter



Approaching the maximum engine speed, the bars flash to indicate to you the need to change up a gear.

i When switching the ignition on or off, the speedometer needle and the bars of the rev counter and fuel gauge carry out a full sweep and then return to 0.

* Depending on version.

Indicator and warning lamps

Visual indicators informing the driver that a system is in operation or is switched off (indicator lamp), or has a fault (warning lamp).

When the ignition is switched on

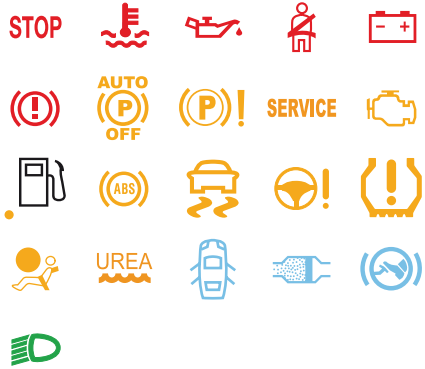
Certain warning lamps come on for a few seconds when the vehicle's ignition is switched on.
When the engine is started, these same warning lamps should go off.
If they remain on, before moving off, refer to the information on the warning lamp concerned.

Associated warnings

Certain warning lamps may come on in one of two modes: fixed (continuous) or flashing.
Only by relating the type of illumination to the operation of the vehicle can it be determined whether the situation is normal or a fault has occurred. In the event of a fault, the illumination of the warning lamp may be accompanied by an audible signal and/or a message.

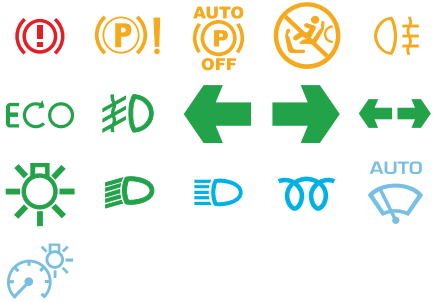
Warning lamps

When the engine is running or the vehicle is being driven, illumination of one of the following warning lamps indicates a fault which requires action on the part of the driver.
Any fault resulting in the illumination of a warning lamp must be investigated further using the associated message.
If you encounter any problems, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.



Operation indicator lamps

If one of the following indicator lamps comes on in the instrument panel and/or instrument panel screen, this confirms that the corresponding system has come into operation.



Deactivation indicator lamps

If one of the following indicator lamps comes on, this confirms that the corresponding system has been switched off intentionally.
This is may be accompanied by an audible signal and the display of a message.

Warning/indicator lamp		is on	Cause	Action/Observations
STOP	**STOP**	fixed, alone or associated with another warning lamp, accompanied by an audible signal and a message in the screen.	Illumination of this warning lamp is associated with a serious fault with the braking system, power steering, engine lubrication system or cooling system.	Stop as soon as it is safe to do so as there is a risk that the engine will cut out while driving. Park, switch off the ignition and contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.
	Maximum coolant temperature	fixed.	The temperature of the cooling system is too high.	Stop as soon as it is safe to do so. Wait until the engine has cooled down before topping-up the level, if necessary. If the problem persists, contact a CITROËN dealer or qualified workshop.
	Engine oil pressure	fixed.	There is a fault with the engine lubrication system.	You must stop as soon it is safe to do so. Park, switch off the ignition and contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.
	Seat belt not fastened / unfastened*	fixed, then flashing, accompanied by an increasing audible signal.	The driver or front passenger has not buckled or has unbuckled their seat belt. At least one rear passenger has unbuckled their seat belt.	Pull on the belt in question and insert the tongue in the buckle. This warning repeats the seat belt information given by the roof console warning lamps.

* Depending on country of sale.

Warning/indicator lamp		is on	Cause	Action/Observations
	Battery charge	fixed.	The battery charging circuit has a fault (dirty or loose terminals, slack or cut alternator belt, ...).	The warning lamp should go off when the engine is started. If it does not go off, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.
	Parking brake	fixed.	The parking brake is applied or not properly released.	Release the parking brake to switch off the warning lamp, keeping your foot on the brake pedal. Observe the safety recommendations. For more information on the manual or electric parking brake, refer to the corresponding section.
	Electric parking brake	flashing.	The electric parking brake is not applied automatically. The application/release is faulty.	You must stop as soon as it is safe to do so. Park on flat level ground, engage a gear (or place the lever in position **P** for an automatic gearbox), switch off the ignition and contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Warning/indicator lamp		is on	Cause	Action/Observations
	Braking	fixed, associated with the STOP warning lamp.	The braking system fluid level has dropped significantly.	You must stop as soon as it is safe to do so. Top up with brake fluid recommended by CITROËN. If the problem persists, have the system checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.
+		fixed, associated with the electric parking brake malfunction warning lamp, if the parking brake is released.	The braking system has a fault.	You must stop as soon as it is safe to do so. Park, switch off the ignition and contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.
+		fixed, associated with the STOP and ABS warning lamps.	The electronic brake force distribution (EBFD) system has a fault.	You must stop as soon as it is safe to do so. Have it checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.
AUTO OFF	**Electric parking brake fault**	fixed.	The electric parking brake has a fault.	Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop without delay. For more information on the **Electric parking brake**, refer to the corresponding section.

Warning/indicator lamp		is on	Cause	Action/Observations
SERVICE	**Service**	temporarily, accompanied by a message.	One or more minor faults for which there is no specific warning lamp have been detected.	Identify the cause of the fault using the message displayed in the screen. You can deal with some problems yourself, such as a door open or the start of saturation of the particle filter (as soon as the traffic conditions allow, regenerate the filter by driving at a speed of at least 40 mph (60 km/h), until the warning lamp goes off). For any other problems, such as a fault with the tyre under inflation detection system, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.
		fixed, accompanied by a message.	One or more major faults for which there is no specific warning lamp have been detected.	Identify the cause of the fault using the message displayed in the screen; you must then contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.
		fixed, associated with the flashing and then fixed display of the service indicator spanner.	The servicing interval has been exceeded.	Only on BlueHDi Diesel versions. Your vehicle must be serviced as soon as possible.
	Engine self-diagnosis system	flashing.	The engine management system has a fault.	Risk of destruction of the catalytic converter. Have it checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.
		fixed.	The emission control system has a fault.	The warning lamp should go off when the engine is started. If it does not go off, contact a CITROËN dealer or qualified workshop without delay.

Warning/indicator lamp		is on	Cause	Action/Observations
	Low fuel level	fixed, accompanied by and audible signal and a message.	When it first comes on there remains approximately **6 litres** of fuel in the tank. At this point, you begin to use the fuel reserve.	Refuel as soon as possible to avoid running out of fuel. Until sufficient fuel is added, this warning lamp will come on every time the ignition is switched on, accompanied by an audible signal and a message. This audible signal and message are repeated with increasing frequency as the fuel level drops towards **"0"**. Fuel tank capacity: approximately **60 litres**. Never continue to drive until you run out of fuel, as this could damage the emission control and injection systems.
	Anti-lock Braking System (ABS)	fixed.	The anti-lock braking system has a fault.	The vehicle retains conventional braking. Drive carefully at reduced speed and contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop without delay.
	Dynamic stability control (DSC/ASR)	flashing.	Regulation by the system is active.	The system optimises traction and improves the directional stability of the vehicle.
		fixed, associated with illumination of the indicator lamp in the deactivation button, accompanied by an audible signal and a message.	The DSC/ASR or hill start assist system has a fault.	Have it checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Warning/indicator lamp		is on	Cause	Action/Observations
	Power steering	fixed.	The power steering has a fault.	Drive carefully at reduced speed. Have it checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.
	Under-inflation	fixed.	The pressure in one or more wheels is too low.	Check the pressure of the tyres as soon as possible. This check should preferably be carried out when the tyres are cold.
+ SERVICE		flashing then fixed, accompanied by the Service warning lamp.	The tyre pressure monitoring system has a fault or no sensor is detected on one of the wheels.	Under-inflation detection is not assured. Have the system checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.
	Airbags	on temporarily.	This warning lamp comes on for a few seconds when you turn on the ignition, then goes off.	This warning lamp should go off when the engine is started. If it does not go off, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.
		fixed.	One of the airbag or seat belt pretensioner systems has a fault.	Have them checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Warning/indicator lamp		is on	Cause	Action/Observations
UREA	**AdBlue® (BlueHDi Diesel)**	fixed, on switching on the ignition, accompanied by an audible signal and a message indicating the remaining driving range.	The remaining driving range is between 350 miles (600 km) and 1500 miles (2400 km).	Top-up the AdBlue® as soon as possible or go to a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.
UREA + SERVICE		flashing, associated with the SERVICE warning lamp, accompanied by an audible signal and a message indicating the remaining driving range.	The remaining driving range is between 0 and 350 miles (600 km).	You must **top-up the** AdBlue® to **avoid a breakdown** or go to a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.
		flashing, associated with the SERVICE warning lamp, accompanied by an audible signal and a message indicating that starting is prevented.	The AdBlue® tank is empty: the starting inhibition system required by legislation prevents starting of the engine.	To be able to start the engine, you must **top-up** the AdBlue® or call on a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop. It is **essential** to add at least 3.8 litres of AdBlue® to the fluid tank

i For topping-up or for more information on **AdBlue® and the SCR system**, refer to the corresponding section.

Warning/indicator lamp		is on	Cause	Action/Observations
UREA + SERVICE +	**SCR emissions control system (BlueHDi Diesel)**	fixed, on switching on the ignition, associated with the SERVICE and engine diagnostic warning lamps, accompanied by an audible signal and a message.	A fault with the SCR emissions control system has been detected.	This alert disappears once the exhaust emissions return to normal levels.
		flashing, on switching on the ignition, associated with the SERVICE and engine diagnostic warning lamps, accompanied by an audible signal and a message indicating the remaining driving range.	After confirmation of the fault with the emissions control system, you can drive for up to 650 miles (1 100 km) before the engine starting inhibition system is triggered.	Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop **without delay**, **to avoid a breakdown**.
		flashing, on switching on the ignition, associated with the SERVICE and engine diagnostic warning lamps, accompanied by an audible signal and a message.	You have exceeded the authorised driving limit following confirmation of a fault with the emissions control system: the engine starting inhibition system prevents starting of the engine.	To be able to start the engine, you **must** call on a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Warning/indicator lamp		is on	Cause	Action/Observations
	Electric parking brake	fixed.	The electric parking brake is applied.	Release the electric parking brake to switch off the warning lamp: with your foot on the brake pedal, pull the electric brake control. Observe the safety recommendations. For more information on the **Electric parking brake**, refer to the corresponding section.
AUTO OFF	**Deactivation of the automatic functions of the electric parking brake**	fixed.	The "automatic application" (on switching off the engine) and "automatic release" functions are deactivated or faulty.	Activate the function (depending on the country of sale) via the vehicle configuration menu or contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.
	Passenger's airbag system	fixed in the seat belt and passenger's front airbag warning lamps display.	The control switch, located in the glove box, has been placed in the **"ON"** position. The passenger's front airbag is activated.	In this case, do not install a rearward facing child seat on this seat. Move the control switch to the **"OFF"** position to deactivate the passenger's front airbag. In this case, you can install a rearward facing child seat, unless there is a fault with the airbags (airbag warning lamp on).
	Passenger's airbag system	fixed in the instrument panel and/or seat belt and front passenger's airbag warning lamps display.	The control switch, located in the glove box, is set to the **OFF** position. The passenger's front airbag is deactivated.	You can install a rearward facing child seat, unless there is a fault with the airbags (airbag warning lamp on). Set the control to the **"ON"** position to activate the passenger's front airbag. In this case, do not install a rearward facing child seat on this seat.

Warning/indicator lamp		is on	Cause	Action/Observations
	Rear foglamps	fixed.	The rear foglamps have been switched on using the ring on the lighting control stalk.	Turn the ring on the lighting control stalk rearwards to switch off the rear foglamps.
ECO	**Stop & Start**	fixed.	When the vehicle stops (red lights, traffic jams, ...) the Stop & Start system has put the engine into STOP mode.	The warning lamp goes off and the engine restarts automatically in START mode, as soon as you want to move off.
		flashes for a few seconds, then goes off.	STOP mode is temporarily unavailable, or START mode is invoked automatically.	For more information on **Stop & Start**, refer to the corresponding section.
	Front foglamps	fixed.	The front foglamps are switched on using the ring on the lighting control stalk.	Turn the ring on the lighting control stalk rearward twice to switch off the front foglamps.
	Left-hand direction indicator	flashing with buzzer.	The lighting stalk has been pushed down.	
	Right-hand direction indicator	flashing with buzzer.	The lighting stalk has been pushed up.	
	Hazard warning lamps	flashing with audible signal.	The hazard warning lamps switch, located on the dashboard, has been operated.	The left-hand and right-hand direction indicators and their associated indicator lamps flash simultaneously.

Warning/indicator lamp		is on	Cause	Action/Observations
	Sidelamps	fixed.	The lighting stalk is in the "Sidelamps" position.	
	Directional headlamps	flashing.	The directional headlamps system has a fault.	Have it checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.
	Dipped beam headlamps	fixed.	The lighting stalk is in the "Dipped beam headlamps" position or in the "AUTO" position in conditions of low light.	
	Main beam headlamps	fixed.	The lighting stalk is pulled towards you.	Pull the stalk again to return to dipped beam headlamps.
	Foot on the brake pedal	fixed.	With an automatic gearbox, you have forgotten to press the brake pedal to come out of the **P** postion.	With the engine running, before releasing the parking brake you must press the brake pedal to unlock the the automatic gear selector lever and come out of the **P** position.

Warning/indicator lamp		is on	Cause	Action/Observations
	Door(s) open	fixed, associated with a message identifying the door, if the speed is below 6 mph (10 km/h).	A door or the boot is still open.	Close the door or boot.
		fixed, associated with a message identifying the door, together with an audible signal if the speed is above 6 mph (10 km/h).		
	Particle filter (Diesel)	fixed, accompanied by an audible signal message on the risk of blockage of the particle filter.	This indicates that the particle filter is starting to become saturated.	As soon as driving conditions allow, regenerate the filter by driving at a speed of at least 35 mph (60 km/h) until the warning lamp goes off.
		fixed, accompanied by an audible signal and a message that the particle filter additive level is too low.	This indicates the low level of the additive reservoir.	Have the reservoir topped-up as soon as possible by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

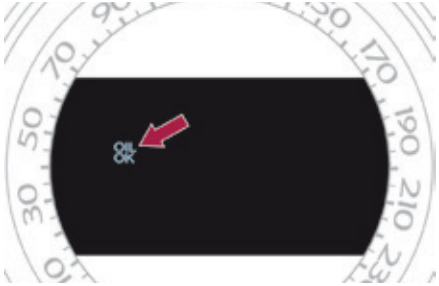
Warning/indicator lamp		is on	Cause	Action/Observations
	Diesel engine pre-heating	fixed.	When the ignition is switched on with a key in the ignition switch or a starting instruction made using the "**START/STOP**" button, the engine temperature makes engine pre-heating necessary.	The period of illumination of the indicator lamp is determined by the ambient conditions (up to about thirty seconds in severe winter conditions). With an ignition switch and key, wait until the indicator lamp goes off before starting. With Keyless Entry and Starting, once it goes off, starting is immediate, on condition that the brake pedal remains pressed with an automatic gearbox, or the clutch pedal is pressed fully down with a manual gearbox. If the engine does not start, switch the ignition off and then on, wait until the indicator lamp goes off again, then start the engine.
AUTO	**Automatic wiping**	fixed.	The wiper control stalk has been pushed down. Automatic front wiping is activated.	To deactivate automatic wiping, push the wiper control stalk down again or put the wiper control stalk in another position.
	Lighting dimmer	fixed.	The lighting dimmer is making an adjustment.	You can adjust the level of illumination of the instruments between 1 and 16.

Electric parking brake

Warning lamps	Status	Causes	Actions / Observations
AUTO (P) OFF SERVICE	They are on and accompanied by the displaying of the message **"Parking brake fault"**.	Manual release of the electric parking brake is only available by pressing the accelerator pedal and releasing the electric parking brake lever. The hill start assistance is not available.	The automatic functions and manual application are still available. Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.
SERVICE	They are on and accompanied by the displaying of the message **"Parking brake fault"**.	The automatic functions are deactivated. The hill start assistance is not available.	The electric parking brake can only be used manually. Contact a CITROËN dealer or aqualified workshop.
(P)! AUTO (P) OFF SERVICE (!)	They are on and accompanied by the displaying of the message **"Parking brake fault"**.	The automatic functions are deactivated. The hill start assistance is not available.	To apply the electric parking brake: - immobilise the vehicle and switch off the ignition. - pull the control for at least 5 seconds or until application is complete. - switch on the ignition and check the switching on of the electric parking brake warning lamps. The application is slower than during normal operation. To release the electric parking brake: - switch on the ignition. - pull the control and hold it for approximately 3 seconds then release it. If the braking warning lamp is flashing or if the warning lamps do not come on with the ignition on, these procedures will not work. Place the vehicle in a safe condition (on level ground, gear engaged) and have it checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Warning lamps	Status	Causes	Actions / Observations
	They are on and accompanied by the displaying of the message **"Parking brake fault"**.	Only the automatic application when the engine is switched off and automatic release on acceleration functions are available. Manual application / release of the electric parking brake and the emergency braking are not available.	Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.
	It is on.	A discharged battery no longer permits use of the electric parking brake.	Stop as soon as the traffic conditions permit. Place the vehicle in a safe condition (on level ground, gear engaged, chocks under the wheels). Apply the electric parking brake before switching off your engine. Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Engine oil level indicator*

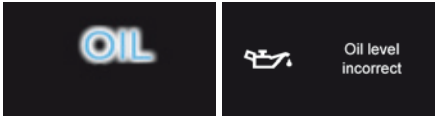


On versions fitted with an electric oil level indicator, the state of the engine oil level is displayed in the instrument panel for a few seconds, at the same time as the servicing information.

> i The level read will only be correct if the vehicle is on level ground and the engine has been off for more than 30 minutes.

Oil level correct

Oil level incorrect



This is indicated by the flashing of "**OIL**" or the display of a message, accompanied by the service warning lamp and an audible signal.
If the low oil level is confirmed by a check using the dipstick, the level must be topped up to avoid damage to the engine.
For more information on **Checking the levels** and in particular the oil level, refer to the corresponding section.

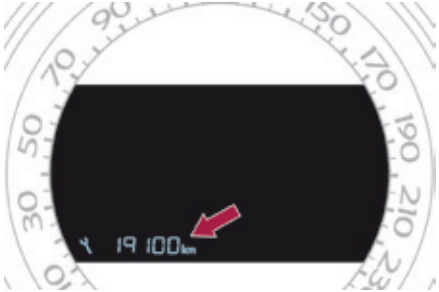
Oil level indicator fault

This is signalled by the flashing of "**OIL--**" or the display of a message.
Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

In the event of a fault with the electric indicator, the oil level is no longer monitored.
If the system is faulty, you must check the engine oil level using the manual dipstick located under the bonnet.
For more information on **Checking the levels** and in particular the oil level, refer to the corresponding section.

* Depending on version.

Service indicator



System that informs the driver when the next service is due, in accordance with the manufacturer's service schedule.
The point at which the service is due is calculated from the last service indicator zero reset, according to the distance covered and the time elapsed since the last service.
For BlueHDi Diesel versions, the level of deterioration of the engine oil may also be taken into account, depending on the country of sale.

More than 1800 miles (3000 km) remain before the next service is due

When the ignition is switched on, no service information appears in the instrument panel central screen.

Between 600 miles (1 000 km) and 1800 miles (3 000 km) remain before the next service is due

For a few seconds after the ignition is switched on, the spanner symbolising the service operations comes on. The distance recorder display line or a specific message in the instrument panel central screen indicates the distance remaining before the next service is due.
For example: 1 700 miles (2 800 km) remain before the next service is due.
For a few seconds after the ignition is switched on, the screen indicates:

A few seconds after the ignition is switched on, **the spanner goes off**; the distance recorder resumes its normal operation. The screen then indicates the total and trip distances.

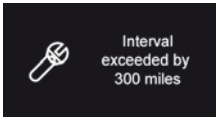
Less than 600 miles (1 000 km) remain before the next service is due

Example: 560 miles (900 km) remain before the next service is due.
For a few seconds after the ignition is switched on, the screen indicates:

A few seconds after the ignition is switched on, the distance recorder resumes its normal operation. **The spanner remains on** to indicate that a service must be carried out soon.

Service overdue

For a few seconds after the ignition is switched on, **the spanner flashes** to indicate that the service must be carried out as soon as possible.
Example: the service is overdue by 180 miles (300 km).
For a few seconds after the ignition is switched on, the screen indicates:



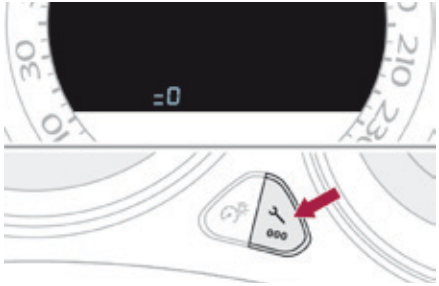
A few seconds after the ignition is switched on, the distance recorder resumes its normal operation. **The spanner remains on.**

For BlueHDi Diesel versions, this alert is also accompanied by the fixed illumination of the Service warning lamp when the ignition is switched on.

i The spanner comes on if you have exceeded the specified time interval since the last service, as indicated in the manufacturer's service schedule.
For BlueHDi Diesel versions, the spanner may also come on before the normal service point, according to the level of deterioration of the engine oil, which depends on the driving conditions in which the vehicle is used.

Service indicator zero reset

After each service, the service indicator must be reset to zero.



If you have carried out the service on your vehicle yourself:

- ☞ switch off the ignition,
- ☞ press and hold the **".../000"** trip distance recorder zero reset button,
- ☞ switch on the ignition; the distance recorder display begins a countdown,
- ☞ when the screen indicates **"=/0"** and the spanner disappears, release the button.

i This operation cannot be carried out while a reminder of the servicing information is being displayed. Following this operation, if you wish to disconnect the battery, lock the vehicle and wait at least five minutes for the zero reset to be registered.

Recalling the service information (type 2 instrument panel)

You can recall the service information at any time.

- ☞ Briefly press the **".../000"** trip distance recorder zero reset button.
  The service information is displayed for a few seconds in the central screen of the type 2 instrument panel.

AdBlue® fluid range indicators

Once the AdBlue® tank is on reserve or after detection of a fault with the SCR emissions control system, when the ignition is switched on an indicator displays an estimate of the distance that can be covered, the range, before engine starting is prevented.
In the event of simultaneous system fault and low AdBlue® level, the shortest range figure is the one displayed.

Range greater than 1 500 miles (2 400 km)
When the ignition is switched on, no information on range is displayed automatically in the instrument panel.

With the type 2 instrument panel, pressing this button temporarily displays the driving range.

Above 3 000 miles (5 000 km), the value is not specified.

In the event of the risk of non-starting related to a lack of AdBlue®

! The engine start prevention system required by regulations is activated automatically once the AdBlue® tank is empty.

Type 1 instrument panel

Remaining range between 350 and 1 500 miles (600 and 2 400 km)

When switching on the ignition, the UREA warning lamp comes on, accompanied by an audible signal and the temporary display in the instrument panel of "NO START IN" and a distance, indicating the remaining range expressed in miles or kilometres before engine starting is prevented (e.g. "NO START IN 900 miles" means that starting will be prevented in 900 miles).
When driving, the message is displayed every 190 miles (300 km) until the AdBlue tank has been topped up.
The reserve level has been reached; it is recommended that the tank be topped up as soon as possible.
It is recommended that no more than 10 litres of AdBlue® are added.
For more information on **AdBlue® and the SCR system**, and in particular on topping up, refer to the corresponding section.

Remaining range between 0 and 350 miles (0 and 600 km)

When switching on the ignition, the SERVICE warning lamp comes on and the UREA warning lamp flashes, accompanied by an audible signal and the temporary display in the instrument panel of "NO START IN" and a distance, indicating the remaining range expressed in miles or kilometres before engine starting is prevented (e.g. "NO START IN 180 miles" means that starting will be prevented in 180 miles).
When driving, the message is displayed every 30 seconds until the AdBlue tank has been topped up.
It is essential to top up the tank as soon as possible before it is completely empty; otherwise, the engine may no longer start.
For more information on **AdBlue® and the SCR system**, and in particular on topping up, refer to the corresponding section.

Breakdown related to a lack of AdBlue®

When switching on the ignition, the SERVICE warning lamp comes on and the UREA warning lamp flashes, accompanied by an audible signal and the temporary display in the instrument panel of "NO START IN" and 0 km or miles ("NO START IN 0 miles" means that starting is prevented).
The AdBlue tank is empty: the system required by regulations prevents engine starting.

! To be able to start the engine, it is essential to add at least 3.8 litres of AdBlue® to the tank.
For more information on **AdBlue® and the SCR system**, and in particular on topping up, refer to the corresponding section.

Type 2 instrument panel

Remaining range between 350 and 1500 miles (600 and 2 400 km)

When switching on the ignition, the UREA warning lamp comes on, accompanied by an audible signal and the display of a message (e.g. "Top-up emissions additive: Starting prevented in 900 miles") indicating the remaining range expressed in miles or kilometres.
When driving, the message is displayed every 200 miles (300 km) until the fluid has been topped-up.
Go to a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop to have the AdBlue® topped-up.
You can also top-up the tank yourself.
For more information on **AdBlue® and the SCR system**, and in particular on topping-up the AdBlue®, refer to the corresponding section.

Remaining range between 0 and 350 miles (0 and 600 km)

When switching on the ignition, the SERVICE warning lamp comes on and the UREA warning lamp flashes, accompanied by an audible signal and the display of a message (e.g. "Top-up emissions additive: Starting prevented in 350 miles") indicating the remaining range expressed in miles or kilometres.
When driving, the message is displayed every 30 seconds until the fluid has been topped-up.
Go to a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop to have the AdBlue® topped-up.
You can also top-up the tank yourself.
Otherwise you will not be able to restart your engine.

For more information on **AdBlue® and the SCR system**, and in particular on topping-up the AdBlue®, refer to the corresponding section.

Breakdown related to a lack of AdBlue®

When switching on the ignition, the SERVICE warning lamp comes on and the UREA warning lamp flashes, accompanied by an audible signal and the display of the message "Top-up emissions additive: Starting prevented".
The AdBlue® tank is empty: the system required by regulations prevents engine starting.

! To be able to start the engine, we recommend that you call on a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop for the top-up required.
If you carry out the top-up yourself, it is essential to add at least 3.8 litres of AdBlue® to the tank.

In the event of a fault with the the SCR emissions control system

Type 1 instrument panel

! A system that prevents engine starting is activated automatically from 650 miles (1 100 km) after confirmation of a fault with the SCR emissions control system. Have the system checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop as soon as possible.

In the event of the detection of a fault

The UREA, SERVICE and diagnostic warning lamps comes on, accompanied by an audible signal and the display of the message "Emissions fault".
The alert is triggered when driving, when the fault is detected for the first time, then when switching on the ignition for subsequent journeys, while the fault persists.

i If it is a temporary fault, the alert disappears during the next journey, after a self diagnosis test of the SCR emissions control system.

During an authorised driving phase (between 650 miles and 0 miles) (1 100 km and 0 km)

If a fault with the SCR system is confirmed (after 30 miles (50 km) covered with the permanent display of the message signalling a fault), the SERVICE and engine diagnostic warning lamps come on and the UREA warning lamp flashes, accompanied by an audible signal and the temporary display in the instrument panel of "NO START IN" and a distance, indicating the remaining range express in miles or kilometres before engine starting is prevented - (e.g.: "NO START IN 350 miles" means "Starting will be prevented in 350 miles").

While driving, this display appears every 30 seconds while the fault with the SCR system persists.
The alert is repeated when switching on the ignition.
You should go to a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop as soon as possible. Otherwise, you will not be able to restart your engine.

In the event of a fault with the SCR emissions control system

Type 2 instrument panel

Starting prevented

Every time the ignition is switched on, the SERVICE and engine diagnostic warning lamps come on and the UREA warning lamp flashes, accompanied by the temporary display of "NO START IN" and 0 miles or kilometres - ("NO START IN 0 miles" means "Starting prevented").

! You have exceeded the authorised driving limit: the starting prevention system inhibits engine starting.

To be able to start the engine, you must call on a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

! A system that prevents engine starting is activated automatically from 650 miles (1 100 km) after confirmation of a fault with the SCR emissions control system. Have the system checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop as soon as possible.

In the event of the detection of a fault

The UREA, SERVICE and diagnostic warning lamps comes on, accompanied by an audible signal and the display of the message "Emissions fault".
The alert is triggered when driving when the fault is detected for the first time, then when switching on the ignition for subsequent journeys, while the fault persists.

i If it is a temporary fault, the alert disappears during the next journey, after self-diagnosis of the SCR system.

During an authorised driving phase (between 650 miles and 0 miles) (1 100 km and 0 km)

If a fault with the SCR system is confirmed (after 30 miles (50 km) covered with the permanent display of the message signalling a fault), the SERVICE and engine diagnostic warning lamps come on and the UREA warning lamp flashes, accompanied by an audible signal and the display of a message (e.g.: "Emissions fault: Starting prevented in 150 miles") indicating the remaining range express in miles or kilometres.
While driving, the message is displayed every 30 seconds while the fault with the SCR system persists.
The alert is repeated when switching on the ignition.
You should go to a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop as soon as possible.
Otherwise, you will not be able to restart your engine.

Starting prevented

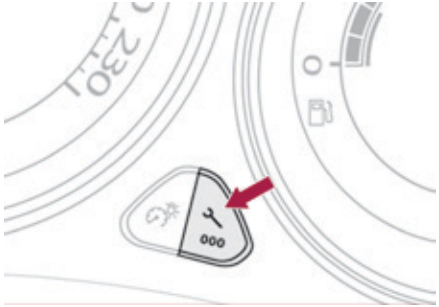
Every time the ignition is switched on, the SERVICE and engine diagnostic warning lamps come on and the UREA warning lamp flashes, accompanied by an audible signal and the display of the message "Emissions fault: Starting prevented".

! You have exceeded the authorised driving limit: the starting prevention system inhibits engine starting.

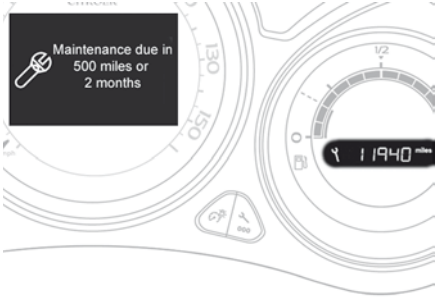
To be able to start the engine, you must call on a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Manual test in the type 2 instrument panel central screen

This function allows you to check the status of the vehicle systems (reminder of the "activated" / "deactivated" status of the configurable functions) and to display the alerts log.



☞ With the engine running, to start a manual test, briefly press the **".../000"** button on the instrument panel.



The following information appears successively in the instrument panel central screen:

- engine oil level indicator,
- service indicator,
- current warnings and alert messages, if any,
- the range for the AdBlue additive and the SCR system for BlueHDi Diesel versions,
- status of configurable functions.

i This information also appears every time the ignition is switched on (automatic test).

Distance recorders

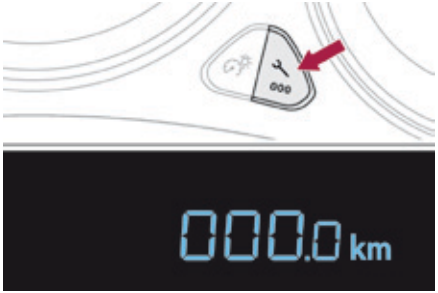
The total and trip distances are displayed for thirty seconds when the ignition is switched off, when the driver's door is opened and when the vehicle is locked or unlocked.

Total distance recorder

Measures the total distance travelled by the vehicle since its first registration.

Trip distance recorder

Measures the distance travelled since it was last reset to zero by the driver.



☞ With the ignition on, press and hold this button until zeros appear.

Lighting dimmer

Permits manual adjustment of the brightness of the instruments and controls to suit the ambient light level. Only operates when the vehicle lighting is on in night mode.

Activation

- Press this button to change the brightness of the instruments and controls.
- When the lighting reaches the minimum setting, release this button, then press again to increase it.

or

- When the lighting reaches the maximum setting, release this button, then press again to reduce it.
- When the lighting reaches the level of brightness required, release this button.

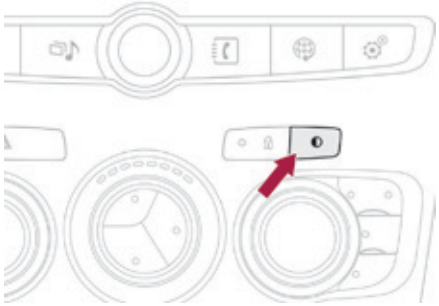
This indicator and the lighting value appear in the middle of the instrument panel during adjustment to show the setting from the 16 levels available.

Deactivation

When the vehicle lighting is off, or in day mode (daytime running lamps on), pressing the button does not have any effect.

Black panel (comfortable night driving display)

When driving at night, it allows certain instrument panel displays to be switched off so as to reduce visual fatigue for the the driver.
The essential driving information, such as the vehicle speed, warning lamps, automatic gearbox gear selected, cruise control or speed limiter information, remains on in the instrument panel.



◐

- With the vehicle lighting on, press this button again to activate the function.
- Press this button again to deactivate the function.

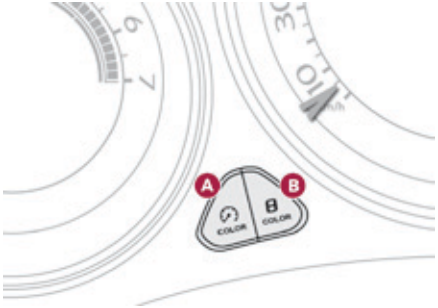
Touch screen tablet

You can returns to the current display at any time by pressing the black screen or one of the menu buttons.

In automatic illumination of headlamps mode, the "Black panel" function is automatically deactivated once the ambient light level attains an adequate level.

Customising the instrument panel colours

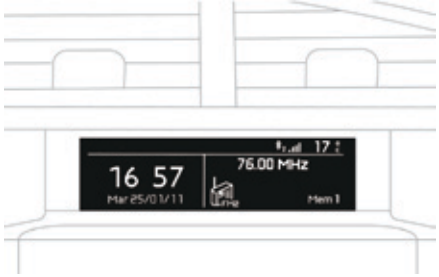
In the instrument panel, you can change the colour of its dials independently from that of the display screens.
There are five colour variants, from white to blue.



- Press the appropriate button as many times as needed to obtain the desired colour.
  A. For the dials.
  B. For the display screens.

Monochrome screen C

Displays in the screen



This displays the following information:
- time,
- date,
- ambient temperature (this flashes if there is a risk of ice),
- parking sensor information,
- current audio source,
- telephone or Bluetooth system information,
- trip computer,
- alert messages,
- settings menus for the screen and the vehicle equipment.

Controls

From the control panel of your audio system, you can press:
- button **A** to chooses between the display of audio information in full screen or the shared display of audio and trip computer information,
- the **"MENU"** button for access to the **main menu**,
- the "▲" or "▼" buttons to scroll through the items on the screen,
- the "◀◀" or "▶▶" buttons to change a setting value,
- the **"OK"** button to confirm,

or
- the **"Back"** button to abandon the operation in progress.

Main menu

- Press the **"MENU"** button for access to the **main menu**:
  - "Multimedia",
  - "Telephone",
  - "Trip computer",
  - "Bluetooth connection",
  - "Personalisation-configuration",
- Press the "◀◀" or "▶▶" button to select the menu required, then confirm by pressing the **"OK"** button.

"Multimedia" menu

With the audio system switched on, this menu allows you to activate or deactivate the functions associated with use of the radio (RDS, DAB / FM auto tracking, RadioText (TXT) display) or to choose the media play mode (Normal, Random, Random all, Repeat).
For more information on the "Multimedia" menu, refer to the **Audio and telematics** section.

"Telephone" menu

With the audio system switched on, this menu allows you to make a call or view the various telephone directories.
For more information on the "Telephone" menu, refer to the **Audio and telematics** section.

"Trip computer" menu

This menu allows you to view information on the status of the vehicle.

Warning log

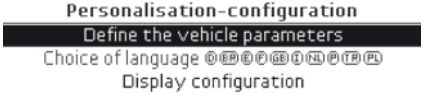
This summarises the status and warning messages for systems (active, not active or faulty), displaying them in succession in the multifunction screen.

- ☞ Press the **"MENU"** button for access to the main menu.
- ☞ Press the arrows, then the **"OK"** button to select the "**Trip computer**" menu.
- ☞ In the "**Trip computer**" menu, select the "Warning log" line and confirm.

"Bluetooth connection" menu

With the audio system on, this menu allows a Bluetooth device (telephone, media player) to be connected or disconnected and the connection mode to be defined (hands-free, playing audio files).
For more information on the "Bluetooth connection" menu, refer to the **Audio and telematics** section.

"Personalisation-configuration" menu



This menu gives access to the following functions:
- "Define the vehicle parameters",
- "Choice of language",
- "Display configuration",

Define the vehicle parameters

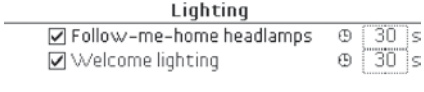
This menu allows you to activate or deactivate the following equipment, classified in different categories:
For more information on any of this equipment, refer to the corresponding section.
- "Access to the vehicle":
  - "Plip action" (Selective unlocking of the driver's door),
  - "Unlocking boot only" (Selective unlocking of the boot).
- "Driving assistance":
  - "Parking brake automatic" (Automatic electric parking brake),
  - "Rear wipe in reverse gear" (Rear wiper coupled to reverse gear),
  - "Speeds memorised" (Memorising speeds).
- "Vehicle lighting":
  - "Directional headlamps" (Main / additional directional lighting),
- "Interior lighting":
  - "Follow-me-home headlamps" (Automatic operation of headlamps after switching off the ignition),
  - "Welcome lighting" (Exterior and interior welcome lighting).

For example: setting of the duration of the "follow-me-home" lighting

☞ Press the "◀◀" or "▶▶" buttons, to select the "Define the vehicle parameters" menu, then the "**OK**" button.

☞ Press the "▲" or "▼" buttons to select the "Interior lighting" line, then the **"OK"** button; then follow the same procedure to select the "Follow-me-home headlamps" line.

☞ Press the "◀◀" or "▶▶" buttons to set the value required (15, 30 or 60 seconds), then press the **"OK"** button to confirm.



☞ Press the "▲" or "▼" buttons, then the **"OK"** button to select the **"OK"** box and confirm or press the **"Back"** button to cancel.

Choice of language

Once this menu has been selected, you can choose the language used by the display from a pre-defined list.

Display configuration

This menu gives access to the following settings:

- "Choice of units",
- "Date and time adjustment",
- "Display parameters",
- "Brightness".

Adjusting the date and time

☞ Press the "◀◀" or "▶▶" button to display the "Display configuration" menu, then press **"OK"**.

☞ Press the "▲" or "▼" button to select the "Date and time adjustment" button, then press **"OK"**.

☞ Press the "◀◀" or "▶▶" button to select the setting to modify. Confirm by pressing **"OK"**, then modify the setting and confirm again to save the modification.

☞ Adjust the settings one by one, confirming with the **"OK"** button.

☞ Press the "▲" or "▼" button, then the **"OK"** button to select the **"OK"** box and confirm or the **"Back"** button to cancel.

! As a safety measure, configuration of the multifunction screen by the driver must only be done when stationary.

Touch screen tablet

This system gives access to:
- menus for adjusting settings for vehicle functions and systems,
- audio and display settings menus,
- audio system and telephone controls and the display of associated information.
- the display of the ambient temperature (a blue snowflake appears if there is a risk of ice),
- the display of the trip computer.

And, depending on equipment, it also allows:
- the display of visual parking sensors information,
- access to the controls for the navigation system and Internet services, and the display of associated information.

! **As a safety measure, the driver should only carry out operations that require close attention, with the vehicle stationary.**
Some functions are not accessible when driving.

General operation

Recommendations

It is necessary to press firmly, particularly for "flick" gestures (scrolling through lists, moving the map...). A light wipe is not enough.
The screen does not recognise pressing with more than one finger.
This technology allows use at all temperatures and when wearing gloves.
Do not use pointed objects on the touch screen tablet.
Do not touch the touch screen tablet with wet hands.
Uses a soft clean cloth to clean the touch screen tablet.

Principles

Press the virtual buttons in the touch screen tablet.
Each menu is displayed over one or two pages (primary page and secondary page).

Use the "**Options**" button to go to the secondary page.

i After a few moments with no action on the secondary page, the primary page is displayed automatically.

Use this button for access to additional information and to the settings for certain functions.

Use this button to confirm.

Use this button to quit or to return to the primary page.

Menus

Press one of the buttons on the control panel for direct access to a particular menu.

Driving
Gives access to the trip computer and, depending on version, allows settings to be adjusted for certain functions.

Navigation

Radio Media

Telephone

Connected services
The connected services are accessible via Bluetooth, Wi-Fi, CarPlay™ or MirrorLink™ connections.

Settings
Allows configuration of the display and the system.

1. Volume / mute.

For more information on the touch screen tablet, refer to the **Audio and telematics** section.

"Driving" menu

The systems with settings that can be adjusted are detailed in the table below.
For more information on one of these functions, refer to the corresponding section.

Button	Corresponding function	Comments
	Speed settings	Memorisation of speeds for use with the speed limiter or cruise control.

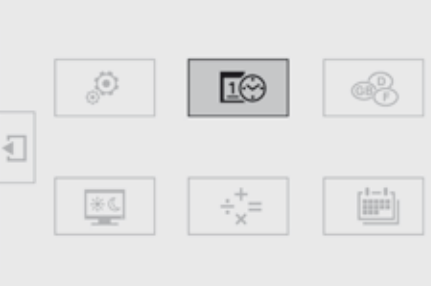
	Vehicle settings	Access to other functions with settings that can be adjusted. The functions are grouped together under three tabs:
		- "[**Driving assistance**]"
		  - "[Automatic parking brake]": activation/deactivation of the electric parking brake automatic mode,
		  - "[Automatic rear wiper in reverse]": activation/deactivation of rear wiper coupled to reverse gear.
		- "[**Lighting**]"
		  - "[Guide-me-home lighting]": activation/deactivation and configuration of the duration of the automatic guide me home lighting,
		  - "[Welcome lighting]": activation/deactivation of the exterior welcome lighting,
		  - "[Adaptive lighting]": activation/deactivation of the directional lighting or of the static intersection lighting,
		- "[**Vehicle access**]"
		  - "[Driver plip action]": activation/deactivation of the selective unlocking of the driver's door,
		  - Unlock boot only": activation/deactivation of the selective unlocking of the boot.
		Select or deselect the tabs at the bottom of the screen to filter the functions required.

"Settings" menu

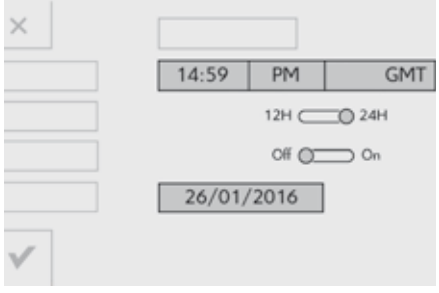
The functions available through this menu are detailed in the table below.

Button	Corresponding function	Comments
	Audio settings	Adjustment of volume, balance...
COLOR	**Color schemes**	Choice of colour scheme.
	Turn off screen	Turns off the display in the the touch screen tablet (black screen). Pressing the black screen restores the display.
	System Settings	Choice of units: - temperature (°Celsius or °Fahrenheit) - distance and fuel consumption (l/100 km, mpg or km/l).
	Time/Date	Setting the date and time.
GB D F	**Languages**	Choice of language used: French, English, Italian, Spanish, German, Dutch, Portuguese, Polish, Turkish, Russian, Serb, Croat, Hungarian.
	Screen settings	Adjustment of the display settings (scrolling of text, animations...)
	Calculator	Display the calculator.
	Calendar	Display the calendar.

Setting the date and time



- Select the "**Settings**" menu.
- In the secondary page, press on "**Time/ Date**".



- Select "**Adjust time**" or "**Adjust date**".

- Modify the settings using the number keypad, then confirm.
- Press "**Confirm**" to save and quit.

> When setting the time, you can select "**Satellite synchronisation**", so that the time is adjusted automatically by satellite reception.

Trip computer

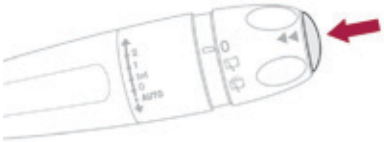
System that gives you information on the current journey (range, fuel consumption…).

Monochrome screen C

Information displays

You can choose between two types of display by pressing button **A**:

- the trip computer information appears temporarily above the audio information, displayed permanently in full screen,
  or
- the trip computer and audio information both appear permanently in a shared screen.



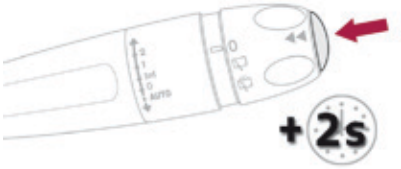
☞ Press the button, located at the end of the **wiper stalk**, to display the various trip computer tabs in succession.

- the current information tab with:
  - the range,
  - the current fuel consumption,
  - the Stop & Start time counter.

- the trip **"1"** tab with:
  - the distance travelled,
  - the average fuel consumption,
  - the average speed,
    for the first trip.

- the trip **"2"** tab with:
  - the distance travelled,
  - the average fuel consumption,
  - the average speed,
    for the second trip.

Trip zero reset



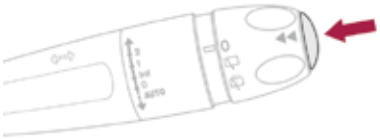
☞ When the trip required is displayed, press the button on the end of the wiper stalk for more than two seconds.

Trips **"1"** and **"2"** are independent but their use is identical.

For example, trip **"1"** can be used for daily figures, and trip **"2"** for monthly figures.

Type 2 instrument panel central screen

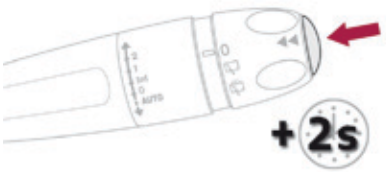
Information displays



☞ Press the button, located on the end of the **wiper stalk** to display the following information in turn:
- reminder of the speed,
- instantaneous information,
- trip **"1"**,
- trip **"2"**,
- information on the current audio source,
- black screen,
- navigation instructions.

- Display of instantaneous information with:
  - the range,
  - the current fuel consumption,
  - Stop & Start time counter,
- Display of trip **"1"** with:
  - the distance travelled,
  - the average fuel consumption,
  - the average speed, for the first trip.
- Display of trip **"2"** with:
  - the distance travelled,
  - the average fuel consumption,
  - the average speed, for the second trip.

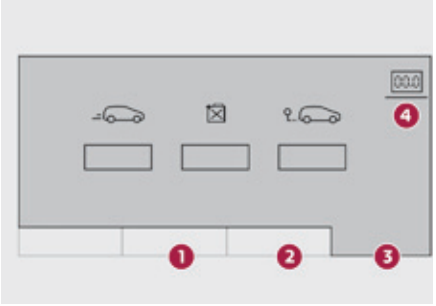
Trip zero reset



☞ When the required trip is displayed, press the button on the end of the **wiper stalk** for more than two seconds.

Trips **"1"** and **"2"** are independent but their use is identical.
For example, trip **"1"** can be used for daily figures and trip **"2"** for monthly figures.

Touch screen tablet



1. "**Instantaneous**".
2. "**Trip 1**".
3. "**Trip 2**".
4. "**00.0 / Reset**".

Display of information

Permanent display:

☞ Select the "**Driving**" menu.

The trip computer information is displayed in the primary page of the menu.

☞ Press one of the buttons to display the desired tab.

Temporary display in a new window:

☞ Press the end of the wiper control stalk for access to the information and display the different tabs.

The current instantaneous fuel consumption tab with:

- the range,
- the current fuel consumption,
- the Stop & Start time counter.

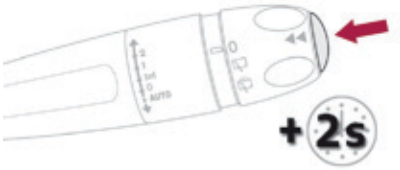
The trip **"1"** tab with:

- the distance travelled.
- the average fuel consumption,
- the average speed,
  for the first trip.

The trip **"2"** tab with:

- the distance travelled.
- the average fuel consumption,
- the average speed,
  for the second trip.

Trip reset



☞ When the desired trip is displayed, press the reset button or press and hold the end of the wiper control stalk.

Trips **"1"** and **"2"** are independent but their use is identical.
For example, trip **"1"** can be used for daily figures, and trip **"2"** for monthly figures.

A few definitions…

Range

(miles or km)

The distance which can still be travelled with the fuel remaining in the tank (at the average fuel consumption seen over the last few miles (kilometres) travelled).

> This value may vary following a change in the style of driving or the relief, resulting in a significant change in the current fuel consumption.

When the range falls below 20 miles (30 km), dashes are displayed.
After filling with at least 5 litres of fuel, the range is recalculated and is displayed if it exceeds 60 miles (100 km).

> If dashes are displayed continuously while driving in place of the digits, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Current fuel consumption

(mpg or l/100 km or km/l)

Calculated over the last few seconds.

> This function is only displayed from 20 mph (30 km/h).

Average fuel consumption

(mpg or l/100 km or km/l)

Calculated since the last trip computer reset.

Average speed

(mph or km/h)

Calculated since the last trip computer reset.

Distance travelled

(miles or km)

Calculated since the last trip computer reset.

Stop & Start time counter
(minutes / seconds or hours / minutes)

A time counter calculates the time spent in STOP mode during a journey.
It resets to zero every time the ignition is switched on.

ACCESS

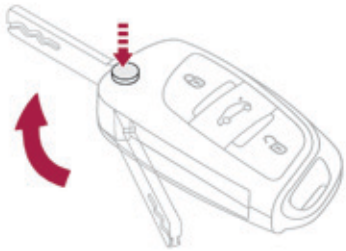
02

Remote control key

System which permits central unlocking or locking of the vehicle using the door lock or from a distance. It is also used to locate and start the vehicle, as well as providing protection against theft.

Unlocking the vehicle

Unfolding the key



☞ Press this button to unfold the key.

Complete unlocking using the remote control

☞ Press the open padlock to unlock the vehicle completely.

Selective unlocking using the remote control

☞ Press the open padlock once to unlock the driver's door only.

☞ Press the open padlock again to unlock the other doors and the boot.

The complete or selective door unlocking parameter is set via the vehicle configuration menu.

Opening the windows using the remote control

☞ Maintain the press on the open padlock until the desired position is obtained. The windows stop as soon as you release the button.

Unlocking using the key

☞ Turn the key forwards in the driver's door lock to unlock the vehicle completely.

i The direction indicators flash for a few seconds.
The spotlamps in the door mirrors come on.
Depending on version, the door mirrors unfold, the welcome lighting comes on, the alarm is deactivated.

Selective unlocking of the boot

☞ Press the central button on the remote control to unlock the boot. The doors remain locked.

If selective unlocking of the boot is deactivated, pressing this button also unlocks the doors.

! Don't forget to lock the boot again by pressing the closed padlock button.

The complete or selective boot unlocking parameter is set via the vehicle configuration menu.
Selective unlocking of the boot is activated by default.

Locking the vehicle

Normal locking using the remote control

☞ Press the closed padlock to lock the vehicle.

Normal locking using the key

☞ Turn the key towards the rear in the driver's door lock to lock the vehicle.

The direction indicators flash for a few seconds.
Depending on version, the door mirrors fold, the alarm is activated.

i If one of the doors or the boot is still open, the central locking does not take place.
However, the alarm (if present) will be completely activated after about 45 seconds.
If the vehicle is unlocked inadvertently and with no action on the doors or boot, the vehicle will lock itself again automatically after about 30 seconds.
If the alarm had previously been activated, it will not be reactivated automatically.

i The folding and unfolding of the door mirrors using the remote control can be deactivated by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Deadlocking using the remote control

☞ Press the closed padlock to lock the vehicle completely.

☞ Press the closed padlock again within five seconds to deadlock the vehicle.

Deadlocking using the key

☞ Turn the key to the rear in the driver's door lock to lock the vehicle completely.
☞ Turn the key to the rear again within five seconds to deadlock the vehicle.

Deadlocking is confirmed by fixed lighting of the direction indicators for approximately two seconds.
According to version, the door mirrors fold at the same time.
In low light, deadlocking also brings on the guide-me-home lighting.
For more information on the guide-me-home lighting, refer to the corresponding section.

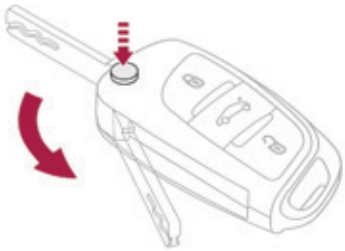
! Deadlocking renders the exterior and interior door controls inoperative.
It also deactivates the central locking control button.
Therefore, never leave anyone inside the vehicle when it is deadlocked.

Closing the windows using the remote control

☞ Press and hold the closed padlock button until the desired position is obtained. The windows stop when you release the button.

! When closing the windows using the remote control you must ensure that nothing prevents them from closing correctly.
If you want to leave the windows partly open, you must deactivate the volumetric alarm monitoring.

Folding the key



☞ Press this button before folding the key.

! If you do not press the button, there is a risk of damaging the remote control.

Locating your vehicle

This function allows you to identify your vehicle from a distance, particularly in poor light. Your vehicle must be locked.

☞ Press this button.

This will switch on the courtesy lamps and the direction indicators will flash for around ten seconds.

Back-up control

System allowing the doors to be locked and unlocked manually in the event of a malfunction of the central locking system or battery failure.

Locking the driver's door

☞ Insert the key in the door lock, then turn it to the rear.

You can also apply the procedure described for the passenger doors.

Unlocking the driver's door

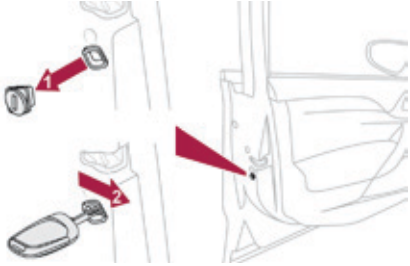
☞ Insert the key in the door lock, then turn it to the front.

Locking the passenger doors

☞ Open the doors.

☞ On the rear doors, check that the child lock is not on.

For more information on the **Child lock**, refer to the corresponding section.



☞ Remove the black cap, located on the edge of the door, using the key.

☞ Insert the key in the socket without forcing it, then without turning it, move the latch sideways towards the inside of the door.

☞ Remove the key and refit the cap.

☞ Close the doors and check that the vehicle has locked correctly from the outside.

Unlocking the passenger doors

☞ Pull the interior door opening control.

Fault with the remote control

In the event of a malfunction with the remote control, you can no longer unlock, lock or locate your vehicle.

- First of all, use the key in the lock to unlock or lock your vehicle.
- Then, reinitialise the remote control.

Reinitialisation

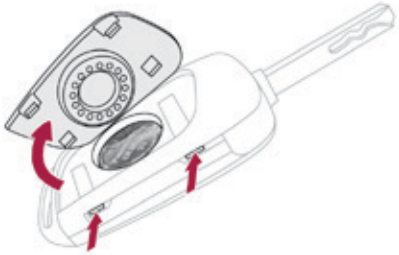
- Switch off the ignition and remove the ignition key.
- Press the closed padlock immediately for a few seconds.
- Turn the key to position **2 (Ignition on)**.
- Switch off the ignition and remove the key from the ignition switch.

The remote control is fully operational again.

Changing the battery

Battery ref.: CR2032/3 volts.

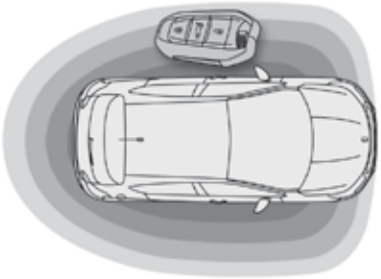
SERVICE If the battery is flat, you are informed by illumination of this warning lamp, an audible signal and a message in the screen.



- Unclip the cover using a small screwdriver at the two cutouts.
- Lift off the cover.
- Remove the flat battery from its location.
- Fit the new battery into its location observing the original direction of fitment.
- Clip the cover onto the casing.

! If the problem persists, contact a CITROËN dealer as soon as possible.

"Keyless Entry and Starting"



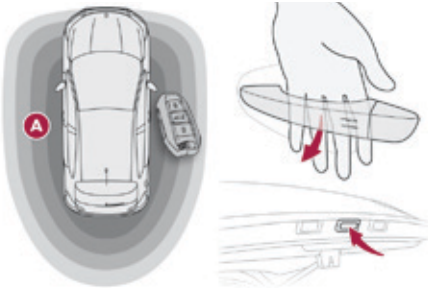
System which permits the unlocking, locking and starting of the vehicle while keeping the electronic key on your person.

> The electronic key can also be used as a remote control.
> For more information on the **Remote control key**, refer to the corresponding section.

Unlocking the vehicle

The vehicle or just the driver's door is unlocked, depending on the setting.

Complete unlocking



☞ With the electronic key on your person and in the recognition zone **A**, pass your hand behind the door handle of one of the front doors to unlock the vehicle or press the tailgate opening control.

Selective unlocking

☞ To unlock only the drivers door, with the electronic key on your person, pass your hand behind the driver's door handle.

☞ To unlock the complete vehicle, pass your hand behind one of the door handle of the front passenger door with the electronic key close to the passenger door, or press the tailgate opening control with the electronic key close to the rear of the vehicle.

Activation or deactivation of the selective unlocking is done in the "**Driving**" menu, then "**Vehicle settings**".
By default, complete unlocking is activated.

> The direction indicators flash for a few seconds.
> Depending on version, the door mirrors unfold, the welcome lighting comes on, the alarm is deactivated.

i If one of the doors or the boot is still open or if the electronic key for the Keyless Entry and Starting system has been left inside the vehicle, the central locking does not take place.
However, the alarm (if fitted) will be fully activated after about 45 seconds.

If the vehicle is unlocked by mistake and with no action on the doors or boot, the vehicle will lock again automatically after about 30 seconds.
If fitted to your vehicle, the alarm will also be reactivated automatically.

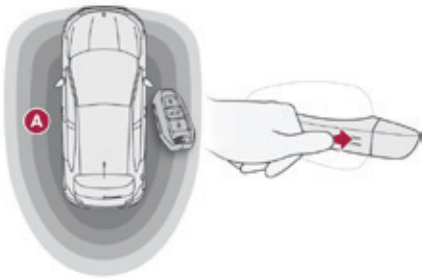
The automatic folding and unfolding of the door mirrors can be deactivated by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

! As a safety measure (children on board), never leave the vehicle without taking the electronic key for the Keyless Entry and Starting system with you, even for a short period.
Be aware of the risk of theft when the electronic key for the Keyless Entry and Starting system is in one of the defined zones with the vehicle unlocked.

In order to preserve the battery in the electronic key and the vehicle's battery, the "hands-free" functions are put into long-term standby after 21 days without use. To restore these functions, press one of the remote control buttons or start the engine with the electronic key in the reader.
For more information on starting with **Keyless Entry and Starting**, refer to the corresponding section.

Locking the vehicle

Normal locking

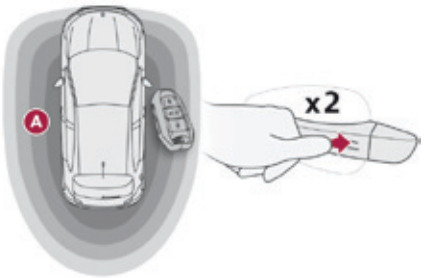


☞ With the electronic key on your person and in the recognition zone **A**, press with a finger or thumb on one of the door handles (at the markings).

Maintaining pressure allows the windows to be raised to the desired position.

Deadlocking

! Deadlocking renders the interior door controls inoperative.
It also deactivates the central locking button.
Therefore, never leave anyone inside the vehicle when it is deadlocked.



By the doors:

☞ With the electronic key in the recognition zone **A**, press a finger or thumb on one of the front door handles (at the markings) to lock the vehicle.

☞ Within five seconds, press the door handle again to deadlock the vehicle.

! For reasons of safety and theft protection, do not leave your electronic key in the vehicle, even when you are close to it.
It is recommended that you keep it on your person.

! Ensure that nothing could prevent the correct operation of the windows.
Be particularly aware of children when operating the windows.

i The direction indicators come on for a few seconds.
Depending on your version, the door mirrors fold, the alarm is activated.

! Accumulations (water, dust, grime, salt...) on the inner surface of the door handle may affect detection.
If cleaning the inner surface of the door handle using a cloth does not restore detection, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.
A sudden splash of water (stream of water, high pressure jet washer, …) may be identified by the system as the desire to open the vehicle.

Locating your vehicle

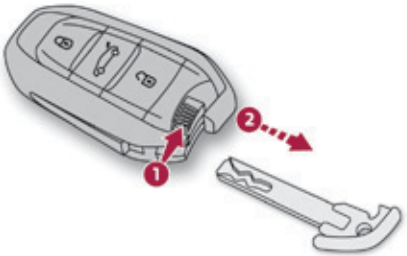
This function allows you to identify your vehicle from a distance, particularly in poor light. Your vehicle must be locked.

☞ Press this button.

This will switch on the courtesy lamps and the direction indicators will flash for around ten seconds.

Back-up key integrated in the Keyless Entry and Starting

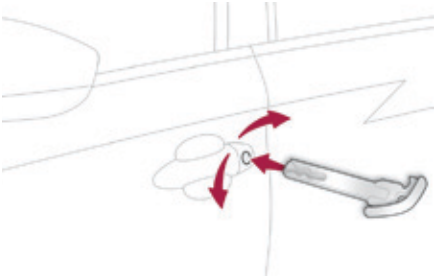
The integral key is used to lock and unlock the vehicle when the electronic key cannot operate:
- battery flat, vehicle battery discharged or disconnected, ...
- vehicle located in an area with strong electromagnetic signals.



☞ Maintain a pull on button **1**, to extract the integral key **2**.

i If the alarm is activated, the audible signal triggered on opening a door with the key (integral with the remote control) will stop when the ignition is switched on.

Locking the driver's door



☞ Insert the integral key in the door lock, then turn it to the rear.

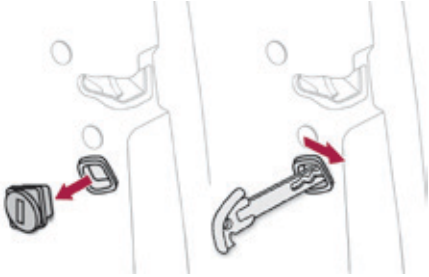
Unlocking the driver's door

☞ Insert the integral key in the door lock, then turn it to the front.

Locking the passenger doors

- Open the doors.
- On the rear doors, check that the child lock is not on.

For more information on the **Child lock**, refer to the corresponding section.



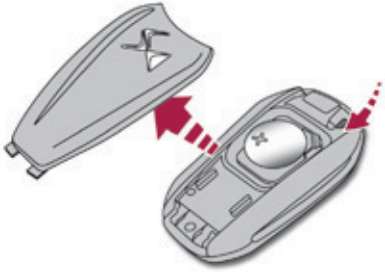
- Remove the black cap, located on the edge of the door, using the integral key.
- Insert the integral key in the socket without forcing it, then without turning it, move the latch sideways towards the inside of the door.
- Remove the integral key and refit the cap.
- Close the doors and check that the vehicle has locked correctly from the outside.

Unlocking the passenger doors

- Pull the interior door opening control.

Changing the battery

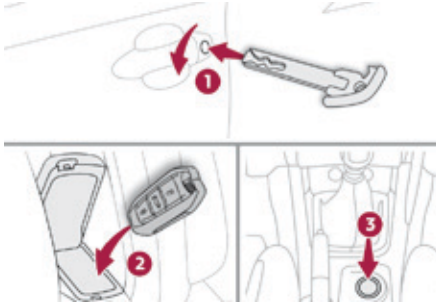
Battery ref.: CR2032 / 3 volts.
Battery replacement is signalled by the display of a message.



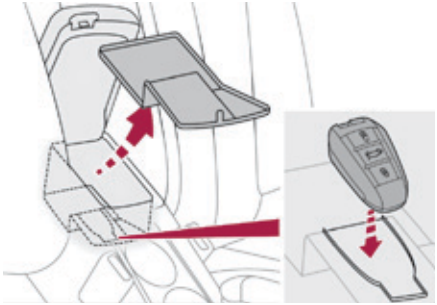
- Unclip the cover using a small screwdriver at the cut-out.
- Lift off the cover.
- Remove the flat battery from its location.
- Fit the new battery into its location observing the original direction of fitment.
- Clip the cover onto the casing.

Remote control problem / reinitialisation

Following disconnection of the vehicle battery, replacement of the remote control battery or in the event of a remote control malfunction, you can no longer unlock, lock or locate your vehicle.



☞ Place the back-up key (integral with the remote control) in the lock to unlock your vehicle.



☞ Open the front armrest.

- Raise the mat by its tongue and remove it.
- Place the electronic key on the back-up reader.

☞ Switch on the ignition by pressing the "**START/STOP**" button.

The electronic key is fully operational again.

Remember to refit the mat below the armrest after removing the reinitialised electronic key.

If the problem persists, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop as soon as possible.

Lost keys, remote control, electronic key

Visit a CITROËN dealer with the vehicle's registration certificate, your personal identification documents and if possible, the label bearing the key code.
The CITROËN dealer will be able to retrieve the key code and the transponder code required to order a new key

Remote control

The high frequency remote control is a sensitive system; do not operate it while it is in your pocket as there is a possibility that it may unlock the vehicle, without you being aware of it.
Do not repeatedly press the buttons of your remote control out of range and out of sight of your vehicle. You run the risk of stopping it from working and the remote control would have to be reinitialised.
The remote control does not operate when the key is in the ignition, even when the ignition is switched off.

Locking the vehicle

Driving with the doors locked may make access to the passenger compartment by the emergency services more difficult in an emergency.
As a safety precaution (with children on board), remove the key from the ignition or take the electronic key when you leave the vehicle, even for a short time.

Electrical interference

The Keyless Entry and Starting electronic key may not operate if close to certain electronic devices: telephone, laptop computer, strong magnetic fields, ...

Anti-theft protection

Do not make any modifications to the electronic engine immobiliser system; this could cause malfunctions.
For vehicles with an ignition switch, do not forget to remove the key and turn the steering to engage the steering lock.

When purchasing a second-hand vehicle

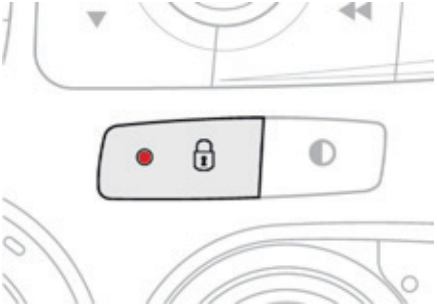
Have the key codes memorised by a CITROËN dealer, to ensure that the keys in your possession are the only ones which can start the vehicle.

Do not throw the remote control batteries away, they contain metals which are harmful to the environment. Take them to an approved collection point.

Central locking control

This control allows the simultaneous locking or unlocking of the doors and boot from inside the vehicle.

Locking



☞ Press this button to lock the vehicle.
The red indicator lamp in the button comes on.

> i If one of the doors is open, central locking from the inside does not take place.

Unlocking

☞ Press the button again to unlock the vehicle.
The red indicator lamp in the button goes off.

> i **When locking / deadlocking from the outside**
>
> When the vehicle is locked or deadlocked from the outside, the red warning lamp flashes and the button is inoperative.
>
> ☞ With normal locking, pull the interior door control lever to unlock the vehicle.
>
> ☞ With deadlocking, you have to use the remote control or the key to unlock the vehicle.

Anti-intrusion security

This system allows automatic simultaneous locking of the doors and boot as soon as the speed of the vehicle exceeds 6 mph (10 km/h).

Operation

If one of the doors or the boot is open, the automatic central locking does not take place.

This is signalled by the sound of the locks rebounding, accompanied by illumination of this symbol in the instrument panel, an audible signal and the display of an alert message.

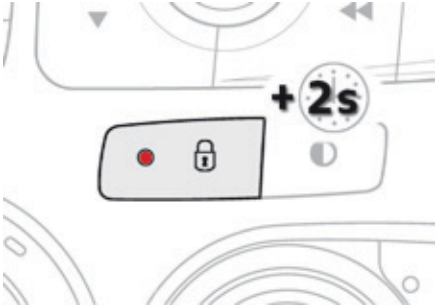
Carrying long or voluminous objects

If you want to drive with the boot open, you should press the central locking button to lock the doors. Otherwise, every time the speed of the vehicle exceeds 6 mph (10 km/h), the locks will rebound and the alerts mentioned above will appear.

Pressing the central locking button unlocks the vehicle.
Above 6 mph (10 km/h), this unlocking is temporary.

Activation / Deactivation

You can activate or deactivate this function permanently.



☞ With the ignition on, press this button until an audible signal starts and a corresponding message is displayed.

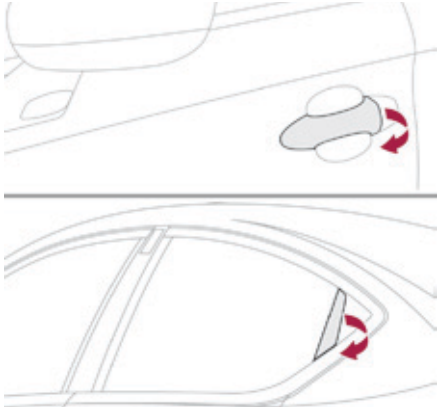
The state of the system stays in memory when switching off the ignition.

Driving with the doors locked may render access for the emergency services difficult in an emergency.

Doors

Opening

From outside



☞ After unlocking the vehicle or with the electronic key of the Keyless Entry and Starting system in the recognition zone, pull the door handle.

i When the selective unlocking is activated, the first press of the remote control unlocking button permits unlocking of the driver's door only.

From inside

☞ Pull the interior control lever of a front door; this unlocks the vehicle completely.

i With the selective unlocking activated:
- opening the driver's door unlocks the driver's door only (if the vehicle has not already been completely unlocked).
- opening the passenger's door unlocks the rest of the vehicle.

The interior door controls do not operate when the vehicle is deadlocked.

Closing

When a door is not closed correctly:

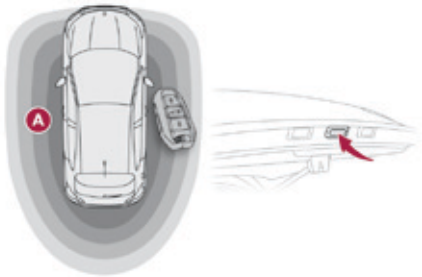
- with the engine running or the vehicle moving (speed below 6 mph (10 km/h)), this warning lamp comes on, accompanied by an alert message for a few seconds.
- with the vehicle moving (speed above 6 mph (10 km/h)), in addition to the warning lamp and alert message, there is an audible signal for a few seconds.

Boot

Opening

The vehicle or just the boot is unlocked, depending on the setting.

Complete unlocking



☞ After unlocking the vehicle or the boot with the Keyless Entry and Starting system electronic key on your person in the recognition zone **A**, press the boot opening control then raise the tailgate.

Selective unlocking

By default, complete unlocking is activated. This setting is done in the **"Driving"** menu, then **"Vehicle settings"** and **"Vehicle access"**.

When unlocking of the boot only is activated:

☞ With the electronic key on your person and in the recognition zone **A**, press the boot unlocking control to unlock just the boot, then raise the tailgate.

Unlocking is signalled by rapid flashing of the direction indicators for a few seconds.

Use this button for access to additional information.

Closing

☞ Lower the tailgate using one of the interior grab handles.

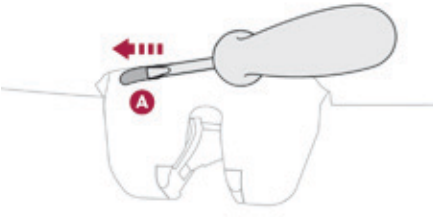
If the boot is not closed correctly:

- with the engine running or the vehicle moving (speed below 6 mph (10 km/h)), this warning lamp comes on, accompanied by the display of an alert message for a few seconds.
- with the vehicle moving (speed above 6 mph (10 km/h)), in addition to the warning lamp and alert message, there is an an audible signal for a few seconds.

Back-up release

To manually unlock the boot in the event of a battery or central locking failure.

Unlocking



- ☞ Fold back the rear seats to gain access to the lock from inside the boot.
- ☞ Insert a small screwdriver into hole **A** of the lock to unlock the tailgate.
- ☞ Move the latch to the left.

Locking after closing

If the fault persists after closing again, the boot will remain locked.

Alarm*

System which protects and provides a deterrent against theft and break-ins. It provides the following types of monitoring:

- exterior perimeter

The system checks for opening of the vehicle.
The alarm is triggered if anyone tries to open a door, the boot, the bonnet...

- interior volumetric

The system checks for any variation in the volume in the passenger compartment.
The alarm is triggered if anyone breaks a window, enters the passenger compartment or moves inside the vehicle.

- tilt

The system checks for any change in the attitude of the vehicle.
The alarm is triggered if the vehicle is lifted, moved or knocked.

Self-protection function

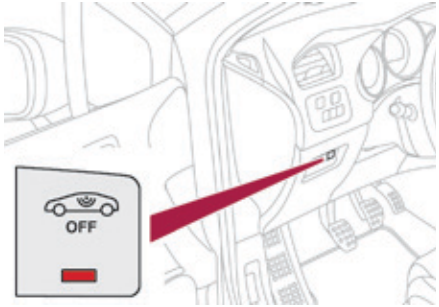
The system checks for the putting out of service of its components.
The alarm is triggered if the battery, the central control or the siren wiring are put out of service or damaged.

! For all work on the alarm system, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

* Depending on the country of sale.

Locking the vehicle with full alarm system

Activation



☞ Switch off the ignition and get out of the vehicle.

☞ Lock the vehicle with the remote control.

or

☞ Lock the vehicle with the "Keyless Entry and Starting" system.

The monitoring system is active: the indicator lamp in the button flashes once per second and the direction indicators come on for about 2 seconds.
Following an instruction to lock the vehicle, the exterior perimeter monitoring is activated after a delay of 5 seconds and the interior volumetric and anti-tilt monitoring after a delay of 45 seconds.

If an opening (door, boot...) is not closed fully, the vehicle is not locked but the exterior perimeter monitoring will be activated after a delay of 45 seconds at the same time as the interior volumetric and anti-tilt monitoring.

Deactivation

☞ Press the unlocking button on the remote control.

or

☞ Unlock the vehicle with the "Keyless Entry and Starting" system.

The monitoring system is deactivated: the indicator lamp in the button goes off and the direction indicators flash for about 2 seconds.

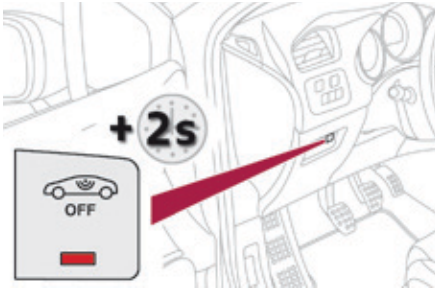
i When the vehicle automatically locks itself again (as happens if a door or boot is not opened within 30 seconds of unlocking), the monitoring system is not reactivated automatically. To reactivate the system, it is necessary to unlock the vehicle and then lock it again using the remote control or the "Keyless Entry and Starting" system.

Locking the vehicle with exterior perimeter monitoring only

Deactivate the interior volumetric and anti-tilt monitoring to avoid unwanted triggering of the alarm in certain cases such as:

- leaving a pet in the vehicle,
- leaving a window partially open,
- washing your vehicle,
- changing a wheel,
- having your vehicle towed,
- transport by sea.

Deactivating the interior volumetric and anti-tilt monitoring



☞ Switch off the ignition and within ten seconds, press the button until the indicator lamp is on continuously.

☞ Get out of the vehicle.

☞ Immediately lock the vehicle using the remote control or the Keyless Entry and Starting system.

The exterior perimeter monitoring alone is activated: the indicator lamp in the button flashes once per second.

i To be effective, this deactivation must be carried out each time the ignition is switched off.

Reactivating the interior volumetric and anti-tilt monitoring

☞ Deactivate the perimeter monitoring by unlocking the vehicle with the remote control or the Keyless Entry and Starting system.
The indicator lamp in the button goes off.

☞ Reactivate all monitoring by locking the vehicle with the remote control or the Keyless Entry and Starting system.
The indicator lamp in the button flashes once per second again.

Triggering of the alarm

This is indicated by sounding of the siren and flashing of the direction indicators for thirty seconds.
The monitoring functions remain active until the alarm has been triggered eleven times in succession.
When the vehicle is unlocked using the remote control or the Keyless Entry and Starting system, rapid flashing of the indicator lamp in the button informs you that the alarm was triggered during your absence. When the ignition is switched on, this flashing stops immediately.

Failure of the remote control

To deactivate the monitoring functions:

- ☞ unlock the vehicle using the key (integral to the remote control) in the driver's door lock,
- ☞ open the door; the alarm is triggered,
- ☞ switch on the ignition; the alarm stops; the indicator lamp in the button goes off.

Locking the vehicle without activating the alarm

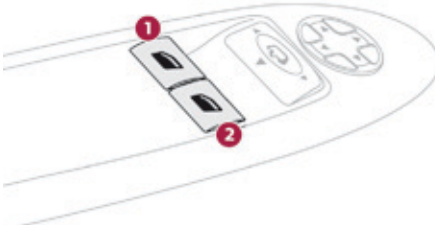
- ☞ Lock or deadlock the vehicle using the key (integral to the remote control) in the driver's door lock.

Operating fault

When the ignition is switched on, fixed illumination of the indicator lamp in the button indicates a fault with the system.
Have it checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Electric windows

Fitted with a safety anti-pinch system.



1. Left hand front window control.
2. Right hand front electric window control.

One-touch electric windows

Manual mode

☞ Press or pull the control gently. The window stops when the control is released.

Automatic mode

☞ Press or pull the control firmly. The window opens or closes fully when the control is released.

☞ Pressing the control again stops the movement of the window.

i The electric window controls remain operational for approximately 45 seconds after the ignition is switched off or until the vehicle is locked after a door is opened.
If the passenger 's window cannot be operated from the driver's door control panel, carry out the operation from the passenger's door control panel, and vice versa.

i After approximately ten consecutive complete opening/closing movements of the window, a protection function is activated which only authorises closing of the window to prevent damage to the electric window motor.
Once the window is closed, the controls will become available again after approximately 40 minutes.

Safety anti-pinch

When the window rises and meets an obstacle, it stops and partially lowers again.

i If the window cannot be closed (for example, in the presence of ice), once the window has lowered:

- ☞ press and hold the control until the window opens fully,
- ☞ then pull the control immediately and hold it until the window closes,
- ☞ continue to hold the control for approximately one second after the window has closed.

The safety anti-pinch function is not operational during these operations.

Reinitialisation

If a window does not rise automatically, its operation must be reinitialised.

- ☞ Pull the control until the window stops.
- ☞ Release the control and pull it again until the window closes fully.
- ☞ Continue to hold the control for approximately one second after the window has closed.
- ☞ Press the control to lower the window automatically to the low position.
- ☞ When the window has reached the low position, press the control again for approximately one second.

The safety anti-pinch function is not operational during these operations.

! If an obstacle is encountered during operation of the electric windows, you must reverse the movement of the window. To do this, press the control concerned.
When the driver operates the passenger's electric window control, they must ensure that nothing is preventing the windows closing correctly.
The driver must ensure that the passengers use the electric windows correctly.
Be particularly aware of children when operating the windows.
Be aware of passengers and/or other persons present when closing the windows with the key or the "Keyless Entry and Starting" system.
Always remove the key from the ignition when leaving the vehicle, even for a short time.

ERGONOMY AND COMFORT

03

Front seats

Manual adjustments

! As a safety measure, seat adjustments should only be done when stationary.

Forwards-backwards

☞ Raise the control and slide the seat forwards or backwards.
☞ Release the control to lock the position.

Seat height

☞ Pull the control upwards to raise or push it downwards to lower, as many times as necessary, to obtain the position required.

Seat backrest angle

☞ Turn the control knob to adjust the seat backrest angle.

! Before moving the seat backwards, ensure that there is nothing that might prevent the full travel of the seat.
There is a risk of trapping or pinching passengers if present in the rear seats or jamming the seat if large objects are placed on the floor behind the seat.

Driver's seat electric adjustments

i The electrical functions of the driver's seat are deactivated approximately one minute after the ignition is switched off.
To reactivate them, switch on the ignition.

Forwards-backwards

☞ Push the control forwards or rearwards to slide the seat.

Cushion height and angle

☞ Tilt the rear part of the control upwards or downwards to obtain the required height.
☞ Tilt the front part of the control upwards or downwards to obtain the required angle.

Seat backrest angle

☞ Tilt the control forwards or rearwards to adjust the angle of the seat backrest.

! Before moving the seat backwards, ensure that there is nothing that might prevent the full travel of the seat.
There is a risk of trapping or pinching passengers if present in the rear seats or jamming the seat if large objects are placed on the floor behind the seat.

Additional adjustments

Head restraint height and angle

- To raise a head restraint, pull it upwards.
- To lower the head restraint, press the lug **A** and the head restraint at the same time.
- To adjust the angle of the head restraint, tilt its lower part forwards or rearwards.

Removing a head restraint

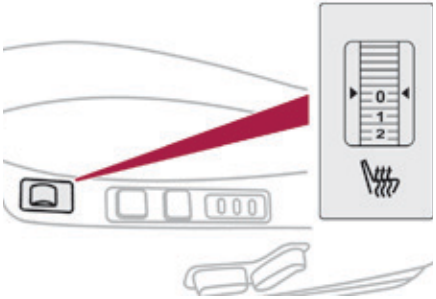
- To remove the head restraint, press the lug **A** and pull the head restraint upwards.
- To put the head restraint back in place, engage the head restraint stems in the openings keeping them in line with the seat back and press the lug **A** at the same time.

! The head restraint is fitted with a frame with notches which prevents it from lowering; this is a safety device in case of impact.
The adjustment is correct when the upper edge of the head restraint is level with the top of the head.

Never drive with the head restraints removed; they must be in place and adjusted correctly.

Heated seats control

With the engine running, the front seats can be heated separately.



☞ Use the adjustment dial, placed on the side of each front seat, to switch on and select the level of heating required:
0: Off.
1: Low.
2: Medium.
3: High.

e Do not use the function if the seat is not occupied.
Reduce the level of heating as soon as possible.
Once the seat and passenger compartment are at a comfortable temperature, you can switch off the function; reducing electric current consumption also reduces fuel consumption.

! Prolonged use at the highest setting is not recommended for those with sensitive skin.
There is a risk of burns for those that do not have normal perception of heat (illness, taking medicines, ...).
There is a risk of overheating the system if material with insulating properties is used, such as cushions or seat covers.
Do not use the system:
- if wearing damp clothing,
- if child seats are fitted.

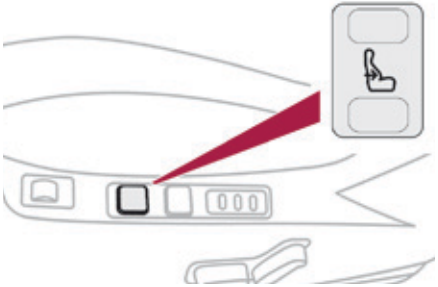
To avoid breaking the heating element in the seat:
- do not place heavy objects on the seat,
- do not kneel or stand on the seat,
- do not place sharp objects on the seat,
- do not spill liquids onto the seat.

To avoid the risk of short-circuit:
- do not use liquid products for cleaning the seat,
- never use the heating function when the seat is damp.

Manual lumbar adjustment

☞ Turn the knob to obtain the desired level of lumbar support.

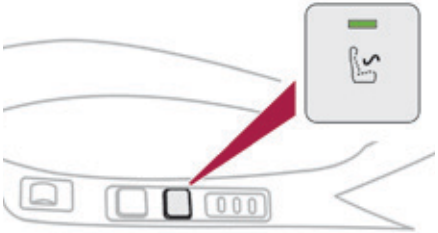
Electric lumbar adjustment



☞ Press the front or rear of the control to obtain the desired lumbar support.

Massage function

This function provides a back massage; it only operates when the engine is running.



☞ Press the switch to activate the function.
The warning lamp on the switch comes on and the massage function is activated for a period of 60 minutes. During this time, massage is performed in 6 cycles of 10 minutes each cycle (6 minutes of massage followed by 4 minutes break).
After an hour, the function is automatically deactivated. The warning lamp in the switch goes off.

Deactivation

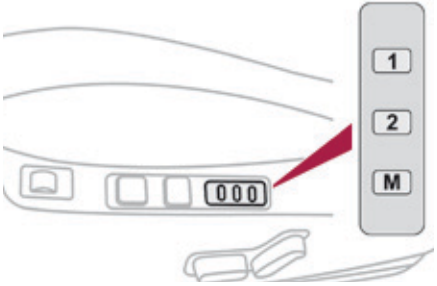
You can deactivate the massage function at any time by pressing the switch. The movement in progress continues until the initial non-massage position is reached.

Storing driving positions

System which registers the electrical settings of the driver's seat and door mirrors. It enables you to store and recall two positions using the buttons on the side of the driver's seat.

Storing a position

Using buttons M / 1 / 2



- Switch on the ignition.
- Adjust your seat and the door mirrors.
- Press button **M**, then press button **1** or **2** within four seconds.
  An audible signal indicates that the position has been stored.

> i Storing a new position cancels the previous position.

Recalling a stored position

Ignition on or engine running

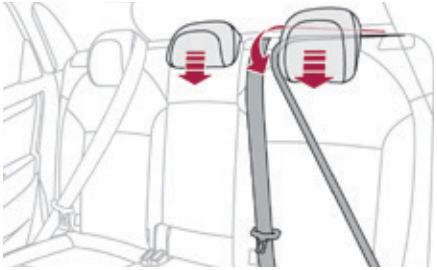
- Press button **1** or **2** to recall the corresponding position.
  An audible signal confirms that adjustment is complete.

> i You can interrupt the current movement by pressing button **M**, **1** or **2** or by using one of the seat controls.
> A stored position cannot be recalled while driving.
> Recalling stored positions is deactivated 45 seconds after switching off the ignition.

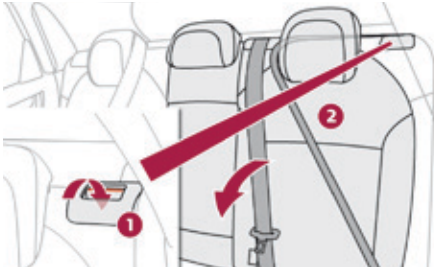
Rear seats

Bench seat with fixed one-piece cushion and split backrests (1/3 - 2/3) which can be folded individually to adapt the load space in the boot.

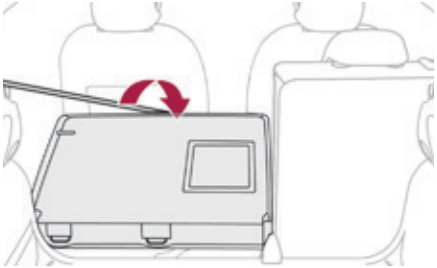
Folding the backrest



- Move the corresponding front seat forward if necessary.
- Position the seat belt between the outer and centre head restraints to avoid trapping the belt when repositioning the seat backrest.
- Place the head restraints in the low position.



- Pull control **1** forwards to release the seat back **2**.



- Fold the seat back **2** on to the cushion.

Repositioning the seat backrest

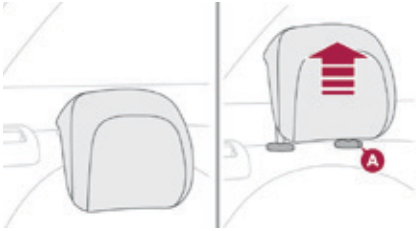
- Straighten the seat back **2** and secure it.
- Check that the red indicator, located next to the control **1**, is no longer visible.
- Put the seat belt back in place on the side of the seat backrest.

! When repositioning the seat backrest, take care not to trap the seat belts.

Rear head restraints

These have one position for use (up) and a stowed position (down).
They can also be removed.
To remove a head restraint:

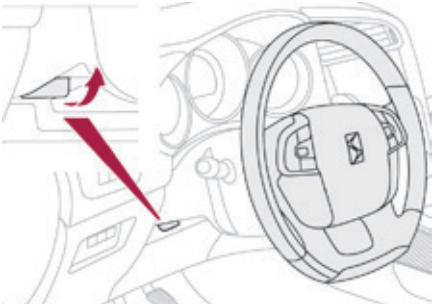
- ☞ release the backrest using control **1**,
- ☞ tilt the backrest **2** slightly forwards,
- ☞ pull the head restraint upwards to the stop,



- ☞ then, press the lug **A**.

! Never drive with the head restraints removed; they must be in place and correctly adjusted.

Steering wheel adjustment

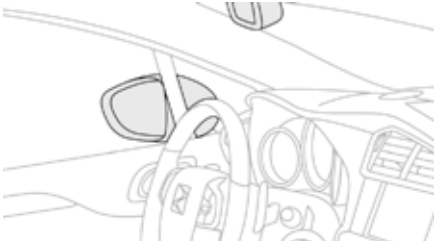


- ☞ **When stationary**, pull the control lever to release the adjustment mechanism.
- ☞ Adjust the height and reach to suit your driving position.
- ☞ Push the control lever to lock the adjustment mechanism.

! As a safety measure, these adjustments should only be carried out with the vehicle stationary.

Mirrors

Door mirrors



Each fitted with an adjustable mirror glass permitting the lateral rearward vision necessary for overtaking or parking.
They can also be folded for parking in confined spaces.

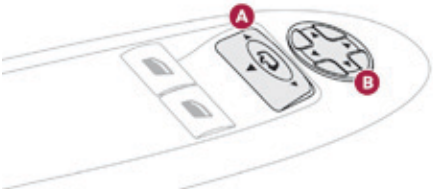
Demisting / Defrosting

If your vehicle is fitted with heated mirrors, the demisting-defrosting operates by switching on the heated rear screen.

For more information on **Demisting and defrosting the rear screen**, refer to the corresponding section.

The rear screen demist - defrost can only operate when the engine is running.

Adjustment



- Move control **A** to the right or to the left to select the corresponding mirror.
- Move control **B** in all four directions to adjust.
- Return control **A** to the central position.

! The objects observed are, in reality, closer than they appear.
Take this into account in order to correctly judge the distance of vehicles approaching from behind.

! As a safety measure, the mirrors should be adjusted to reduce the blind spots.

Folding

- From outside: lock the vehicle using the remote control or the key.
- From inside: with the ignition on, pull the control **A** in the central position rearwards.

i If the mirrors are folded using control **A**, they will not unfold when the vehicle is unlocked. Pull again on control **A**.

Unfolding

☞ From outside: unlock the vehicle using the remote control or the key.
☞ From inside: with the ignition on, pull the control **A** in the central position rearwards.

i The folding and unfolding of the door mirrors using the remote control can be deactivated by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

! If necessary the mirrors can be folded manually.

Automatic tilting in reverse gear

System which provides a view of the ground during parking manoeuvres in reverse gear.

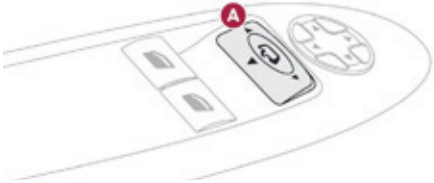
Programming

☞ With the engine running, engage reverse gear.
☞ Select and adjust the left-hand and right-hand mirrors in succession.

The adjustment is stored immediately.

Switching on

☞ With the engine running, engage reverse gear.



☞ Move control **A** to the right or to the left to select the corresponding mirror.

The glass of the mirror selected tilts downwards, in accordance with its programming.

Switching off

☞ Exit reverse gear and wait ten seconds.

or

☞ Return control **A** to the central position.

The mirror glass returns to its initial position.

The mirror glass also returns to its initial position:

- if the speed exceeds 6 mph (10 km/h),
- if the engine is switched off.

Rear view mirror

Equipped with an anti-dazzle system, which darkens the mirror glass and reduces the nuisance to the driver caused by the sun, headlamps from other vehicles...

Manual model

Adjustment

☞ Adjust the mirror so that the glass is directed correctly in the "day" position.

Day / night position

☞ Pull the lever to change to the "night" anti-dazzle position.

☞ Push the lever to change to the normal "day" position.

Automatic "electrochrome" model

This system automatically and progressively changes between the day and night uses by means of a sensor, which measures the light from the rear of the vehicle.

i In order to ensure optimum visibility during your manoeuvres, the mirror lightens automatically when reverse gear is engaged.

Recommendations for ventilation and air conditioning

In order for these systems to be fully effective, follow the operation and maintenance guidelines below:

- To obtain an even air distribution, take care not to obstruct the exterior air intake grilles located at the base of the windscreen, the nozzles, the vents and the air outlets, as well as the air extractor located in the boot.
- Do not cover the sunshine sensor, located on the dashboard; this is used for regulation of the air conditioning system.
- Operate the air conditioning system for at least 5 to 10 minutes, once or twice a month to keep it in perfect working order.
- Ensure that the passenger compartment filter is in good condition and have the filter elements replaced regularly.
  We recommend the use of a combined passenger compartment filter. Thanks to its special active additive, it contributes to the purification of the air breathed by the occupants and the cleanliness of the passenger compartment (reduction of allergic symptoms, bad odours and greasy deposits).
- To ensure correct operation of the air conditioning system, you are also advised to have it checked regularly as recommended in the maintenance and warranty guide.
- If the system does not produce cold air, switch it off and contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

When towing the maximum load on a steep gradient in high temperatures, switching off the air conditioning increases the available engine power and so improves the towing ability.

Stop & Start

The heating and air conditioning systems only work when the engine is running.
To maintain a comfortable temperature in the passenger compartment, you can temporarily deactivate the Stop & Start system.
For more information on **Stop & Start**, refer to the corresponding section.

If after an extended stop in sunshine, the interior temperature is very high, first ventilate the passenger compartment for a few moments.
Put the air flow control at a setting high enough to quickly change the air in the passenger compartment.

The condensation created by the air conditioning results in a discharge of water under the vehicle which is perfectly normal.

Manual air conditioning

The air conditioning system operates only with the engine running.

1. Temperature adjustment

☞ Turn the dial to select a position between blue (cold) and red (hot) so as to adjust the temperature to your requirements.

2. Air flow adjustment

This dial is used to increase or decrease the speed of the air booster fan.

☞ Turn the dial from position **1** to position **5** to obtain a comfortable air flow.

i ☞ If you place the air flow control in position **0**, the system is deactivated. However, a slight flow of air, due to the movement of the vehicle, can still be felt.

i Avoid driving too long with the ventilation off (risk of misting and deterioration of air quality).

3. Air distribution adjustment

This dial is used to arrange the distribution of air in the passenger compartment by combining several air outlets.

Windscreen and side windows.

Windscreen, side windows and footwells.

Footwells.

Central and side vents.

The air distribution can be adapted by placing the dial in an intermediate position.

4. Air intake / Air recirculation

The intake of exterior air prevents the formation of mist on the windscreen and side windows.

The recirculation of interior air isolates the passenger compartment from exterior odours and smoke.

> i This function allows hot or cold air to be delivered selectively and more quickly.

Return to exterior air intake as soon as possible to prevent deterioration of the the air quality and the formation of mist.

☞ Press the button to recirculate the interior air. The indicator lamp comes on to confirm this.

☞ Press the button again to permit the intake of exterior air. The indicator lamp goes off to confirm this.

5. Air conditioning On/Off

The air conditioning is designed to operate effectively in all seasons, with the windows closed.
It enables you to:
- lower the temperature, in summer,
- increase the effectiveness of the demisting in winter, above 3 °C.

Switching on

☞ Press the **"A/C"** button, the button's indicator lamp comes on.

> i The air conditioning does not operate when the air flow adjustment control **2** is in position "**0**".
> To obtain cooled air more quickly, you can use recirculation of interior air for a few moments. Then return to fresh air intake.

Switching off

☞ Press the **"A/C"** button again, the button's indicator lamp goes off.

Switching off may affect comfort levels (humidity, condensation).

Dual-zone digital air conditioning

The air conditioning system operates when the engine is running.

Automatic operation

1. Automatic comfort programme

We recommend the use of one of the three AUTO modes available: they provide optimised regulation of the temperature in the passenger compartment according to the comfort value that you have chosen.
These three modes automatically adjust the air flow, according to the desired setting, while also maintaining the desired comfort value.

This system is designed to operate effectively in all seasons, with the windows closed.

☞ Press the **"AUTO"** button repeatedly:
- a first indicator lamp comes on; the "light" setting mode is selected,
- a second indicator lamp comes on; the "medium" setting mode is selected,
- a third indicator lamp comes on; the "intense" mode setting is selected.

i When the engine is cold, the air flow will reach its optimum level progressively, taking account of the weather and the desired comfort level so as to avoid too great a distribution of cold air.
On entering the vehicle, if the interior temperature is much colder or warmer than the comfort value, there is no need to change the value displayed in order to obtain the comfort required.
The system corrects the difference in temperature automatically and as quickly as possible.

2. Driver's side adjustment

3. Passenger's side adjustment

The driver and front passenger can each adjust the temperature to their requirements.
The value indicated on the display corresponds to a level of comfort and not to a temperature in degrees Celsius or Fahrenheit.

☞ Turn control **2** or **3** to the left or to the right respectively to decrease or increase this value.

A setting around the value 21 provides optimum comfort. However, depending on your requirements, a setting between 18 and 24 is normal.
You are advised to avoid a left / right setting difference of more than 3.

4. Automatic visibility programme

For more information on the automatic visibility programme, refer to the **"Front demisting - defrosting"** section.

i With Stop & Start, when demisting has been activated, the STOP mode is not available.

Manual operation

If you wish, you can make a different choice from that offered by the system by changing a setting. The the **"AUTO"** indicator lamps go off; the other functions will still be controlled automatically.

☞ Pressing the **"AUTO"** button returns the system to completely automatic operation.

i For maximum cooling or heating of the passenger compartment, it is possible to exceed the minimum value 14 or the maximum value 28.

☞ Turn control **2** or **3** to the left until **"LO"** is displayed or to the right until **"HI"** is displayed.

5. Air conditioning On / Off

☞ Press this button to switch off the air conditioning.

Switching the system off could result in discomfort (humidity, condensation).

☞ Press this button again to return to automatic operation of the air conditioning. The indicator lamp on the **"A/C"** button comes on.

6. Air distribution adjustment

☞ Press one or more buttons to direct the air flow towards:
- the windscreen and side windows (demisting or defrosting),
- the outer and centre air vents,
- the footwells.

You can combine the three orientations to obtain the desired air distribution.

7. Air flow adjustment

☞ Turn this control to the left to decrease the air flow or to the right to increase the air flow.

The air flow indicator lamps, between the two fans, come on progressively in relation to the value requested.

8. Air intake / Air recirculation

☞ Press this button for recirculation of the interior air. The indicator lamp in the button comes on.

Air recirculation enables the passenger compartment to be isolated from exterior odours and smoke.

☞ As soon as possible, press this button again to permit the intake of outside air and prevent the formation of condensation. The indicator lamp in the button goes off.

9. "REST" function: ventilation with the engine off

Even with the engine is off, you can operate the ventilation for a few minutes.

For example, while you are away from the vehicle, the passengers can still enjoy some air circulation without having the engine running. This function is available after switching on the ignition, as well as after stopping the engine. The period that the function is available depends on the state of charge of the battery. You can activate the "REST" function while the air conditioning control screens are on.

i Avoid prolonged operation in interior air recirculation mode (risk of misting and deterioration of air quality).

On switching on the engine

- The control screens come on: the function is available.
- Pressing the **REST** button activates the ventilation for a few minutes. Activation of the function is confirmed by the display of two dashes in the control screens and four air flow level indicator lamps.
- The function can be deactivated and reactivated if the control screens are on.
- The screens go off at the end of this period.

On stopping the engine

- While the control screens remain on: the function is available.
- Pressing the **REST** button activates the ventilation for a few minutes. Activation of the function is confirmed by the display of two dashes in the control screens and four air flow level indicator lamps.
  Locking the vehicle has no effect on this function.
- The control screens go off at the end of this period.
  Pressing again before the end of the period interrupts off the ventilation definitively: the control screens go off and the function is no longer available.

Switching the system off

☞ Turn the air flow control to the left until all of the indicator lamps go off.

This action switches off the air conditioning and the ventilation.
Temperature related comfort is no longer assured but a slight flow of air, due to the movement of the vehicle, can still be felt.

☞ Modify the settings (temperature, air flow or air distribution) or press the **"AUTO"** button to reactivate the system with the values set before it was switched off.

i This switch does not operate the air conditioning, only the air fan.
When the "REST" function is activated, you cannot modify the temperature, air flow and distribution settings: these are controlled automatically according to the ambient temperature.
This function is not available in the STOP mode of Stop & Start.

! Avoid prolonged operation in interior air recirculation mode or driving for long periods with the system off (risk of misting and deterioration of air quality).

Front demist - defrost

These markings on the control panel indicate the control positions for rapid demisting or defrosting of the windscreen and side windows.

With manual air conditioning

- ☞ Put the temperature, air flow and distribution controls to the dedicated marked position.
- ☞ Put the air intake control to the "Exterior air intake" position
(indicator lamp on the control off).
- ☞ Switch on the air conditioning by pressing the **"A/C"** button; the warning lamp in the button comes on.

i With Stop & Start, when the demisting, air conditioning and air flow functions are activated, STOP mode is not available.

With digital dual-zone air conditioning

Automatic visibility programme

- ☞ Select this programme to demist or defrost the windscreen and side windows as quickly as possible.

The system automatically manages the air conditioning, air flow and air intake, and provides optimum distribution towards the windscreen and side windows.

- ☞ To stop the programme, press either the **"visibility"** button again or **"AUTO"**, the warning lamp on the button goes off and the warning lamp on the **"AUTO"** button comes on.

The system starts again with the values in use before it was overridden by the visibility programme.

i With Stop & Start, when demisting has been activated, the STOP mode is not available.

Rear screen demist - defrost

The control button is located on the air conditioning system control panel.

Switching on

The rear screen demisting/defrosting can only operate when the engine is running.

☞ Press this button to demist/defrost the rear screen and (depending on version) the door mirrors. The indicator lamp associated with the button comes on.

Switching off

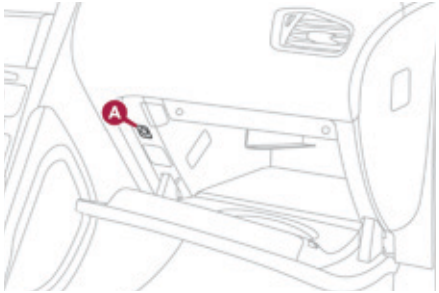
The demisting/defrosting switches off automatically to prevent an excessive consumption of current.

☞ It is possible to stop the demisting/defrosting operation before it is switched off automatically by pressing the button again. The indicator lamp associated with the button goes off.

e ☞ Switch off the demisting/defrosting of the rear screen and door mirrors as soon as appropriate, as lower current consumption results in reduced fuel consumption.

Front fittings

Illuminated glove box

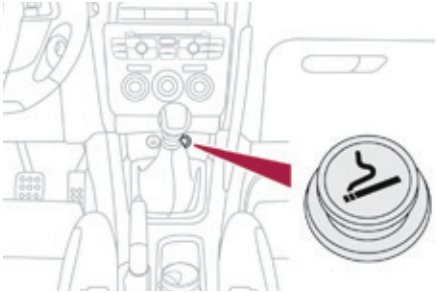


It has dedicated locations for storing a water bottle, the vehicle's handbook pack...
Its lid has locations for storing a pen, a pair of glasses, tokens, maps, a cup...

☞ To open the glove box, raise the handle.

The glove box is illuminated when the lid is opened.
It gives access to the passenger's front airbag deactivation switch **A**.

Cigarette lighter / 12 V accessory socket



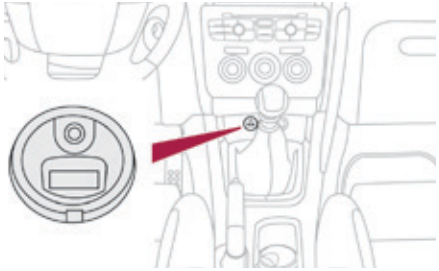
☞ To use the cigarette lighter, press it in and wait a few seconds until it pops out automatically.

☞ To connect a 12 V accessory (max power: 120 W), remove the cigarette lighter and connect a suitable adaptor.

You can use this socket to connect a telephone charger, a bottle warmer...
After use, put the cigarette lighter back into place straight away.

! The connection of an electrical device not approved by CITROËN, such as a USB charger, may adversely affect the operation of vehicle electrical systems, causing faults such as poor telephone reception or interference with displays in the screens.

USB Player



This connection box comprises a USB port and a Jack auxiliary socket.

USB port

The USB port allows the connection of a portable device, such as a digital audio player of the iPod® type or a USB memory stick.
The USB player reads your audio files, which are transmitted to your audio system and played via the vehicle's speakers.
The management of these files is from the steering mounted controls or the audio system.

i When connected to the USB port, the portable device charges automatically. While charging, a message is displayed if the power consumption of the portable device exceeds the current delivered by the vehicle.

The USB also allows a telephone to be connected by a MirrorLink™ connection, so that use can be made in the touch screen tablet of certain applications on the telephone.

Jack auxiliary socket

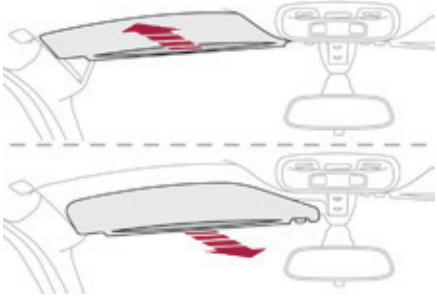
The Jack auxiliary socket allows the connection of a portable device, such as a digital audio player, so that your audio files can be heard through the vehicle's speakers.
The management of these files is from the portable device.

i For more information on the **Audio and telematics**, refer to the corresponding section.

Panoramic windscreen

A tinted panoramic windscreen that increases brightness and vision in the cabin. Fitted on each side with a blind to improve temperature control and a sun visor to avoid dazzle.

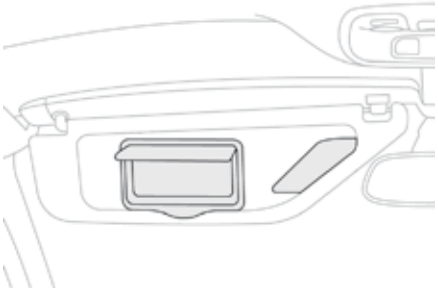
Blind



- To open the blind, pull it by its central grip to the desired position.
- To close or stow the blind, pull it forward by its central grip then guide it to the desired position.

The sun visor must be in the folded position before moving the blind.

Sun visor



Fitted with a vanity mirror and ticket holder.

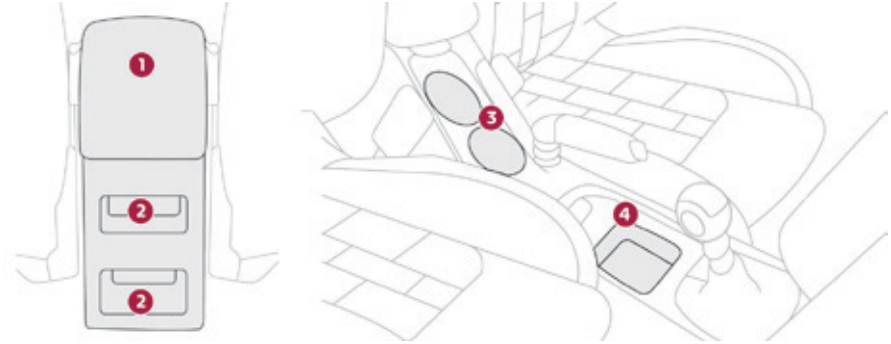
- Lower the sun visor to avoid dazzle from the front.
- Disengage the sun visor from its central fixing and turn it towards the door glass to avoid dazzle from the side.

! Do not attach or hang heavy objects on the blinds or their slide rails.

Centre consoles

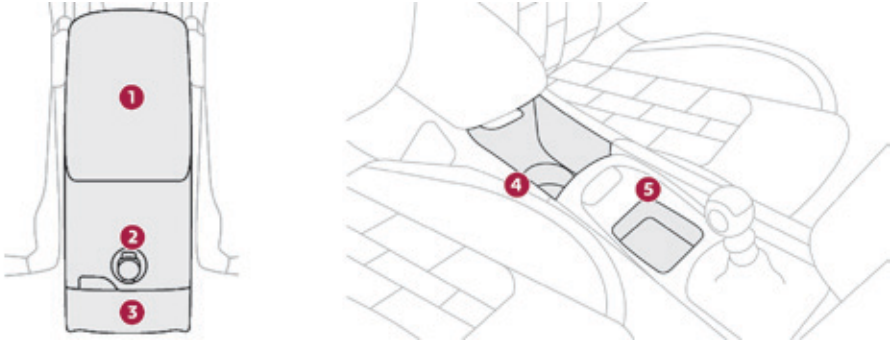
Semi-raised version

1. **Front armrest**
2. **Open storage**
3. **Cup holder**
4. **Storage pocket**



Tall version

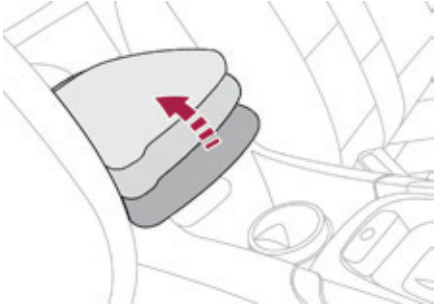
1. **Front armrest**
2. **12 V accessory socket**
3. **Storage box**
4. **Cup holder / Bottle holder**
5. **Storage pocket or START/STOP button (depending on version)**



Front armrest

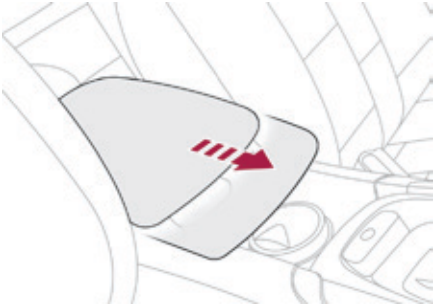
Comfort and storage system for the driver and front passenger.
The height and length of the armrest cover can be adjusted.

Height adjustment



- ☞ Raise the cover to the required position (low, intermediate or high).
- ☞ If you raise the cover slightly beyond the high position, guide it when lowering it to the low position.

Longitudinal adjustment



- ☞ Slide the cover fully forwards or rearwards.

Storage

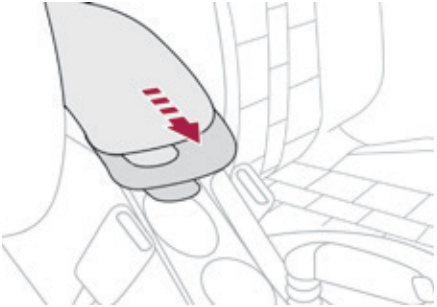
There is a storage space below the cover of the armrest. Depending on equipment, this can contain a 230 V / 50 Hz socket and the back-up reader for the electronic key of the Keyless Entry and Starting system.

- ☞ Raise the lever.
- ☞ Raise the cover fully.

Front armrest

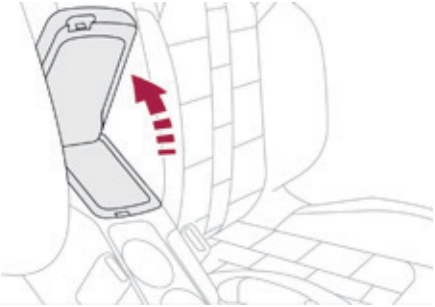
Comfort and storage system for the driver and front passenger.
The length of the armrest cover can be adjusted.

Longitudinal adjustment



- To move forwards, raise the lever. The armrest slides forwards to its stop.
- To stow it, slide it fully back and press down to lock it.

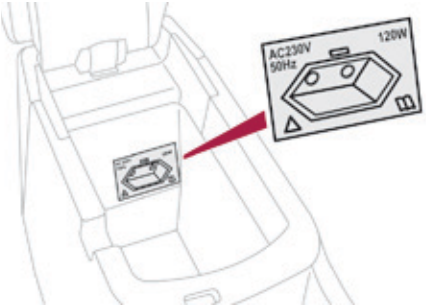
Storage



There is a storage space below the cover of the armrest. Depending on equipment, this can contain the back-up reader for the electronic key of the Keyless Entry and Starting system.

- Raise the cover fully.

230 V / 50 Hz power socket



A 230 V / 50 Hz socket (maximum power: 120 W) is fitted to the centre console.
To use the socket:

- ☞ lift the front armrest cover for access to its compartment,
- ☞ check that the warning lamp is on green,
- ☞ connect your multimedia or other electrical device (telephone charger, laptop computer, CD-DVD player, baby food warmer...).

This socket works with the engine running, as well as in STOP mode on Stop & Start.
In the event of a fault with the socket, the green warning lamp flashes.
Have it checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

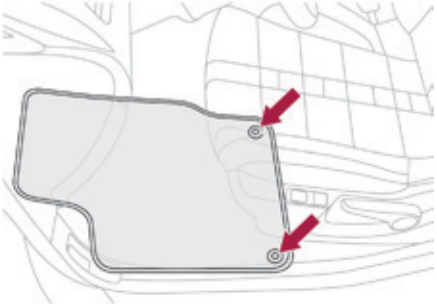
! Connect only one device at a time to the socket (no extension or multi-way connector).
Connect only devices with class II insulation (shown on the device).
As a safety measure, when electrical consumption is high and when required by the vehicle's electrical system (particular weather conditions, electrical overload...), the power supply to the socket will be cut off; the green warning lamp goes off.

Mats

Fitting

When fitting the mat for the first time, on the driver's side use only the fixings provided in the wallet attached.
The other mats are simply placed on the carpet.

Removal



To remove the mat on the driver's side:
- ☞ move the seat as far back as possible,
- ☞ unclip the fixings,
- ☞ remove the mat.

Refitting

To refit the mat on the driver's side:
- ☞ position the mat correctly,
- ☞ refit the fixings by pressing,
- ☞ check that the mat is secured correctly.

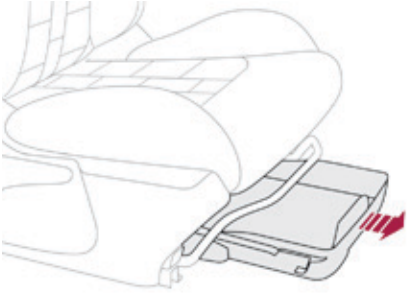
! To avoid any risk of jamming of the pedals:
- only use mats which are suited to the fixings already present in the vehicle; these fixings must be used,
- never fit one mat on top of another.

The use of mats not approved by CITROËN may interfere with access to the pedals and hinder the operation of the cruise control / speed limiter.
The mats approved by CITROËN have two fixings located below the seat.

Storage drawers

Located under each front seat, except for the driver's seat on versions with electric seat.

Opening



☞ Raise the front of the drawer and pull it open.

! Do not place heavy objects in the drawer.

Removal

Avoid removing the drawer completely, as refitting it is not easy.

☞ Open the drawer fully.
☞ Pull the drawer upwards to disengage it.

Refitting

However, if it has been completely removed, to put it back in place:

☞ use the torch to illuminate the area under the seat,
☞ engage the drawer in its runners,
☞ lift the retaining tongues and slide the drawer under these tongues,
☞ at the end of its travel, press down on the drawer to engage it.

Rear fittings

12 V accessory socket

☞ To connect a 12 V accessory (max power: 120 W), lift the cover and connect a suitable adaptor.

Rear armrest

Comfort system for the rear passengers.

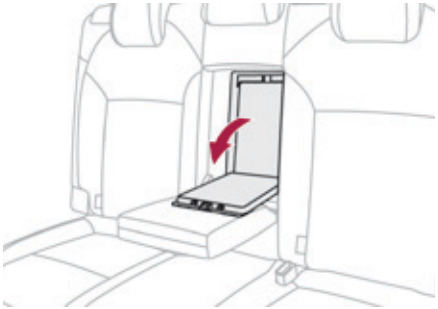
☞ Lower the rear armrest for a more comfortable position.

This also gives access to the ski flap.

Ski flap

Arrangement for storing and transporting long objects.

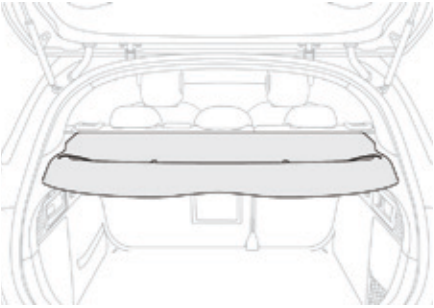
Opening



☞ Lower the rear armrest.
☞ Pull the flap handle downwards.
☞ Lower the flap.
☞ Load the objects from inside the boot.

Boot fittings

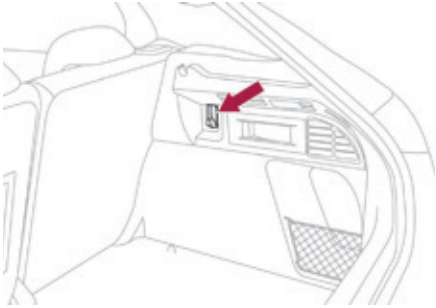
Rear parcel shelf



To remove the shelf:
- ☞ unhook the two cords,
- ☞ raise the shelf slightly, then remove it.

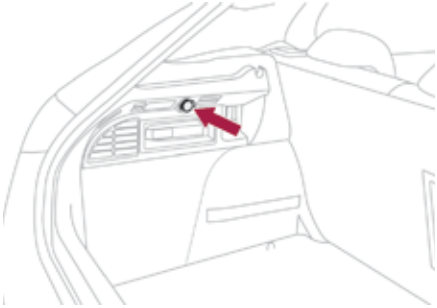
There are several options for storing the shelf:
- either upright behind the front seats,
- or flat at the base of the boot.

Hooks



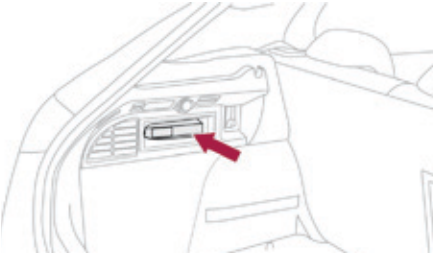
The hooks can be used to secure shopping bags.

12 V accessory socket



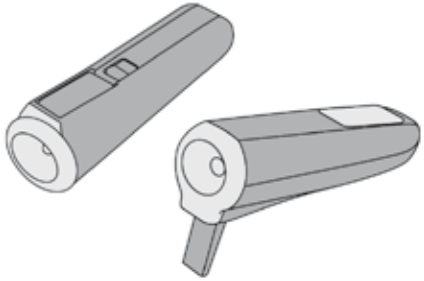
- ☞ To connect a 12 V accessory (max power: 120 W), remove the cap and connect an appropriate adaptor.
- ☞ Switch on the ignition.

Torch



This is a removable lamp, fitted in the boot wall, which can be used to light the boot or as a torch.
For more information on the **Boot lamp**, refer to the corresponding section.

Operation



This torch operates with NiMH type rechargeable batteries.
It has a battery life of approximately 45 minutes and charges while you are driving.

! Observe the polarities when fitting the rechargeable batteries.
Never replace the rechargeable batteries with normal disposable batteries.

Use

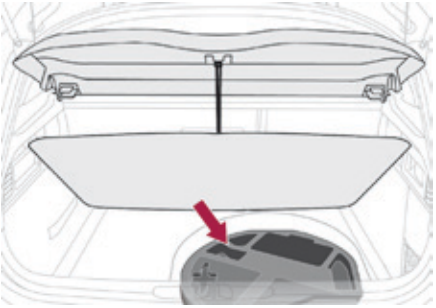
- ☞ Extract the torch from its location pulling it upwards.
- ☞ Press the switch, located on the back, to switch the torch on or off.
- ☞ Unfold the support, located on the back, to set down and raise the torch; for example, when changing a wheel.

Storing

- ☞ Put the torch back in place in its location starting with the lower part.
If you have forgotten to switch off the torch, this switches it off automatically.

i If the torch is not engaged correctly, it may not charge and may not come on when the boot is opened.

Storage box

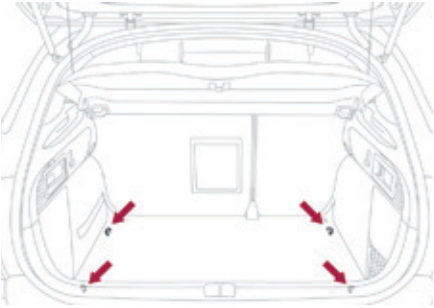


☞ Raise the boot carpet for access to the storage box.

This has areas for the storage of a box of spare bulbs, a first aid kit, two warning triangles...

It also contains the vehicle tools, the temporary puncture repair kit...

Stowing rings



There are four stowing rings in the boot for securing luggage:

- two are located on the boot floor,
- two are located at the aperture, in the lower part.

LIGHTING AND VISIBILITY

04

Lighting control

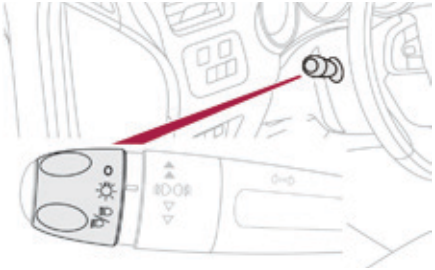
System for selection and control of the various front and rear lamps providing the vehicle's lighting.

In some weather conditions (e.g. low temperature or humidity), the presence of misting on the internal surface of the glass of the headlamps and rear lamps is normal; it disappears after the lamps have been on for a few minutes.

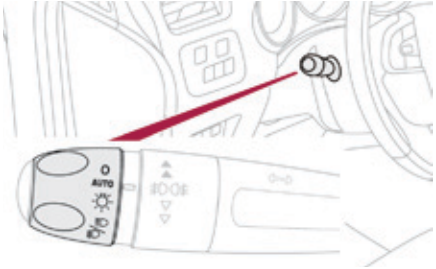
Travelling abroad

Halogen and xenon headlamps
If planning to use your vehicle in a country that drives on the other side of the road, the headlamp dipped beams must be adjusted to avoid dazzling on-coming drivers.
Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Without AUTO lighting



With AUTO lighting



Main lighting

Selection of main lighting mode

Turn the ring to place the desired symbol against the mark.

0	Lighting off (ignition off) / Daytime running lamps (engine running).
AUTO	Automatic illumination of headlamps.
	Sidelamps only.
	Dipped or main beam headlamps.

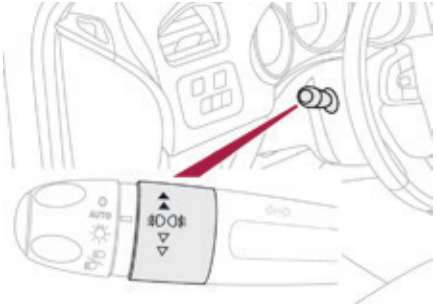
Dipping the headlamps

Pull the stalk to switch between dipped and main beam headlamps.

In the lighting off and sidelamps modes, the driver can switch on the main beam headlamps temporarily ("headlamp flash") by maintaining a pull on the stalk.

Operation of the selected lighting is confirmed by the illumination of the corresponding indicator lamp.

Front and rear foglamps



Foglamp selection ring.
The foglamps operate with the dipped and main beam headlamps.

front and rear foglamps

Rotate and release the ring:

- ☞ forwards a first time to switch on the front foglamps,
- ☞ forwards a second time to switch on the rear foglamps,
- ☞ rearwards a first time to switch off the rear foglamps,
- ☞ rearwards a second time to switch of the front fog lamps.

When the headlamps switch off with automatic illumination of headlamps (AUTO model) or when the dipped beam headlamps are switched off manually, the foglamps and sidelamps remain on.

- ☞ Turn the ring rearwards to switch off the foglamps, the sidelamps will then switch off.

! In good or rainy weather, by both day and night, the front foglamps and the rear foglamps are prohibited. In these situations, the power of their beams may dazzle other drivers. They should only be used in fog or falling snow.
In these weather conditions, you should switch on the foglamps and dipped beam headlamps manually, as the sunshine sensor may detect sufficient light.
Do not forget to switch off the front and rear foglamps when they are no longer necessary.

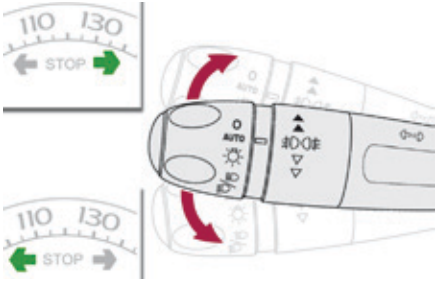
Direction indicators

Switching off the lighting when switching off the ignition

When the ignition is switched off, all of the lamps switch off immediately, except for the dipped beam headlamps if automatic guide-me-home lighting is activated.

Switching on the lighting when switching on the ignition

To reactivate the lighting control stalk, turn the ring **A** to position **"0"** - lighting off, then to the position of your choice. When the driver's door is opened, a temporary audible signal warns you that the vehicle's lighting is on. They switch off automatically after a period which depends on the state of charge of the battery (entry to energy economy mode).



- Left: lower the lighting stalk, passing the point of resistance.
- Right: raise the lighting stalk, passing the point of resistance.

Three flashes of the direction indicators

- Press briefly upwards or downwards, without going beyond the point of resistance; the direction indicators will flash 3 times.

On versions fitted with LED direction indicators, the line of LEDs is illuminated sequentially. The brightness of the daytime runnning lamps is reduced during sequential operation of the direction indicators.

Daytime running lamps

Daytime lighting which comes on automatically when the engine is started making the vehicle more visible to other users.
This function is assured by dedicated lamps.

Manual guide-me-home lighting

The temporary illumination of the dipped beam headlamps after the vehicle's ignition has been switched off makes the driver's exit easier when the light is poor.

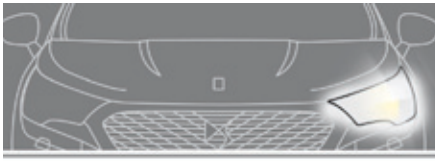
Switching on

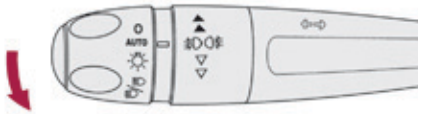
☞ With the ignition off, "flash" the headlamps using the lighting stalk.
☞ A further "headlamp flash" switches the function off.

Switching off

The manual guide-me-home lighting switches off automatically after a set time.

Parking lamps





Side markers for the vehicle by illumination of the sidelamps on the traffic side only.

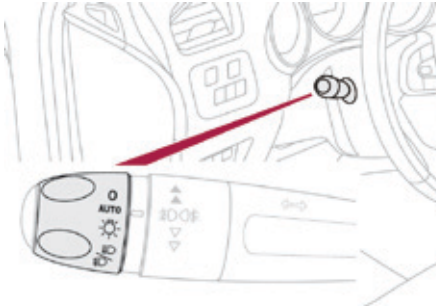
☞ Depending on version, within one minute of switching off the ignition, operate the lighting control stalk up or down depending on the traffic side (e.g. when parking on the left, lighting control stalk upwards, the right-hand sidelamps are on).

This is confirmed by an audible signal and illumination of the corresponding direction indicator warning lamp in the instrument panel.
To switch off the parking lamps, return the lighting control stalk to the central position.

Automatic illumination of headlamps

When a low level of ambient light is detected by a sunshine sensor, the number plate lamps, sidelamps and dipped beam headlamps are switched on automatically, without any action on the part of the driver. They can also come on if rain is detected, at the same time as automatic operation of the windscreen wipers. As soon as the ambient light returns to a sufficient level or after the windscreen wipers are switched off, the lamps are switched off automatically.

Activation



☞ Turn the ring to the **"AUTO"** position. The activation of the function is accompanied by the display of a message in the screen.

Deactivation

☞ Turn the ring to another position.
Deactivation of the function is accompanied by the display of a message in the screen.

Operating fault

SERVICE In the event of a malfunction of the sunshine sensor, the lighting comes on, this warning lamp is displayed in the instrument panel and/or a message appears in the screen, accompanied by an audible signal.

Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Automatic guide-me-home lighting

When the automatic illumination of headlamps function is activated (lighting control stalk in the "**AUTO**" position), under low ambient light the dipped beam headlamps remain on when the ignition is switched off.

Programming

Activation or deactivation, as well as the duration of the guide-me-home lighting, is set in the vehicle configuration menu.

! In fog or snow, the sunshine sensor may detect sufficient light. In this case, the lighting will not come on automatically.
Do not cover the sunshine sensor, coupled with the rain sensor and located in the centre of the windscreen behind the rear view mirror; the associated functions would no longer be controlled.

Welcome lighting

The remote switching on of the lighting makes your access to the vehicle easier in poor light. It is activated depending on the ambient light level detected by the sunshine sensor.

Switching on

☞ Press the open padlock on the remote control or one of the front door handles with the "Keyless Entry and Starting" system.

The sidelamps and dipped beam headlamps, as well as the side spotlamps, located under the door mirrors, come on; your vehicle is also unlocked.

Switching off

The welcome lighting switches off automatically after a programmed time, when the ignition is switched on or on locking the vehicle.

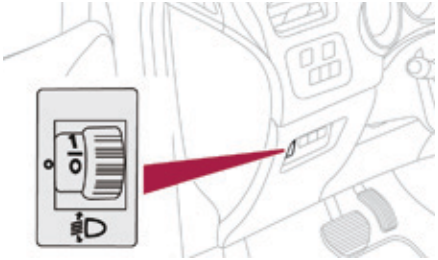
Programming

Activation or deactivation, as well as the duration of the lighting duration for the welcome lighting can be set via the vehicle configuration menu.

Headlamp beam height adjustment

Manual adjustment of halogen headlamps

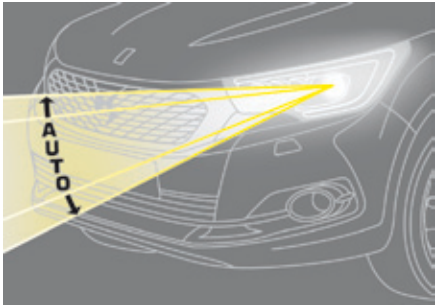
To avoid causing a nuisance to other road users, the height of the halogen headlamp beams should be adjusted according to the load in the vehicle.



0. 1 or 2 people in the front seats.
-. 3 people.
1. 5 people.
-. Intermediate setting.
2. 5 people + maximum authorised load.
-. Intermediate setting.
3. Driver + maximum authorised load.

i The initial setting is position **"0"**.

Automatic adjustment of xenon and full-LED headlamps



This system adjusts the height of the xenon headlamp beams automatically and when stationary, according to the load in the vehicle, so as to avoid causing a nuisance to other road user.

SERVICE If a malfunction occurs, this warning lamp is displayed in the instrument panel, accompanied by an audible signal and a message in the screen.

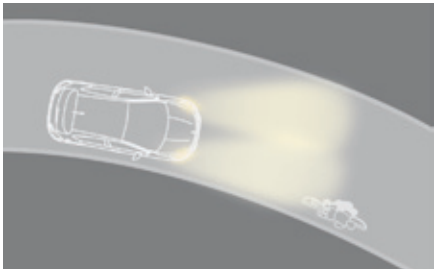
The system then places your headlamps in the lowest position.

! In the event of a fault, do not touch the xenon bulbs.
Have them checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

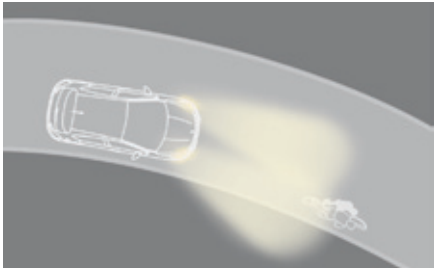
Directional lighting

When the dipped or main beam headlamps are on, this function, allows the light beams to better follow the road.
The use of this function, coupled with the xenon headlamps and the cornering lighting, considerably improves the quality of your lighting round bends.

without directional lighting



with directional lighting



This function is inactive:
- when stationary or at low speeds,
- when reverse is engaged.

Programming

The system is activated or deactivated in the vehicle configuration menu.

The system is activated by default.

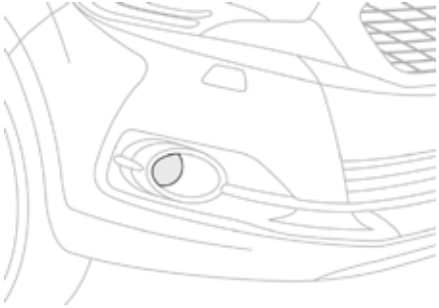
The state of the system stays in memory on switching off the ignition.

Operating fault

If a fault occurs, this warning lamp flashes in the instrument panel, accompanied by a message in the screen.

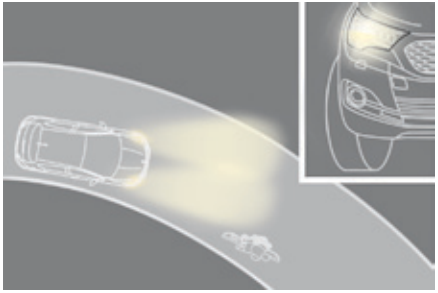
Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Cornering lighting

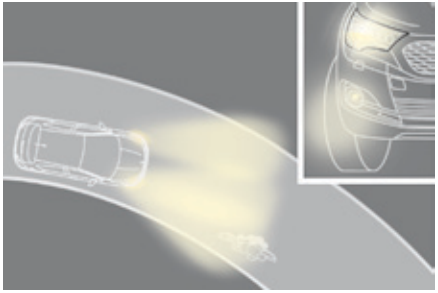


With dipped or main beams, this function makes use of the beam from a front foglamp to illuminate the inside of a bend, when the vehicle speed is below 25 mph (40 km/h) (urban driving, winding road, intersections, parking manoeuvres...).

Without cornering lighting



With cornering lighting



Switching on

The system operates:

- when the corresponding direction indicator is switched on,

or

- from a certain angle of rotation of the steering wheel.

Switching off

The system does not operate:

- below a certain angle of rotation of the steering wheel,
- above 25 mph (40 km/h),
- when reverse gear is engaged.

Programming

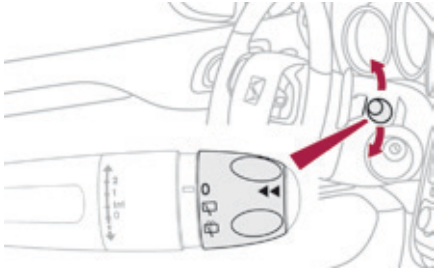
The system is activated or deactivated in the vehicle configuration menu.

The system is activated by default.

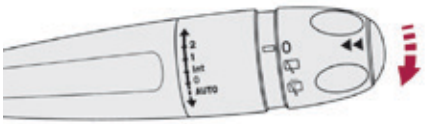
Wiper control

System for selection and control of the various front and rear wiping modes for the elimination of rain and cleaning the screens.
The vehicle's front and rear wipers are designed to improve the driver's visibility according to the climatic conditions.

Without AUTO wiping



With AUTO wiping



Manual controls

The wipers are controlled directly by the driver.

Windscreen wipers

Wiping speed control stalk: raise or lower the stalk to the desired position.

2	Fast wipe (heavy rain).
1	Normal wipe (moderate rain).
Int	Intermittent wipe (proportional to the speed of the vehicle).
0	Park.
↓	Single wipe (press downwards or pull the stalk briefly towards you, then release).

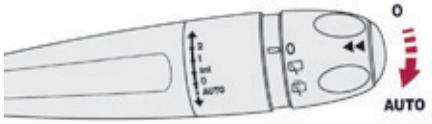
or

AUTO ↓	Automatic wiping (press down, then release). Single wipe (pull the stalk briefly towards you).

Automatic rain sensitive windscreen wipers

The windscreen wipers operate automatically, without any action on the part of the driver, if rain is detected (sensor behind the rear view mirror), adapting their speed to the intensity of the rainfall.

Switching on



Briefly push stalk downwards.

The instruction is confirmed by a wiping cycle, accompanied by illumination of this warning lamp in the instrument panel and an activation message.

Switching off

Briefly push stalk downwards again.

The instruction is confirmed by this warning lamp going off in the instrument panel and/or the display of a deactivation message.

i The automatic rain sensitive windscreen wipers must be reactivated if the ignition has been off for more than one minute.

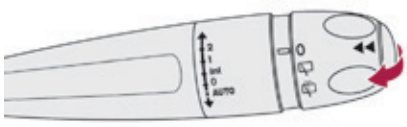
Operating fault

If an automatic rain sensitive wiper malfunction occurs, the wipers will operate in intermittent mode.
Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

! Do not cover the rain sensor, linked with the sunshine sensor and located in the centre of the windscreen behind the rear view mirror.
Switch off the automatic rain sensitive wipers when using an automatic car wash.
In winter, it is advisable to wait until the windscreen is completely clear of ice before activating the automatic rain sensitive wipers.

Windscreen and headlamp wash

Windscreen wash



☞ Pull the windscreen wiper stalk towards you. The windscreen wash then the windscreen wipers operate for a fixed period.

It operates only when the headlamps are off or the vehicle is stationary.

Headlamp wash

Associated with the windscreen wash, the headlamp washers operate with the vehicle moving, when **the dipped or main beam headlamps are on**.

> i To reduce the consumption of the fluid by the headlamp washers, they operate only with every seventh use of the screenwash or every 25 miles (40 km) during a given journey.

Low screenwash / headlamp wash fluid level

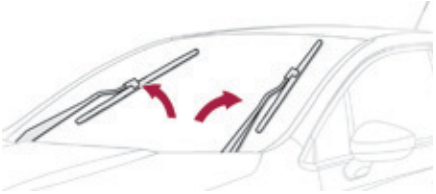
On vehicle fitted with headlamp washers, the low level of this fluid is indicated by gauge in the reservoir filler neck under the bonnet. Checking and topping up this fluid can should be done with the engine off.

> i The level of this fluid should be checked regularly, particularly during winter.

For more information on **Checking the levels** and in particular the screenwash / headlamp wash, refer to the corresponding section.

Special position of the windscreen wipers

This position permits release of the windscreen wiper blades.
It is used for cleaning or replacement of the wiper blades. It can also be useful, in winter, to release the wiper blades from the windscreen.



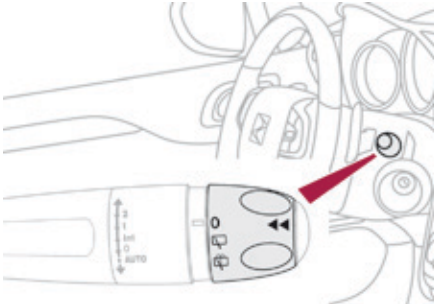
☞ Any action on the wiper stalk within one minute after switching off the ignition places the wiper blades vertically on the screen.

☞ To park the wiper blades again, switch on the ignition and operate the wiper stalk.

i To maintain the effectiveness of the flat wiper blades, it is advisable to:
- handle them with care,
- clean them regularly using soapy water,
- avoid using them to retain cardboard on the windscreen,
- replace them at the first signs of wear.

Rear wiper

! If a significant accumulation of snow or ice is present, or when using a tailgate bicycle carrier, deactivate the automatic rear wiper via the vehicle configuration menu.



Rear wiper selection ring: turn the ring to place the desired symbol against the marking.

Park,

Intermittent wipe,

Wash-wipe.
Turn the ring to its stop/ the rear screen wash, then the rear wiper operates for a set duration.

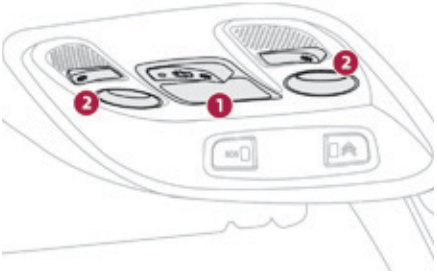
Reverse gear

When reverse gear is engaged, the rear wiper will come into operation if the windscreen wipers are operating.

Programming

The function is activated or deactivated via the vehicle configuration menu.
This function is activated by default.

Courtesy lamps



1. **Front courtesy lamp**
2. **Front map reading lamps**
3. **Rear courtesy lamp**
4. **Rear map reading lamps**

Front and rear courtesy lamps

In this position, the courtesy lamp comes on gradually:

- when the vehicle is unlocked,
- when the key is removed from the ignition,
- on opening a door,
- when the remote control locking button is used to locate your vehicle.

It switches off gradually:
- when the vehicle is locked,
- when the ignition is switched on,
- 30 seconds after the last door is closed.

Permanently off.

Permanent lighting.

i In permanent lighting mode, the lighting time varies according to the circumstances:
- with the ignition off, approximately ten minutes,
- in energy economy mode, approximately thirty seconds,
- with the engine running, unlimited.

When the courtesy lamp is in the "permanent lighting" position, the rear courtesy lamp also comes on, except if it is in the "permanently off" position.
To switch off the rear courtesy lamp, put it in the "permanently off" position.

Front and rear map reading lamps

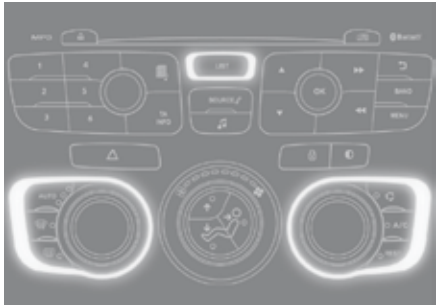
☞ With the ignition on, press the corresponding switch.

! Take care not to put anything in contact with the courtesy lamps.

Interior mood lighting

The dimmed passenger compartment lighting improves visibility in the vehicle when the light is poor.

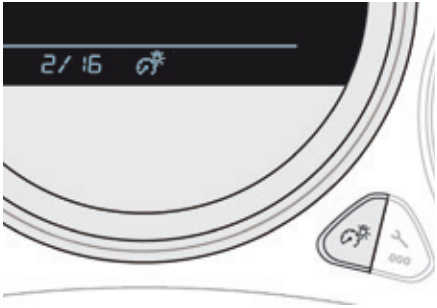
Switching on



At night, the audio system and digital air conditioning illumination, together with the illumination of the central dashboard storage box, comes on automatically when the sidelamps are on.

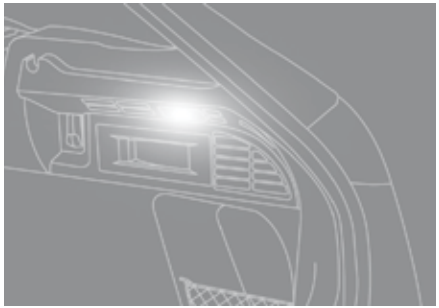
On certain versions, three LEDs, located in the rail linking the rear view mirror to the roof come on as well.

Switching off



The interior mood lighting switches off automatically when the sidelamps are switched off.
It can be switched off manually by adjusting the instrument panel lighting dimmer button to one of the lowest settings.

Boot lamp



This comes on automatically when the boot is opened and goes off automatically when the boot is closed.

i The lighting time varies according to the circumstances:
- when the ignition is off, approximately ten minutes,
- in energy economy mode, approximately thirty seconds,
- when the engine is running, no limit.

SAFETY

05

General safety recommendations

Labels are applied at various points on your vehicle. They carry safety warnings as well as vehicle identification information. Do not remove them: they form an integral part of your vehicle.

For any work on your vehicle, use a qualified workshop that has the technical information, skills and equipment required, all of which a CITROËN dealer is able to provide.

We draw your attention to the following points:

- The fitting of electrical equipment or accessories not listed by CITROËN may cause excessive current consumption and faults and failures with the electrical system of your vehicle. Contact a CITROËN dealer for information on the range of recommended accessories.
- As a safety measure, access to the diagnostic socket, used for the vehicle's electronic systems, is reserved strictly for CITROËN dealers or qualified workshops, equipped with the special tools required (risk of malfunctions of the vehicle's electronic systems that could cause breakdowns or serious accidents). The manufacturer cannot be held responsible if this advice is not followed.
- Any modification or adaptation not intended or authorised by Automobiles CITROËN or carried out without meeting the technical requirements defined by the manufacturer would lead to the suspension of the legal and contractual warranties.

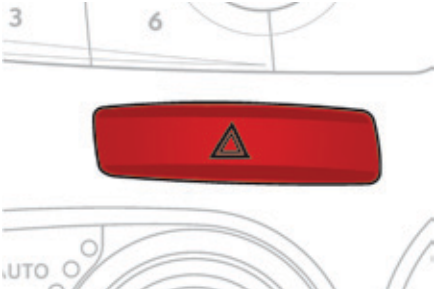
Installation of accessory radio communication transmitters

Before installing a radio communication transmitter, you must contact a CITROËN dealer for the specification of transmitters which can be fitted (frequency, maximum power, aerial position, specific installation requirements), in line with the Vehicle Electromagnetic Compatibility Directive (2004/104/EC).

Depending on the legislation in force in the country, certain safety equipment may be compulsory: high visibility safety vests, warning triangles, breathalysers, spare bulbs, spare fuses, fire extinguisher, first aid kit, mud flaps at the rear of the vehicle...

Hazard warning lamps

Visual warning with all of the direction indicators flashing to alert other road users to a vehicle breakdown, towing or accident.



☞ Press this button, all of the direction indicators flash.

They can operate with the ignition off.

Automatic operation of hazard warning lamps

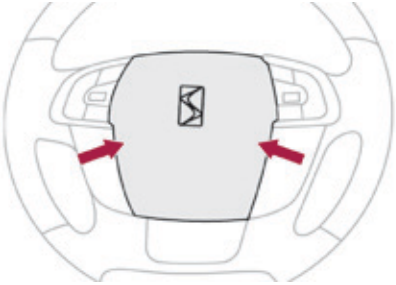
When braking in an emergency, depending on the deceleration, the hazard warning lamps come on automatically.

They switch off automatically the first time you accelerate.

☞ You can also switch them off by pressing the button.

Horn

Audible warning system to alert other road users to an imminent danger.

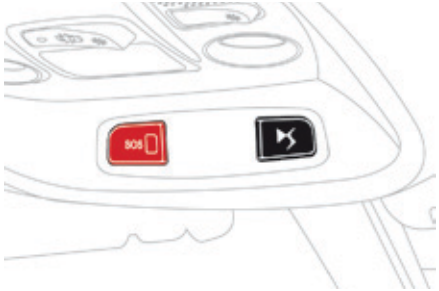


☞ Press the central part of the multifunction steering wheel.

i Use the horn moderately and only in the circumstances allowed by the traffic regulations in the country in which you are driving.

Emergency or assistance call

Type 1



Localised Emergency Call

In an emergency, press this button for more than 2 seconds. Flashing of the green indicator lamp and a voice message confirm that the call has been made to the "Localised Emergency Call"* centre.

Pressing this button again immediately cancels the call.
The green indicator lamp goes off.

The green indicator lamp remains on (without flashing) when communication is established. It goes off at the end of the call.

Localised Emergency Call immediately locates your vehicle, makes contact with you in your language** and - if necessary - organises sending of the appropriate emergency services**. In countries where the service is not operational, or if the locating service has been expressly declined, the call is directed straight to the emergency services (112) without location.

! If an impact is detected by the airbag control unit, and independently of the deployment of any airbags, an emergency call is made automatically.

i If you benefit from the DS Connect BOX offer with the SOS and assistance pack included, you have available additional services in your personal space, via the website in your country.

* Depending on the terms and conditions for the service, available from dealers, and technological and technical limits.

** Depending on the geographic cover for "Localised Emergency Call", "Localised Assistance Call" and the official national language selected by the owner of the vehicle.
The list of countries covered by Telematic services is available at dealers or on the website in your country.

Operation of the system

When the ignition is switched on, the green indicator lamp comes on for 3 seconds indicating that the system is operating correctly.

If the orange indicator lamp flashes then goes off: the system has a fault.

If the orange indicator lamp is on fixed: the back-up battery should be replaced.
In both cases, the emergency and assistance calls service may not work.
Contact a qualified repairer as soon as possible.

> i The fault with the system does not prevent the vehicle being driven.

Localised Assistance Call

Press this button for more than 2 seconds to request assistance if the vehicle breaks down.
A voice message confirms that the call has been made**.

Pressing this button again immediately cancels the request.
The cancellation is confirmed by a voice message.

Geo-location

You can deactivate geo-location by simultaneously pressing the "Localised Emergency Call" and "Localised Assistance Call" buttons, followed by a press on "Localised Assistance Call" to confirm.

To reactivate geo-location, simultaneously press the "Localised Emergency Call" and "Localised Assistance Call" buttons again, followed by a press on "Localised Assistance Call" to confirm.

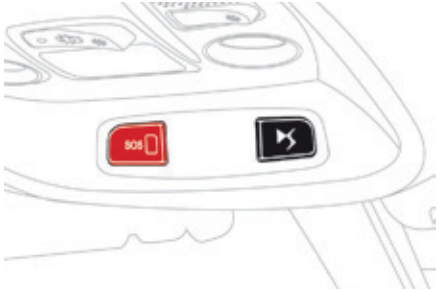
> i If you purchased your vehicle outside the Brand's dealer network, we suggest that you have a dealer check and, if desired, modify the configuration of these services.
> In a multi-lingual country, configuration is possible in the official national language of your choice.

> i For technical reasons, particularly to improve the quality of Telematic services to customers, the manufacturer reserves the right to carry out updates to the vehicle's on-board telematic system.

** Depending on the geographic cover for "Localised Emergency Call", "Localised Assistance Call" and the official national language selected by the owner of the vehicle.
The list of countries covered by Telematic services is available at dealers or on the website in your country.

Emergency or assistance call

Type 2



Localised Emergency Call

In an emergency, press this button for more than 2 seconds. Flashing of the green LED and a voice message confirm that the call has been made to the "Localised Emergency Call" call centre*.

Pressing this button again immediately cancels the request.
The green LED goes off.

The green LED remains on (without flashing) when communication is established.
It goes off at the end of the call.

"Localised Emergency Call" immediately locates your vehicle, starts communication with you in your language**, and where necessary sends the appropriate public emergency services**. In countries where the service is not available, or when the locating service has been expressly declined, the call is sent directly to the emergency services (112) without the vehicle location.

! If an impact is detected by the airbag control unit, and independently of the deployment of any airbags, an emergency call is made automatically.

i If you benefit from the DS Connect BOX offer with the SOS and assistance pack included, you have available additional services in your personal space, via the website in your country.

* Subject to the general conditions for the service available from dealers and subject to technological and technical limitations.

** Depending on the geographical cover of "Localised Emergency Call", "Localised Assistance Call" and the official national language selected by the owner of the vehicle.
The list of countries covered and Telematic services is available from dealers or on the website in your country.

Operation of the system

When the ignition is switched on, the green LED comes on for 3 seconds indicating that the system is operating correctly.

For all countries except Russia, Belarus and Kazakhstan.

The red indicator lamp flashes then goes off: there is a system fault.

The red indicator lamp is on continuously: replace the back-up battery.

For Russia, Belarus and Kazakhstan.

The red indicator lamp is on continuously: there is a system fault.

The red indicator lamp flashes: replace the back-up battery.

In either case, the emergency and assistance calls may not function.
Contact a qualified repairer as soon as possible.

> i A fault with the system does not prevent the vehicle being driven.

Localised Assistance Call

Press this button for more than 2 seconds to request assistance if the vehicle breaks down.

A voice message confirms that the call has been made**.

Pressing this button again immediately cancels the request.
The cancellation is confirmed by a voice message.

Geo-location

You can deactivate geo-location by simultaneously pressing the "Localised Emergency Call" and "Localised Assistance Call" buttons, followed by a press on "Localised Assistance Call" to confirm.

To reactivate geo-location, simultaneously press the "Localised Emergency Call" and "Localised Assistance Call" buttons again, followed by a press on "Localised Assistance Call" to confirm.

> i If you purchased your vehicle outside the Brand's dealer network, we invite you to have a dealer check the configuration of these services and, if desired, modified to suit your wishes.
> In a multi-lingual country, configuration is possible in the official national language of your choice.

> i For technical reasons and in particular to improve the quality of "Telematic services" services to customers, the manufacturer reserves the right to carry out updates to the vehicle's on-board telematic system.

** Depending on the geographical cover of "Localised Emergency Call", "Localised Assistance Call" and the official national language selected by the owner of the vehicle.
The list of countries covered and Telematic services is available from dealers or on the website in your country.

Braking assistance systems

Group of supplementary systems which help you to obtain optimum braking in complete safety in emergency situations:
- anti-lock braking system (ABS),
- electronic brake force distribution (EBFD),
- emergency braking assistance (EBA).

Anti-lock braking system and electronic brake force distribution

Linked systems which improve the stability and manoeuvrability of your vehicle when braking, in particular on poor or slippery surfaces.

Activation

The anti-lock braking system comes into operation automatically when there is a risk of wheel lock.
Normal operation of the ABS may make itself felt by slight vibration of the brake pedal.

! When braking in an emergency, press very firmly without releasing the pressure.

Operating fault

If this warning lamp comes on, accompanied by an audible signal and a message in the screen, it indicates a malfunction of the anti-lock braking system which could result in loss of control of the vehicle when braking.

If this warning lamp comes on, together with the **STOP** and **ABS** warning lamps, accompanied by an audible signal and a message in the screen, it indicates a malfunction of the electronic brake force distribution which could result in loss of control of the vehicle when braking.
You must stop as soon as it is safe to do so.

In either case, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

i When replacing wheels (tyres and rims), ensure that they conform to the manufacturer's recommendations.

Trajectory control systems

Emergency braking assistance

System which, in an emergency, enables you to obtain the optimum braking pressure more quickly, thus reducing the stopping distance.

Activation

It is triggered by the speed at which the brake pedal is pressed.
The effect of this is a reduction in the resistance of the pedal and an increase in braking efficiency.

! When braking in an emergency, press firmly without releasing the pressure.

Anti-slip regulation (ASR) and dynamic stability control (DSC)

The anti-slip regulation (also known as traction control) optimises traction to prevent skidding of the wheels, by acting on the brakes of the driving wheels and on the engine.
The electronic stability control acts on the brake of one or more wheels and on the engine to keep the vehicle on the trajectory required by the driver, within the limits of the laws of physics.

Activation

These systems are activated automatically each time the vehicle is started.
They come into operation in the event of a grip or trajectory problem.

This is indicated by flashing of this warning lamp in the instrument panel.

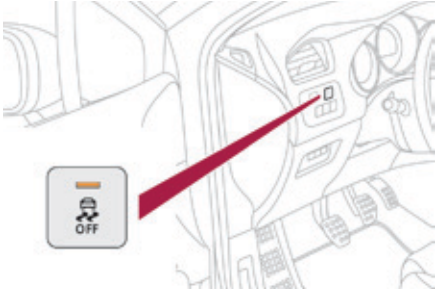
Intelligent traction control system ("Snow motion")

Depending on version, your vehicle has a system to help driving on snow: **intelligent traction control**.
This system detects situations of difficult surface grip that could make it difficult to move off or make progress on deep fresh snow or compacted snow.
In these situations, the **intelligent traction control** limits the amount of wheel spin to provide the best traction and trajectory control for your vehicle.

i The use of snow tyres is strongly recommended on surfaces offering low levels of adhesion.

Deactivation

In extremely severe conditions (deep snow, mud, ...), if you are unable to move off, it may be useful to temporarily deactivate these systems so that the wheels can spin freely and allow the vehicle to move.



☞ Press this button, located near the steering wheel.

If the indicator lamp in the button comes on, this indicates that these systems are deactivated.

It is recommended that the systems be reactivated as soon as possible.

Reactivation

These systems are reactivated automatically each time the ignition is switched back on or from 30 mph (50 km/h).

☞ Press this button again to reactivate them manually.

Operating fault

The illumination of the indicator lamps in the instrument panel and in this button, accompanied by an audible signal and a message in the screen, indicates a fault with these systems.

Have it checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

! The trajectory control systems offer increased safety in normal driving, but this should not encourage the driver to take extra risks or drive at high speed. The correct functioning of these systems is assured provided that manufacturer's recommendations are observed on:
- wheels (tyres and rims),
- braking components,
- electronic components,
- assembly and repair procedures.

After an impact, have these systems checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Seat belts

Front seat belts

The front seat belts are fitted with a pretensioning and force limiting system.
This system improves safety in the front seats in the event of a front or side impact.
Depending on the severity of the impact, the pretensioning system instantly tightens the seat belts against the body of the occupants.
The pretensioning seat belts are active when the ignition is on.
The force limiter reduces the pressure of the seat belt on the chest of the occupant, so improving their protection.

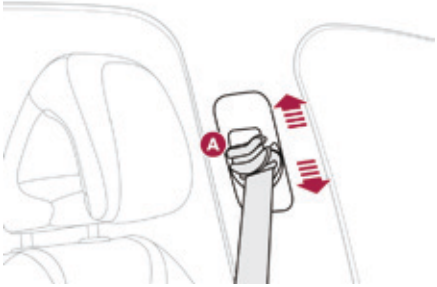
Fastening

- ☞ Pull the strap, then insert the tongue in the buckle.
- ☞ Check that the seat belt is fastened correctly by pulling the strap.

Unfastening

- ☞ Press the red button on the buckle.
- ☞ Guide the seat belt as it reels in.

Height adjustment



- ☞ To lower the attachment point, squeeze the control **A** and slide it downwards.
- ☞ To raise the attachment point, slide the control **A** upwards.

Seat belt not fastened / unfastened warning lamp in the instrument panel

When the ignition is switched on, this warning lamp comes on in the instrument panel if the driver and/or the front passenger has not fastened their seat belt.

From approximately 12 mph (20 km/h) this warning lamp flashes for two minutes accompanied by an audible signal of increasing volume. Once these two minutes have elapsed, this warning lamp remains on until the driver and/or the front passenger fastens their seat belt.

Seat belt not fastened / unfastened warning lamps display

1. Driver's seat belt not fastened / unfastened warning lamp.
2. Front passenger's seat belt not fastened / unfastened warning lamp.

The corresponding warning lamp **1** or **2** comes on in red on the seat belt and passenger's front airbag warning lamps display, accompanied by an audible signal and a message in the screen, if the seat belt is not fastened or is unfastened.

Rear seat belts

The rear seats are each fitted with a three-point seat belt, with force limiter and, for the outer seats, an effort limiter.

Fastening

- ☞ Pull the strap, then insert the tongue in the buckle.
- ☞ Check that the seat belt is fastened correctly by pulling the strap.

Unfastening

- ☞ Press the red button on the buckle.
- ☞ Guide the seat belt as it reels in.
- ☞ On the outer seat belts, raise the bar to the top of the backrest to prevent the tongue from knocking against the side trim.

Seat belt unfastened warning lamp in the instrument panel

This warning lamp comes on in the instrument panel when one or more rear passengers unfasten their seat belt.

From approximately 12 mph (20 km/h), this warning lamp flashes for two minutes accompanied by an audible signal of increasing volume. Once these two minutes have elapsed, this warning lamp remains on until the one or more rear passengers fasten their seat belt.

Seat belt unfastened warning lamps display

3. Right hand rear seat belt warning lamp.
4. Centre rear seat belt warning lamp.
5. Left hand rear seat belt warning lamp.

When the ignition is switched on, with the engine running or when the vehicle is moving at less than 12 mph (20 km/h), the corresponding warning lamps **3**, **4** and **5** come on in red for approximately 30 seconds, if the seat belt is not fastened.
When the vehicle is moving at more than 12 mph (20 km/h), the corresponding warning lamps **3**, **4** and **5** come on in red, accompanied by an audible signal and a message in the screen, if a rear passenger has unfastened their seat belt.

Advice

The driver must ensure that passengers use the seat belts correctly and that they are all fastened before setting off.
Wherever you are seated in the vehicle, always fasten your seat belt, even for short journeys.
Do not interchange the seat belt buckles as they will not fulfill their role fully.
The seat belts are fitted with an inertia reel permitting automatic adjustment of the length of the strap to your size. The seat belt is stowed automatically when not in use.
Before and after use, ensure that the seat belt is reeled in correctly.
The lower part of the strap must be positioned as low as possible on the pelvis.
The upper part must be positioned in the hollow of the shoulder.
The inertia reels are fitted with an automatic locking device which comes into operation in the event of a collision, emergency braking or if the vehicle rolls over. You can release the device by pulling the strap firmly and then releasing it so that it reels in slightly.

In order to be effective, a seat belt must:
- be tightened as close to the body as possible,
- be pulled in front of you with a smooth movement, checking that it does not twist,
- be used to restrain only one person,
- not bear any trace of cuts or fraying,
- not be converted or modified to avoid affecting its performance.

In accordance with current safety regulations, for all repairs on your vehicle's seat belts, go to a qualified workshop with the skills and equipment needed, which a CITROËN dealer is able to provide.
Have your seat belts checked regularly by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop, particularly if the straps show signs of damage.
Clean the seat belt straps with soapy water or a textile cleaning product, sold by CITROËN dealers.
After folding or moving a seat or rear bench seat, ensure that the seat belt is positioned and reeled in correctly.

Recommendations for children

Use a suitable child seat if the passenger is less than 12 years old or shorter than one and a half metres.
Never use the same seat belt to secure more than one person.
Never allow a child to travel on your lap.
For more information on **Child seats**, refer to the corresponding section.

In the event of an impact

Depending on the nature and seriousness of the impact, the pretensioning device may be deployed before and independently of the airbags.
Deployment of the pretensioners is accompanied by a slight discharge of harmless smoke and a noise, due to the activation of the pyrotechnic cartridge incorporated in the system.
In all cases, the airbag warning lamp comes on.
Following an impact, have the seat belts system checked, and if necessary replaced, by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Airbags

General information

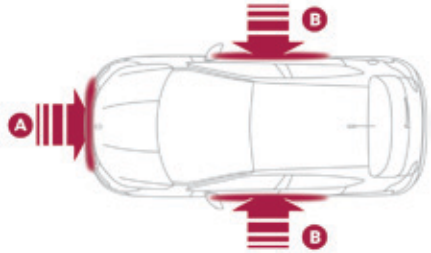
System designed to contribute towards improving the safety of the occupants (with the exception of the rear centre passenger) in the event of violent collisions. The airbags supplement the action of the seat belts fitted with force limiters (all except the centre rear passenger belt).
If a collision occurs, the electronic detectors record and analyse the front and side impacts sustained in the impact detection zones:

- in the case of a serious impact, the airbags are deployed instantly and contribute towards better protection of the occupants of the vehicle (with the exception of the rear centre passenger); immediately after the impact, the airbags deflate rapidly so that they do not hinder visibility or the exit of the occupants,
- in the case of a minor or rear impact or in certain roll-over conditions, the airbags may not be deployed; the seat belt alone contributes towards ensuring your protection in these situations.

! **The airbags do not operate when the ignition is switched off.**

This equipment will only deploy once. If a second impact occurs (during the same or a subsequent accident), the airbag will not be deployed again.

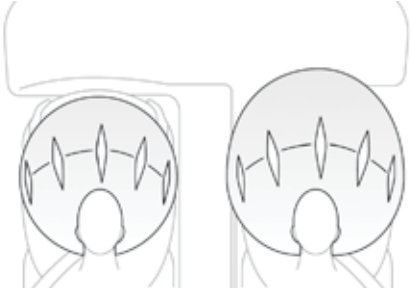
Impact detection zones



A. Front impact zone.
B. Side impact zone.

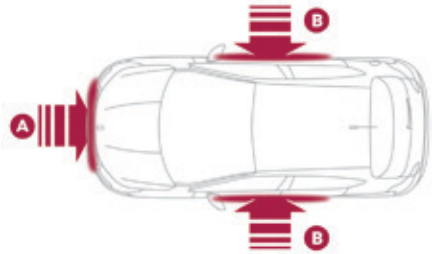
i Deployment of one or more of the airbags is accompanied by a slight emission of smoke and a noise, due to the activation of the pyrotechnic cartridge incorporated in the system. This smoke is not harmful, but sensitive individuals may experience slight irritation.
The noise of detonation associated with the deployment of one or more airbags may result in a slight loss of hearing for a short time.

Front airbags



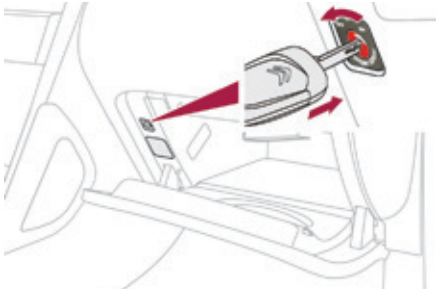
System which protects the driver and front passenger in the event of a serious front impact in order to limit the risk of injury to the head and thorax.
The driver's airbag is fitted in the centre of the steering wheel; the front passenger's airbag is fitted in the dashboard above the glove box.

Deployment



The airbags are deployed, except the passenger's front airbag if it is deactivated, in the event of a serious front impact to all or part of the front impact zone **A**, in the longitudinal centreline of the vehicle on a horizontal plane and directed from the front to the rear of the vehicle.
The front airbag inflates between the thorax and head of the front occupant of the vehicle and the steering wheel, driver's side, and the dashboard, passenger's side to cushion their forward movement.

Deactivation



Only the passenger's front airbag can be deactivated:

- ☞ insert the key in the passenger airbag deactivation switch,
- ☞ turn it to the **"OFF"** position,
- ☞ then, remove the key keeping the switch in the new position.

According to version, this warning lamp comes on in the instrument panel and/or in the seat belt and passenger's front airbag warning lamps display when the ignition is on and until the airbag is reactivated.

! To assure the safety of your child, the passenger's front airbag must be deactivated when you install a rearward facing child seat on the front passenger seat.
Otherwise, the child would risk being seriously injured or killed if the airbag were deployed.

Reactivation

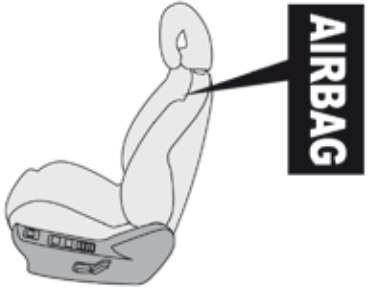
When you remove the child seat, turn the switch to the **"ON"** position to reactivate the airbag and so assure the safety of your front passenger in the event of an impact.

With the ignition on, this warning lamp comes on in the seat belt and passenger's front airbag warning lamps display for approximately one minute, if the passenger's front airbag is activated.

Operating fault

If this warning lamp comes on in the instrument panel, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop to have the system checked. The airbags may no longer be deployed in the event of a serious impact.

Lateral airbags

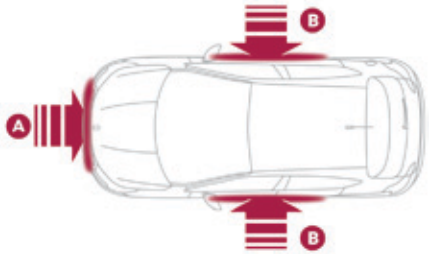


System which protects the driver and front passenger in the event of a serious side impact in order to limit the risk of injury to the chest, between the hip and the shoulder.
Each lateral airbag is fitted in the seat backrest frame, door side.

Deployment

A lateral airbag is deployed unilaterally in the event of a serious side impact applied to all or part of the side impact zone **B**, perpendicular to the longitudinal centreline of the vehicle on a horizontal plane and directed from the outside towards the inside of the vehicle.
The lateral airbag inflates between the hip and shoulder of the front occupant of the vehicle and the corresponding door trim panel.

Impact detection zones



A. Front impact zone.
B. Side impact zone.

Curtain airbags

System which contributes towards improving the protection of the driver and passengers (with the exception of the rear centre passenger) in the event of a serious side impact in order to limit the risk of injury to the side of the head.
Each curtain airbag is built into the pillars and the upper passenger compartment area.

Deployment

The curtain airbag is deployed at the same time as the corresponding lateral airbag in the event of a serious side impact applied to all or part of the side impact zone **B**, perpendicular to the longitudinal centreline of the vehicle on a horizontal plane and directed from the outside towards the inside of the vehicle.
The curtain airbag inflates between the front or rear occupant of the vehicle and the windows.

Advice

For the airbags to be fully effective, observe the safety recommendations below:

Sit in a normal upright position.
Wear a correctly adjusted seat belt.
Do not leave anything between the occupants and the airbags (a child, pet, object...), nor fix or attach anything close to the inflation trajectory of the airbags; this could cause injuries during their deployment.
Never modify the original definition of your vehicle, particularly in the area directly around the airbags.
After an accident or if the vehicle has been stolen or broken into, have the airbag systems checked.
All work on the airbag system must be carried out by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.
Even if all of the precautions mentioned are observed, a risk of injury or of minor burns to the head, chest or arms when an airbag is deployed cannot be ruled out. The bag inflates almost instantly (within a few milliseconds) then deflates within the same time discharging the hot gas via openings provided for this purpose.

Front airbags

Do not drive holding the steering wheel by its spokes or resting your hands on the centre part of the wheel.
Passengers must not place their feet on the dashboard.
Do not smoke as deployment of the airbags can cause burns or the risk of injury from a cigarette or pipe.
Never remove or pierce the steering wheel or hit it violently.
Do not fit or attach anything to the steering wheel or dashboard, this could cause injuries with deployment of the airbags.

Curtain airbags

Do not fix or attach anything to the roof. This could cause injury to the head if the curtain airbag is deployed.
If fitted on your vehicle, do not remove the grab handles installed on the roof, they play a part in securing the curtain airbags.

Lateral airbags

Use only approved covers on the seats, compatible with the deployment the lateral airbags. For information on the range of seat covers suitable for your vehicle, you can contact a CITROËN dealer.
Do not fix or attach anything to the seat backs (clothing...). This could cause injury to the chest or arms if the lateral airbag is deployed.
Do not sit with the upper part of the body any nearer to the door than necessary.

The vehicle's front door panels include side impact sensors.
A damaged door or any unauthorised or incorrectly executed work (modification or repair) on the front doors or their interior trim could compromise the operation of these sensors - Risk of malfunction of the lateral airbags!
Such work must only be done by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

General points relating to child seats

Although one of CITROËN's main criteria when designing your vehicle, the safety of your children also depends on you.

For maximum safety, please observe the following recommendations:

- in accordance with European regulations, **all children under the age of 12 or less than one and a half metres tall must travel in approved child seats suited to their weight**, on seats fitted with a seat belt or ISOFIX mountings*,
- **statistically, the safest seats in your vehicle for carrying children are the rear seats,**
- **a child weighing less than 9 kg must travel in the rearward facing position both in the front and in the rear.**

i **CITROËN recommends** that children should travel on the **rear seats** of your vehicle:

- **rearward facing** up to the age of 3,
- **forward facing** over the age of 3.

* The regulations on carrying children are specific to each country. Refer to the legislation in force in your country.

Child seat in the front*

Rearward facing

When a rearward facing child seat is installed on the **front passenger seat**, adjust the seat to the intermediate longitudinal and highest position, with the backrest straightened.
The passenger's front airbag must be deactivated. Otherwise, **the child risks being seriously injured or killed if the airbag were to inflate**.

Forward facing

When a forward facing child seat is installed on the **front passenger seat**, adjust the vehicle's seat to the intermediate longitudinal and highest position with seat backrest straightened and leave the passenger's front airbag activated.

! Ensure that the seat belt is correctly tensioned.
For child seats with a support leg, ensure that the support leg is in stable contact with the floor. If necessary, adjust the passenger seat.

Passenger seat adjusted to the intermediate longitudinal and highest position.

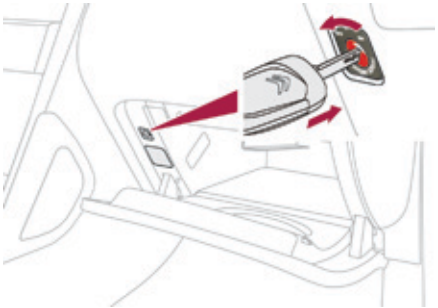
* Refer to the current legislation in your country before installing a child seat on this seat.

Deactivating the passenger's front airbag

! Never install a rearward facing child restraint system on a seat protected by an active front airbag. This could cause the death of the child or serious injury.

Passenger airbag OFF

The warning label present on both sides of the passenger's sun visor repeats this advice. In line with current legislation, the following tables contain this warning in all of the languages required.



i For information on deactivating the passenger's front airbag, refer to the "Airbags" section.

AR	لا يجب أبدًا تركيب نظام لإجلاس الطفل الوجه باتجاه الوراء على مقعد سيارة مجهّز بوسادة أمان هوائية أمامية مفعّلة، فقد يؤدي هذا إلى التسبب بموت الطفل أو بإصابات خطيرة لديه .
BG	НИКОГА НЕ инсталирайте детско столче на седалка с АКТИВИРАНА предна ВЪЗДУШНА ВЪЗГЛАВНИЦА. Това може да причини СМЪРТ или СЕРИОЗНО НАРАНЯВАНЕ на детето.
CS	NIKDY neumisťujte dětské zádržné zařízení orientované směrem dozadu na sedadlo chráněné AKTIVOVANÝM čelním AIRBAGEM. Hrozí nebezpečí SMRTI DÍTĚTE nebo VÁŽNÉHO ZRANĚNÍ.
DA	Brug ALDRIG en bagudvendt barnestol på et sæde, der er beskyttet af en AKTIV AIRBAG. BARNET risikerer at blive ALVORLIGT KVÆSTET eller DRÆBT.
DE	Montieren Sie auf einem Sitz mit AKTIVIERTEM Front-Airbag NIEMALS einen Kindersitz oder eine Babyschale entgegen der Fahrtrichtung, das Kind könnte schwere oder sogar tödliche Verletzungen erleiden.
EL	Μη χρησιμοποιείτε ΠΟΤΕ παιδικό κάθισμα με την πλάτη του προς το εμπρός μέρος του αυτοκινήτου, σε μια θέση που προστατεύεται από ΜΕΤΩΠΙΚΟ αερόσακο που είναι ΕΝΕΡΓΟΣ. Αυτό μπορεί να έχει σαν συνέπεια το ΘΑΝΑΤΟ ή το ΣΟΒΑΡΟ ΤΡΑΥΜΑΤΙΣΜΟ του ΠΑΙΔΙΟΥ
EN	NEVER use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an ACTIVE AIRBAG in front of it, DEATH or SERIOUS INJURY to the CHILD can occur
ES	NO INSTALAR NUNCA un sistema de retención para niños de espaldas al sentido de la marcha en un asiento protegido mediante un AIRBAG frontal ACTIVADO, ya que podría causar lesiones GRAVES o incluso la MUERTE del niño.
ET	Ärge MITTE KUNAGI paigaldage "seljaga sõidusuunas" lapseistet juhi kõrvalistmele, mille ESITURVAPADI on AKTIVEERITUD. Turvapadja avanemine võib last TÕSISELT või ELUOHTLIKULT vigastada.
FI	ÄLÄ KOSKAAN aseta lapsen turvaistuinta selkä ajosuuntaan istuimelle, jonka edessä suojana on käyttöön aktivoitu TURVATYYNY. Sen laukeaminen voi aiheuttaa LAPSEN KUOLEMAN tai VAKAVAN LOUKKAANTUMISEN.
FR	NE JAMAIS installer de système de retenue pour enfants faisant face vers l'arrière sur un siège protégé par un COUSSIN GONFLABLE frontal ACTIVÉ. Cela peut provoquer la MORT de l'ENFANT ou le BLESSER GRAVEMENT
HR	NIKADA ne postavljati dječju sjedalicu leđima u smjeru vožnje na sjedalo zaštićeno UKLJUČENIM prednjim ZRAČNIM JASTUKOM. To bi moglo uzrokovati SMRT ili TEŠKU OZLJEDU djeteta.
HU	SOHA ne használjon menetiránynak háttal beszerelt gyermekülést AKTIVÁLT (BEKAPCSOLT) FRONTLÉGZSÁKKAL védett ülésen. Ez a gyermek HALÁLÁT vagy SÚLYOS SÉRÜLÉSÉT okozhatja.
IT	NON installare MAI seggiolini per bambini posizionati in senso contrario a quello di marcia su un sedile protetto da un AIRBAG frontale ATTIVATO. Ciò potrebbe provocare la MORTE o FERITE GRAVI al bambino.
LT	NIEKADA neįrenkite vaiko prilaikymo priemonės su atgal atgręžtu vaiku ant sėdynės, kuri saugoma VEIKIANČIOS priekinės ORO PAGALVĖS. Išsiskleidus oro pagalvei vaikas gali būti MIRTINAI arba SUNKIAI TRAUMUOTAS.

LV	NEKAD NEuzstādiet uz aizmuguri vērstu bērnu sēdeklīti priekšējā pasažiera sēdvietā, kurā ir AKTIVIZĒTS priekšējais DROŠĪBAS GAISA SPILVENS. Tas var izraisīt BĒRNA NĀVI vai radīt NOPIETNUS IEVAINOJUMUS.
MT	Qatt m'ghandek thalli tifel/tifla marbut f'siggu dahru lejn l-Airbag attiva, ghaliex tista' tikkawza korriment serju jew anke mewt lit-tifel/tifla
NL	Plaats NOOIT een kinderzitje met de rug in de rijrichting op een zitplaats waarvan de AIRBAG is INGESCHAKELD. Bij het afgaan van de airbag kan het KIND LEVENSGEVAARLIJK GEWOND RAKEN
NO	Installer ALDRI et barnesete med ryggen mot kjøreretningen i et sete som er beskyttet med en frontal AKTIVERT KOLLISJONSPUTE, BARNET risikerer å bli DREPT eller HARDT SKADET.
PL	NIGDY nie instalować fotelika dziecięcego w pozycji "tyłem do kierunku jazdy" na siedzeniu wyposażonym w CZOŁOWĄ PODUSZKĘ POWIETRZNĄ w stanie AKTYWNYM. Może to doprowadzić do ŚMIERCI DZIECKA lub spowodować u niego POWAŻNE OBRAŻENIA CIAŁA.
PT	NUNCA instale um sistema de retenção para crianças de costas para a estrada num banco protegido por um AIRBAG frontal ACTIVADO. Esta instalação poderá provocar FERIMENTOS GRAVES ou a MORTE da CRIANÇA.
RO	Nu instalati NICIODATA un sistem de retinere pentru copii, dispus cu spatele in directia de mers, pe un loc din vehicul protejat cu AIRBAG frontal ACTIVAT. Aceasta ar putea provoca MOARTEA COPILULUI sau RANIREA lui GRAVA.
RU	ВО ВСЕХ СЛУЧАЯХ ЗАПРЕЩАЕТСЯ использовать обращенное назад детское удерживающее устройство на сиденье, защищенном ФУНКЦИОНИРУЮЩЕЙ ПОДУШКОЙ БЕЗОПАСНОСТИ, установленной перед этим сиденьем. Это может привести к ГИБЕЛИ РЕБЕНКА или НАНЕСЕНИЮ ЕМУ СЕРЬЕЗНЫХ ТЕЛЕСНЫХ ПОВРЕЖДЕНИЙ
SK	NIKDY neinštalujte detské zádržné zariadenie orientované smerom dozadu na sedadlo chránené AKTIVOVANÝM čelným AIRBAGOM. Mohlo by dôjsť k SMRTEĽNÉMU alebo VÁŽNEMU PORANENIU DIEŤAŤA.
SL	NIKOLI ne nameščajte otroškega sedeža s hrbtom v smeri vožnje, če je VARNOSTNA BLAZINA pred sprednjim sopotnikovim sedežem AKTIVIRANA. Takšna namestitev lahko povzroči SMRT OTROKA ali HUDE POŠKODBE.
SR	NIKADA ne koristite dečje sedište koje se okreće unazad na sedištu zaštićenim AKTIVNIM VAZDUŠNIM JASTUKOM ispred njega, jer mogu nastupiti SMRT ili OZBILJNA POVREDA DETETA.
SV	Passagerarkrockkudden fram MÅSTE vara avaktiverad om en bakåtvänd bilbarnstol installeras på denna plats. Annars riskerar barnet att DÖDAS eller SKADAS ALLVARLIGT.
TR	KESİNLKLE HAVA YASTIĞI AKTİF olan ön koltuğa yüzü arkaya dönük bir çocuk koltuğu yerleştirmeyiniz. Bu ÇOCUĞUN ÖLMESİNE veya ÇOK AĞIR YARALANMASINA sebep olabilir.

Child seat at the rear

Rearward facing

When a rearward facing child seat is installed **on a rear passenger seat**, move the vehicle's front seat forward and straighten the backrest so that the rearward facing child seat does not touch the vehicle's front seat.

Forward facing

When a forward facing child seat is installed **on a rear passenger seat**, move the vehicle's front seat forward and straighten the backrest so that the legs of the child in the forward facing child seat do not touch the vehicle's front seat.

! Ensure that the seat belt is correctly tensioned.
For child seats with a support leg, ensure that this is in firm contact with the floor. If necessary, adjust the front seat of the vehicle.

Centre rear seat

A child seat with a support leg must never be installed on the **centre rear passenger seat**.

! The incorrect installation of a child seat in a vehicle compromises the protection of the child in the event of an accident.

Child seats recommended by CITROËN

CITROËN offers a range of child seats which are secured using a **three point seat belt**.

Group 0+: from birth to 13 kg	Groups 2 and 3: from 15 to 36 kg	
L1 "RÖMER Baby-Safe Plus" Installed rearward facing.	**L5** "RÖMER KIDFIX XP" Can be fitted to the vehicle's ISOFIX mountings. The child is restrained by the seat belt.	**L6** "BOOSTER GRACO" The child is restrained by the seat belt.

Locations for child seats secured using the seat belt

In accordance with European regulations, this table indicates the options for installing child seats secured using the seat belt and universally approved (a) in relation to the weight of the child and the seat in the vehicle.

Seat	**Weight of the child /** indicative age			
	Less than 13 kg (groups 0 (b) and 0+) Up to ≈ 1 year	**From 9 to 18 kg** (group 1) From 1 to ≈ 3 years	**From 15 to 25 kg** (group 2) From 3 to ≈ 6 years	**From 22 to 36 kg** (group 3) From 6 to ≈ 10 years
Front passenger seat (c)				
- fixed	**U(R1)**	**U(R1)**	**U(R1)**	**U(R1)**
- height adjustable	**U(R2)**	**U(R2)**	**U(R2)**	**U(R2)**
Outer rear seats (d)	**U**	**U**	**U**	**U**
Centre rear seat (d)	**X**	**X**	**X**	**X**

U: seating position suitable for the installation of a child seat secured using the seat belt and universally approved rearward facing and/or forward facing.

U(R1): identical to **U**, with the vehicle's seat backrest inclined fully forwards.

U(R2): identical to **U**, with the vehicle's seat adjusted to the highest position.

X: seating position not suitable for installing a child seat for the weight group indicated.

(a) Universal child seat: child seat which can be installed in all vehicles using the seat belt.

(b) Group 0: from birth to 10 kg. Infant car seats and "car cots" cannot be installed on the front passenger seat.

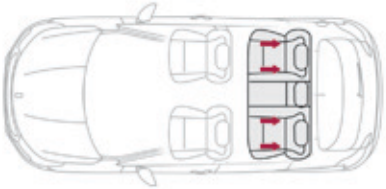
(c) Consult the legislation in force in your country before installing your child on this seat.

(d) To install a child seat at the rear, rearward or forward facing, move the front seat forward, then straighten the backrest to allow enough room for the child seat and the child's legs.

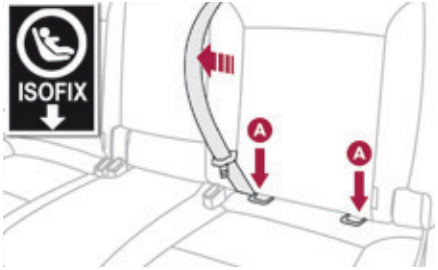
i Remove and stow the head restraint before installing a child seat with backrest on a passenger seat. Refit the head restraint once the child seat has been removed.

"ISOFIX" mountings

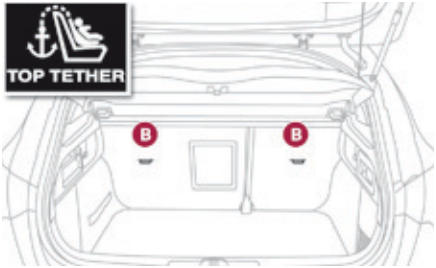
Your vehicle has been approved in accordance with the **latest** ISOFIX **regulation**.
The seats, represented below, are fitted with regulation ISOFIX mountings:



There are three rings for each seat:



- two rings **A**, located between the seat backrest and cushion, indicated by a marking,



- a ring **B**, located behind the seat and identified by a marking, referred to as the **Top Tether** for fixing the upper strap.

This ISOFIX mounting system provides fast, reliable and safe fitting of the child seat in your vehicle.
The **ISOFIX child seats** are fitted with two latches which are secured on the two rings **A**.
Some seats also have an **upper strap**, known as the Top Tether, which is attached to ring **B**.

To secure the child seat to the **TOP TETHER**:
- remove and stow the head restraint before installing the child seat on the seat (refit it once the child seat has been removed),
- pass the upper strap of the child seat behind the seat backrest, centring it between the apertures for the head restraint rods,
- fix the hook of the upper strap to the ring **B**,
- tighten the upper strap.

i When fitting an ISOFIX child seat to the left-hand rear seat of the benchseat, before fitting the seat, first move the centre rear seat belt towards the middle of the vehicle, so as to avoid the seat interfering with the operation of the seat belt.

! The incorrect installation of a child seat in a vehicle compromises the child's protection in the event of an accident.

Strictly follow the fitting instructions provided in the user guide supplied with the child seat.
For information on the possibilities for installing ISOFIX child seats in your vehicle, refer to the summary table.

ISOFIX child seats recommended by CITROËN

CITROËN offers a range of ISOFIX child seats listed and type approved for your vehicle.

"RÖMER Baby-Safe Plus" and its ISOFIX base
(size category: **E**)

Group 0+: from birth to 13 kg

Installed rearward facing using an ISOFIX base which is attached to the rings **A**.
The base has a support leg, adjustable for height, which sits on the vehicle's floor.
This child seat can also be secured with a seat belt. In this case, only the shell is used and attached to the vehicle's seat by the three-point seat belt.

Baby P2C Mini and its ISOFIX base
(size categories: **C, D, E**)

Group 0+: from birth to 13 kg

Installed rearward facing using an ISOFIX base which is attached to the rings **A**.
The base has a support leg, adjustable for height, which sits on the vehicle's floor.
This seat can also be secured with a seat belt.
In this case only the seat shell is used and is attached to the vehicle's seat by the three-point seat belt.

i Refer also to the child seat manufacturer's fitting instructions for information on installing and removing the seat.

"RÖMER Duo Plus ISOFIX" (size category: **B1**)	"Baby P2C Midi" and its ISOFIX base (size categories: **D, C, A, B, B1**)
Group 1: from 9 to 18 kg	**Group 1: from 9 to 18 kg**
Is installed only in the forward facing position. Is attached to the rings **A** and the upper ring **B**, referred to as the TOP TETHER, using an upper strap. Three seat body angles: sitting, reclining, lying down. This child seat can also be used on seats not equipped with ISOFIX mountings. In this case, it must be secured to the vehicle's seat by the three-point seat belt. Adjust the position of the vehicle's front seat so that the child's feet are not touching the backrest.	Installed rearward facing using an ISOFIX base which is attached to the rings **A**. The base has a support leg, adjustable for height, which sits on the vehicle's floor. This child seat can also be used forward facing. This seat can **not** be secured with a seat belt. We recommend that you use the seat in the rearward facing position up to the age of 3 years.

Locations for ISOFIX child seats

In accordance with European Regulations, this table indicates the options for installing ISOFIX child seats on seats in the vehicle fitted with ISOFIX mountings.
In the case of universal and semi-universal ISOFIX child seats, the ISOFIX size category, determined by a letter from **A** to **G**, is indicated on the child seat next to the ISOFIX logo.

	Weight of the child/indicative age									
	Less than 10 kg (group 0) Up to approx. 6 months		**Less than 10 kg (group 0) Less than 13 kg (group 0+)** Up to approx. 1 year			**From 9 to 18 kg (group 1)** From approx. 1 to 3 years				
Type of ISOFIX child seat	**Infant car seat***		**rearward facing**			**rearward facing**		**forward facing**		
ISOFIX size category	**F**	**G**	**C**	**D**	**E**	**C**	**D**	**A**	**B**	**B1**
ISOFIX child seats universal and semi-universal which can be installed on the rear outer seats	**IL-SU****		**IL-SU**			**IL-SU**		**IUF IL-SU**		

IUF: seat suitable for the installation of an **I**sofix **U**niversal seat, "**F**orward facing" secured using the upper strap.
IL-SU: seat suitable for the installation of an **I**sofix **S**emi-**U**niversal seat either:
- rearward facing fitted with an upper strap or a support leg,
- forward facing fitted with a support leg,
- an infant car seat fitted with an upper strap or a support leg.

For advice on securing of the upper strap, refer to the "ISOFIX mountings" section.

i Remove and stow the head restraint before installing a child seat with a backrest on a passenger seat. Refit the head restraint once the child seat has been removed.

* Infant car seats and "car cots" cannot be installed on the front passenger seat.
** The ISOFIX infant car seat, secured on the lower rings of a vehicle ISOFIX seat, occupies two rear seats.

Advice

The incorrect installation of a child seat in a vehicle compromises the child's protection in the event of an accident.
Ensure that there is no seat belt or seat belt buckle under the child seat, as this could destabilise it.
Remember to fasten the seat belts or the child seat harnesses keeping the slack relative to the child's body to a minimum, even for short journeys.
When installing a child seat using the seat belt, ensure that the seat belt is tightened correctly on the child seat and that it secures the child seat firmly on the seat of your vehicle. If your passenger seat is adjustable, move it forwards if necessary.

At rear seating positions, always leave sufficient space between the front seat and:
- a rearward facing child seat,
- the child's feet for a child seat fitted forward facing.

To do this, move the front seat forwards and, if necessary, move its backrest into the upright position.

For optimum installation of the forward facing child seat, ensure that the back of the child seat is as close as possible to the backrest of the vehicle's seat, in contact if possible.
You must remove the head restraint before installing a child seat with backrest to a passenger seat.
Ensure that the head restraint is stored or attached securely to prevent it from being thrown around the vehicle in the event of sharp braking. Refit the head restraint when the child seat is removed.

Children at the front

The legislation on carrying children on the front passenger seat is specific to each country. Refer to the legislation in force in your country.
Deactivate the passenger's front airbag when a rearward facing child seat is installed on the front passenger seat.
Otherwise, the child risks being seriously injured or killed if the airbag is deployed.

Installing a booster seat

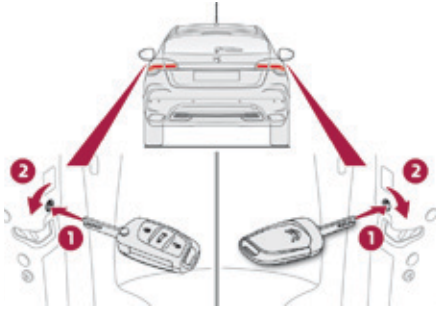
The chest part of the seat belt must be positioned on the child's shoulder without touching the neck.
Ensure that the lap part of the seat belt passes correctly over the child's thighs.
CITROËN recommends the use of a booster seat which has a back, fitted with a seat belt guide at shoulder level.

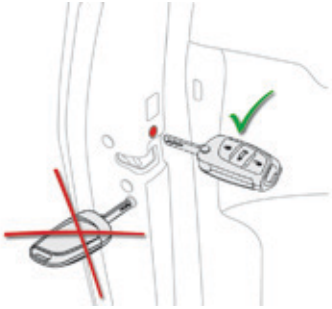
As a safety precaution, do not leave:
- a child or children alone and unsupervised in a vehicle,
- a child or an animal in a vehicle which is exposed to the sun, with the windows closed,
- the keys within reach of children inside the vehicle.

To prevent accidental opening of the doors and rear windows, use the child lock.
Take care not to open the rear windows by more than one third.
To protect young children from the rays of the sun, fit side blinds on the rear windows.

Manual child lock

Mechanical system to prevent opening of the rear door using its interior control.
The control, red in colour, is located on the edge of each rear door. It is identified by a symbol marked on the bodywork.





Locking

☞ Using the ignition key or the integral key, depending on version, turn the red control as far as it will go:
- to the left on the left-hand rear door,
- to the right on the right-hand rear door.

Unlocking

☞ Using the ignition key or the integral key, depending on version, turn the red control as far as it will go:
- to the right on the left-hand rear door,
- to the left on the right-hand rear door.

! Do not confuse the child lock control, which is red, with the back-up locking control, which is black.

Electric child lock

Remotely operated system to prevent opening of the rear doors using their interior controls and use of the rear electric windows.
The control is located on the dashboard, driver's side.

Switching on

☞ Press this button.
The indicator lamp in the button comes on, accompanied by a message in the screen.

This indicator lamp remains on until the child lock is switched off.

Switching off

☞ Press this button again.
The indicator lamp on button **A** goes off, accompanied by a message in the screen.

This indicator lamp remains on while child lock is switched on.

i Any other status of the indicator lamp indicates a fault with the electric child lock. Have it checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

! This system is independent and in no circumstances does it take the place of the central locking control.
Check the status of the child lock each time you switch on the ignition.
Always remove the key from the ignition when leaving the vehicle, even for a short time.
In the event of a serious impact, the electric child lock is switched off automatically to permit the exit of the rear passengers.

DRIVING

06

Driving recommendations

Observe the driving regulations and remain vigilant whatever the traffic conditions.
Pay close attention to the traffic and keep your hands on the wheel so that you are ready to react at any time to any eventuality.
As a safety precaution, the driver must only carry out actions requiring sustained attention when the vehicle is stationary.
On a long journey, a break every two hours is strongly recommended.
In difficult weather, drive smoothly, anticipate the need to brake and increase the distance from other vehicles.

Driving on flooded roads

We strongly advise against driving on flooded roads, as this could cause serious damage to the engine or gearbox, as well as to the electrical systems of your vehicle.

If you are obliged to drive through water:

- check that the depth of water does not exceed 15 cm, taking account of waves that might be generated by other users,
- deactivate the Stop & Start system,
- drive as slowly as possible without stalling. In all cases, do not exceed 6 mph (10 km/h),
- do not stop and do not switch off the engine.

On leaving the flooded road, as soon as circumstances allow, make several light brake applications to dry the brake discs and pads.
If in doubt on the state of your vehicle, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Important!

! Never drive with the parking brake applied - Risk of overheating and damage to the braking system!
Risk of fire!
As the exhaust system of your vehicle is very hot, even several minutes after switching off the engine, do not park or leave the engine running over areas where inflammable substances and materials are present: grass, leaves, etc.

! Never leave a vehicle unsupervised with the engine running. If you have to leave your vehicle with the engine running, apply the parking brake and put the gearbox into neutral or position **N** or **P**, depending on the type of gearbox.

When towing

Distribution of loads

☞ Distribute the load in the trailer so that the heaviest items are as close as possible to the axle and the nose weight approaches the maximum permitted without exceeding it.

Air density decreases with altitude, thus reducing engine performance. Above 1 000 metres, the maximum towed load must be reduced by 10 % for every 1 000 metres of altitude.

i For more information on **Weights**, refer to the corresponding section.

i If the exterior temperature is high, it is recommended that the engine be allowed to idle for 1 to 2 minutes after the vehicle comes to a stop, to facilitate its cooling.

Side wind

☞ Take into account the increased sensitivity to side wind.

Cooling

Towing a trailer on a slope increases the temperature of the coolant.

As the fan is electrically controlled, its cooling capacity is not dependent on the engine speed.

☞ To lower the engine speed, reduce your speed.

The maximum towed load on a long incline depends on the gradient and the exterior temperature.

In all cases, keep a check on the coolant temperature.

☞ If the warning lamp and the **STOP** warning lamp come on, stop the vehicle and switch off the engine as soon as possible.

Braking

Towing a trailer increases the braking distance. To avoid overheating of the brakes, the use of engine braking is recommended.

Tyres

☞ Check the tyre pressures of the towing vehicle and of the trailer, observing the recommended pressures.

Lighting

☞ Check the electrical lighting and signalling on the trailer and the headlamp beam height of your vehicle.

For more information on **Adjusting the headlamp beam height**, refer to the corresponding section.

i The rear parking sensors will be deactivated automatically to avoid the audible signal if a genuine CITROËN towbar is used.

Anti-theft protection

Electronic engine immobiliser

The keys contain an electronic chip which has a special code. When the ignition is switched on, this code must be recognised for engine starting to be authorised.
This electronic engine immobiliser locks the engine management system a few minutes after the ignition is switched off and prevents starting of the engine by anyone who does not have the key.

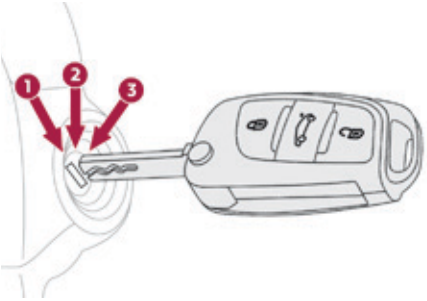
SERVICE In the event of a fault, you are informed by illumination of this warning lamp, an audible signal and/or the display of a message, depending on version.

In this case, your vehicle will not start; contact a CITROËN dealer as soon as possible.

i Keep safely, away from your vehicle, the label attached to the keys given to you on acquisition of the vehicle.

Starting / Switching off the engine with the key

Ignition switch



It has 3 positions:
- position **1 (Stop)**: insert and removing the key, steering column locked,
- position **2 (Ignition on)**: steering column unlocked, ignition on, Diesel preheating, engine running,
- position **3 (Starting)**.

Ignition on position

It allows the use of the vehicle's electric equipment or portable devices to be charged. Once the state of charge of the battery drops to the reserve level, the system switches to energy economy mode: the power supply is cut off automatically to preserve the remaining battery charge.

i Avoid attaching heavy objects to the key or the remote control, which would weigh down on its blade in the ignition switch and could cause a malfunction. It could adversely affect the deployment of the front airbag.

! Switching off the engine leads to a loss of braking assistance.

Starting the engine

The parking brake must be applied.

- With a manual gearbox, place the gear lever in neutral and depress the clutch pedal fully.
- With an automatic gearbox, place the selector in position **N** or **P** and press the brake pedal fully.
- Insert the key into the ignition switch; the system recognises the code.
- Unlock the steering column by simultaneously turning the steering and the key.

i In certain cases, you may have to apply more force to the steering (wheels on full lock, for example).

- With a petrol engine, operate the starter motor by turning the key to position **3** without pressing the accelerator pedal, until the engine starts. Once the engine is running, release the key.
- With a Diesel engine, turn the key to position **2**, ignition on, to operate the engine pre-heating system.

Wait until this warning lamp goes off in the instrument panel then operate the starter motor by turning the key to position **3** without pressing the accelerator pedal, until the engine starts. Once the engine is running, release the key.

i In wintry conditions, the warning lamp can stay on for a longer period. When the engine is hot, the warning lamp does not come on.

! If the engine does not start straight away, switch off the ignition. Wait a few moments before operating the starter motor again. If the engine does not start after several attempts, do not keep trying: you risk damaging the starter motor or the engine. Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

i In temperate conditions, do not leave the engine at idle to warm up but move off straight away and drive at moderate speed.

! Never leave the engine running in an enclosed area without adequate ventilation: internal combustion engines emit toxic exhaust gases, such as carbon monoxide. Danger of intoxication and death!
In very severe wintry conditions (temperatures below -23°C), to ensure the correct operation and durability of the mechanical components of your vehicle, engine and gearbox, it is necessary to leave the engine running for 4 minutes before moving off.

Switching off the engine

- Stop the vehicle.
- With the engine running at idle, turn the key to position **1**.
- Remove the key from the ignition switch.
- To lock the steering column, turn the steering until it locks.

i To facilitate unlocking of the steering column, it is recommended that the wheels be returned to the straight ahead position before switching off the engine.

- Check that the parking brake is correctly applied, particularly on sloping ground.

! Never switch off the ignition before the vehicle is at a complete stop. With the engine off, the braking and steering assistance systems are also cut off: risk of loss of control of the vehicle.

i When you leave the vehicle, keep the key with you and lock the vehicle.

Energy economy mode

After switching off the engine (position **1-Stop**), for a maximum of 30 minutes you can still use functions such as the audio and telematic system, the wipers, dipped beam headlamps, courtesy lamps, ...

i For more information on **Energy economy mode**, refer to the corresponding section.

i Key left in the "Ignition on" position

If the key has been left in the ignition switch at position **2 (Ignition on)**, the ignition will be switched off automatically after one hour. To switch the ignition back on, turn the key to position **1 (Stop)**, then back to position **2 (Ignition on)**.

Starting / Switching off the engine with Keyless Entry and Starting

Starting the engine

☞ Place the electronic key inside the vehicle: there is no need to place it in the reader.

☞ With a manual gearbox, place the gear lever in neutral and declutch fully.

☞ With an automatic gearbox, place the gear selector at **P** or **N** and press the brake pedal.

START STOP

☞ Briefly press the "**START/STOP**" button while maintaining pressure on the pedal until the engine starts.

The steering column unlocks and the engine starts.

See the advice for Diesel versions.

i If one of the starting conditions is not met, a reminder message appears in the instrument panel screen. In some circumstances, it is necessary to turn the steering wheel slightly while pressing the "**START/STOP**" button to assist unlocking of the steering; a message warns you when this is needed.

The presence of the "Keyless Entry and Starting" electronic key in the recognition zone is essential.
As a safety measure, do not leave this zone with the vehicle running.

i If the electronic key is not detected in the zone, a message is displayed. Move the electronic key into the zone so that the engine can be started.

! Diesel vehicles

In temperatures below zero the engine will not start until the preheater warning lamp has gone off.

If this warning lamp comes on after pressing "**START/STOP**", you should hold the brake or clutch pedal down until the warning lamp goes off and do not press the "**START/STOP**" button again.

Switching off the engine

- Immobilise the vehicle.
- With a manual gearbox, place the gear lever in neutral.
- With an automatic gearbox, place the gear selector at **P** or **N**.

START STOP

- With the electronic key inside the vehicle, press the "**START/STOP**" button.

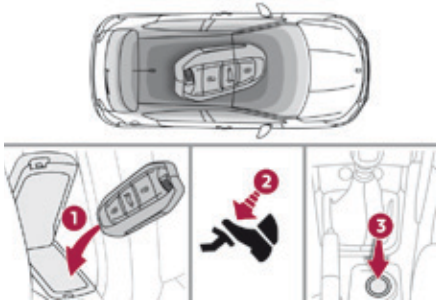
The engine stops and the steering column locks.

i If the vehicle is not immobilised, the engine will not stop.

! Do not leave your vehicle with the electronic key still inside.

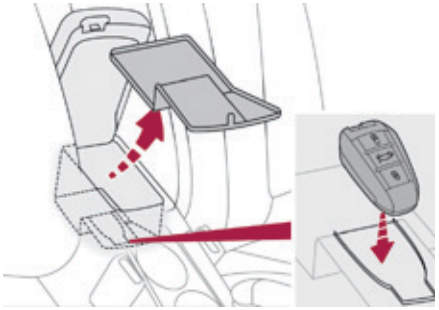
! Switching off the engine leads to a loss of braking assistance.

Emergency starting



When the electronic key is in the recognition zone and, after pressing the "**START/STOP**" button, the engine does not start:

- With a manual gearbox, place the gear lever in neutral.
- With an automatic gearbox, place the gear selector at **P** or **N**.



- Open the front armrest
- Raise the mat by its tab and remove it.
- Place the electronic key in the back-up reader.
- With an automatic gearbox, press the brake pedal.
- With a manual gearbox, declutch fully.

START STOP

- Press the "**START/STOP**" button.

The engine starts.

Emergency switch-off

In the event of an emergency only, the engine can be switched of without conditions. To do this, press and hold the "**START/STOP**" button for about 3 seconds.

In this case the steering column locks as soon as the vehicle stops.

Electronic key not recognised

If the electronic key is no longer in the recognition zone when driving or when you (later) request switching off the engine, a message is displayed.

☞ Press and hold the "**START/STOP**" button for about 3 seconds if you want to force switching off the engine **(note that restarting will not be possible without the key)**.

Ignition on position (without starting)

With the Keyless Entry and Starting key inside the vehicle, pressing the "**START/STOP**" button, **with no action on the pedals**, allows the ignition to be switched on.

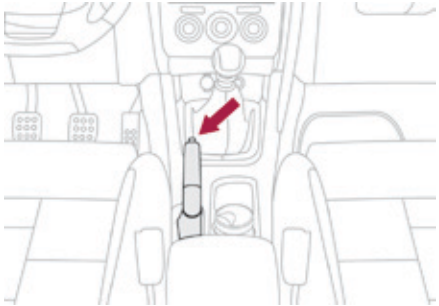
☞ Press the **"START/STOP"** button, the instrument panel comes on but the engine does not start.

☞ Press the button again to switch off the ignition and so allow the vehicle to be locked.

i With the ignition on, the system automatically goes into energy economy mode when required to maintain the state of charge of the battery.

Manual parking brake

Applying



☞ Pull the parking brake lever fully up to immobilise your vehicle.

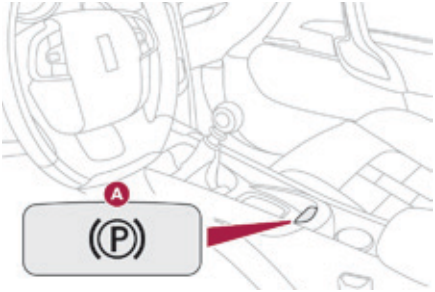
Releasing

☞ Pull the parking brake lever up gently, press the release button then lower the lever fully.

When the vehicle is being driven, if this warning lamp and the **STOP** warning lamp come on, accompanied by an audible signal and a message in the multifunction screen, this indicates that the parking brake is still on or has not been properly released.

! When parking on a slope, direct your wheels against the kerb, apply the parking brake, engage a gear and switch off the ignition.

Electric parking brake



The electric parking brake has two operating modes:

- **Automatic application / release**
  Application is automatic when the engine stops, release is automatic on use of the accelerator (activated by default),
- **Manual application / release**
  The parking brake can be applied / released manually by pulling control lever **A**.

If this warning lamp comes on in the instrument panel, the automatic mode is deactivated.

Programming the mode

Depending on the country of sale of the vehicle, the automatic application when the engine is switched off and the automatic release when you press the accelerator can be deactivated.

Activation / deactivation is done using the vehicle configuration menu; refer to the section covering the configuration of your vehicle's systems.

The parking brake is then applied and released manually. When the driver's door is opened, there is an audible signal and a message is displayed if the parking brake is not applied.

! It is recommended that you do not apply the parking brake in very cold conditions (ice) and during towing (breakdown, caravan...). Deactivate the automatic functions and release the parking brake manually.

i Do not place any object (packet of cigarettes, telephone...) between the gear lever and the electric parking brake control lever.

Manual application

With the vehicle stationary, to apply the parking brake whether the engine is running or off, **pull** control lever **A**.

The application of the parking brake is confirmed by:

- illumination of the braking warning lamp and of the **P** warning lamp in the control lever **A**,

- display of the message "Parking brake on".

When the driver's door is opened with the engine running, a message is displayed accompanied by an audible signal if the parking brake has not been applied.
With an automatic gearbox, the audible signal and the message will not appear if the gear selector is at position **P**.

! Before leaving the vehicle, ensure that parking brake warning lamp in the instrument panel is on fixed, not flashing.

Manual release

With the ignition on or the engine running, to release the parking brake, **press** on the **brake pedal** or the accelerator, **pull then release** control **A**.

The full application of the parking brake is confirmed by:

- the braking warning lamp and the **P** warning lamp in the control lever **A** going off,

- display of the message "Parking brake off".

If you pull control lever **A** without pressing the brake pedal, the parking brake will not be released and a warning lamp will come on in the instrument panel.

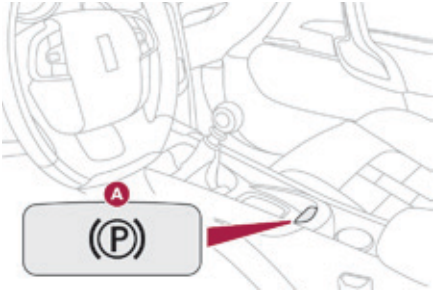
Maximum application

If necessary, you can make a **maximum application** of the parking brake. This is obtained by means of a **long pull** on the control lever **A**, until you see the message "Parking brake on maximum" and a beep is heard.
Maximum application is essential:

- in the case of a vehicle towing a caravan or a trailer, if the automatic functions are activated but you are applying the parking brake manually,
- when the gradient you are parked on may vary (e.g. on a ferry, on a lorry, during towing),

i In the case of towing, a loaded vehicle or parking on a gradient, make a maximum application of the parking brake then turn the front wheels towards the pavement and engage a gear when you park.
After a maximum application, the release time will be longer.

Automatic application, engine off



With the vehicle stationary, the parking brake **is automatically applied when the engine is switched off**.

The application of the parking brake is confirmed by:

- illumination of the braking warning lamp and of the **P** warning lamp in the control lever **A**,

- display of the message "Parking brake on".

! Before leaving the vehicle, ensure that parking brake warning lamp in the instrument panel is on fixed (not flashing).
Never leave a child alone inside the vehicle with the ignition on, as they could release the parking brake.

i In the case of towing, a loaded vehicle or parking on a gradient, turn the front wheels towards the pavement and engage a gear when you park.

Automatic release

The electric parking brake **releases automatically and progressively** when you press the accelerator:

☞ With a manual gearbox: press down fully on the clutch pedal, engage first gear or reverse, press on the accelerator pedal and move off.

☞ With an automatic gearbox: select position **D**, **M** or **R** then press the accelerator pedal.

Full release of the parking brake is confirmed by:

- the braking warning lamp and the **P** warning lamp in the control lever **A** going off,

- display of the message "Parking brake off".

! When stationary, with the engine running, do not press the accelerator pedal unnecessarily, as you may release the parking brake.

Immobilising the vehicle, engine running

With the engine running and the vehicle stationary, in order to immobilise the vehicle it is essential to **manually** apply the parking brake by **pulling** control lever **A**.

The application of the parking brake is confirmed by:

- illumination of the braking warning lamp and the **P** warning lamp in the control lever **A**,
- display of the message "Parking brake on".

When the driver's door is opened, a message is displayed accompanied by an audible signal, if the parking brake has not been applied.
With an automatic gearbox, the audible signal and the message will not appear if the gear selector is at position **P**.

! Before leaving the vehicle, ensure that parking brake warning lamp in the instrument panel is on fixed, not flashing.

Particular situations

In certain situations (e.g. starting the engine), the parking brake can automatically alter its force. This is normal operation.
To advance your vehicle a few centimetres without starting the engine, but with the ignition on, press on the brake pedal and release the parking brake **by pulling** then **releasing** the control lever **A**. The full release of the parking brake is confirmed by the warning lamps in the control lever **A** and in the instrument panel going off and display of the message "Parking brake off".

Emergency braking

In the event of a failure of the main service brake or in an exceptional situation (e.g. driver taken ill, under instruction, etc) a continuous pull on the control lever **A** will stop the vehicle.
The electronic stability control provides stability during emergency braking.
If the emergency braking malfunctions, the message "Parking brake faulty" will be displayed.

In the event of failure of the electronic stability control system, signalled by the illumination of this warning lamp, braking stability is then not guaranteed.

In this event, stability must be assured by the driver by repeating alternate "pull-release" actions on the control lever **A**.

! The emergency braking must only be used in exceptional circumstances.

6-speed manual gearbox

Engaging 5th or 6th gear

☞ Move the lever fully to the right to engage 5th or 6th gear.

! Failure to observe this procedure may cause permanent damage to the gearbox (engaging 3rd or 4th gear by mistake).

Engaging reverse gear

☞ Raise the ring under the knob and move the gear lever to the left then forwards.

! Only engage reverse gear when the vehicle is stationary with the engine at idle.

i As a safety precaution and to facilitate starting of the engine:
- always select neutral,
- press the clutch pedal.

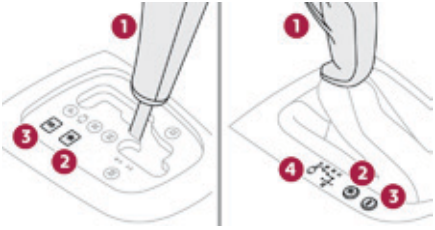
Automatic gearbox

Six speed automatic gearbox which offers a choice between the comfort of fully automatic operation, enhanced by sport and snow programmes, and the pleasure of manual gear changing.

Two driving modes are offered:

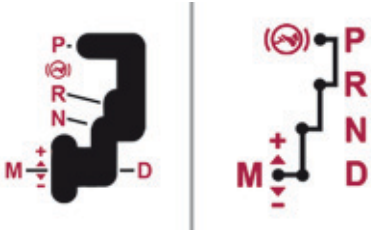
- **automatic** operation for electronic management of the gears by the gearbox, with a **sport** programme for a more dynamic style of driving and a **snow** programme to improve driving when traction is poor,
- **manual** operation for sequential changing of the gears by the driver.

Gear selection gate



1. Gear selector.
2. Button "❄" **(snow)**.
3. Button "**S**" **(sport)**.
4. Position markings for the gear selector.

Gear selector positions



P. Park.

- Immobilisation of the vehicle, parking brake on or off.
- Starting the engine.

R. Reverse.

- Reversing manoeuvres, vehicle stationary, engine at idle.

N. Neutral.

- Immobilisation of the vehicle, parking brake on.
- Starting the engine.

D. Automatic operation.

M.+ / - Manual operation with sequential changing of the six gears.

☞ Push forwards to change up through the gears.

or

☞ Pull backwards to change down through the gears.

Displays in the instrument panel

When you move the selector in the gate to select a position, the corresponding indicator comes on in the instrument panel.

P Park
R Reverse
N Neutral
D Drive (automatic driving)
S **Sport** programme
❄ **Snow** programme
1 to 6 Gear engaged during manual operation
- Invalid value during manual operation

Moving off

☞ With your foot on the brake, select position **P** or **N**.
☞ Start the engine.

If this procedure is not followed, an audible signal is heard, accompanied by a message in the instrument panel screen.

☞ With the engine running, press the brake pedal.
☞ Select position **R**, **D** or **M**.

If you do not press the brake pedal when trying to move the gear selector out of position **P**, this warning lamp or this symbol appears in the instrument panel accompanied by a message, flashing of the **P** symbol, the display of a message and an audible signal.

☞ Check that the display in the instrument panel agrees with the position engaged.
☞ Gradually release the brake pedal.

The parking brake is released manually, the vehicle moves off.
If the parking brake is on and automatic mode is activated, accelerate progressively.

i If the parking brake does not release automatically, check that the front doors are fully closed.

i If position **N** is engaged inadvertently while driving, allow the engine to return to idle then engage position **D** to accelerate.

! When the engine is running at idle, with the brakes released, if position **R**, **D** or **M** is selected, the vehicle moves even without the accelerator being pressed. Never leave children unsupervised in the vehicle when the engine is running. When carrying out maintenance with the engine running, apply the parking brake and select position **P**.

Automatic operation

☞ Select position **D** for **automatic** changing of the six gears.

The gearbox then operates in auto-adaptive mode, without any intervention on the part of the driver. It continuously selects the most suitable gear according to the style of driving, the profile of the road and the load in the vehicle.
For maximum acceleration without touching the selector, press the accelerator pedal down fully (kick down). The gearbox changes down automatically or maintains the gear selected until the maximum engine speed is reached.
On braking, the gearbox changes down automatically to provide effective engine braking.
If you release the accelerator sharply, the gearbox will not change to a higher gear for safety reasons.

! Never select position **N** while the vehicle is moving.
Never select positions **P** or **R** unless the vehicle is completely stationary.

Sport and snow programmes

These two special programmes supplement the automatic operation in very specific conditions of use.

Sport programme "S"

☞ Press button **"S"**, after starting the engine.
The gearbox automatically favours a dynamic style of driving.

S appears in the instrument panel.

Snow programme "❄"

☞ Press button "❄", after starting the engine.
The gearbox adapts to driving on slippery roads.
This programme improves starting and drive when traction is poor.

❄ appears in the instrument panel.

Return to auto-adaptive mode

☞ At any time, press the button selected again to leave the special programme engaged and return to auto-adaptive mode.

Manual operation

☞ Select position **M** for **sequential** changing of the six gears.
☞ Push the selector towards the **+** sign to change up a gear.
☞ Pull the selector towards the **-** sign to change down a gear.

It is only possible to change from one gear to another if the vehicle speed and engine speed permit; otherwise, the gearbox will operate temporarily in automatic mode.

D disappears and the gears engaged appear in succession on the instrument panel.

If the engine speed is too low or too high, the gear selected flashes for a few seconds, then the actual gear engaged is displayed.
When the vehicle is stationary or moving very slowly, the gearbox selects gear **1** automatically.
It is not necessary to release the accelerator when changing gear.
It is possible to change from position **D** (automatic) to position **M** (manual) at any time.
The sport and snow programmes do not operate in manual mode.

Invalid value during manual operation

This symbol is displayed if a gear is not engaged correctly (selector between two positions).

Stopping the vehicle

Before switching off the engine, put the selector in position **P** or **N** to place the gearbox in neutral.
In both cases, apply the parking brake to immobilise the vehicle, unless it is programmed to automatic mode.

i If the selector is not in position **P**, when the driver's door is opened or approximately 45 seconds after the ignition is switched off, there is an audible signal and a message appears.
☞ Return the selector to position **P**; the audible signal stops and the message disappears.

Operating fault

When the ignition is on, a message appears in the instrument panel screen to indicate a gearbox fault.
In this case, the gearbox switches to back-up mode and is locked in 3rd gear. You may feel a substantial knock when changing from **P** to **R** and from **N** to **R**. This will not cause any damage to the gearbox.
Do not exceed 60 mph (100 km/h), local speed restrictions permitting.
Have it checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

! You risk damaging the gearbox:
- if you press the accelerator and brake pedals at the same time,
- if you force the selector from position **P** to another position when the battery is flat.

e To reduce fuel consumption when stationary for long periods with the engine running (traffic jam...), position the gear selector at **N** and apply the parking brake, unless it is programmed in automatic mode.

Hill start assist

System which keeps your vehicle immobilised temporarily (approximately 2 seconds) when starting on a gradient, the time it takes to move your foot from the brake pedal to the accelerator pedal.

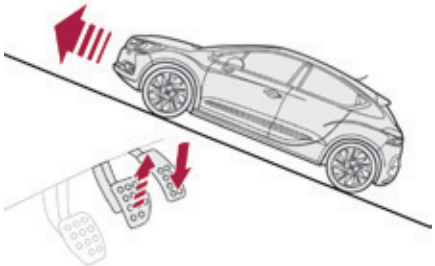
This function is only active when:

- the vehicle is completely stationary, with your foot on the brake pedal,
- when certain conditions of gradient are met,
- with the driver's door closed.

The hill start assist function cannot be deactivated.

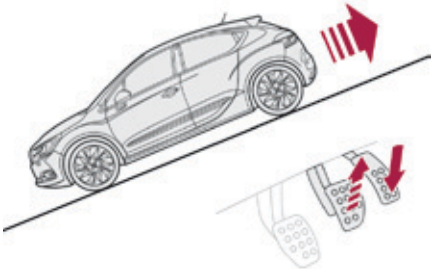
! Do not leave the vehicle while it is being held in the hill start assist phase. If you need to leave the vehicle while the engine is running, apply the parking brake manually then ensure that the parking brake warning lamp is on (not flashing) in the instrument panel.

Operation



On an ascending slope, with the vehicle stationary, the vehicle is held for a brief moment when you release the brake pedal.

- With a manual gearbox, if you are in first gear or neutral.
- With an automatic gearbox, if you are in position **D** or **M**.



On a descending slope, with the vehicle stationary and reverse gear engaged, the vehicle is held for a brief moment when you release the brake pedal.

Operating fault

If a fault occurs with the system, these warning lamps come on. Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop to have the system checked.

Gear efficiency indicator*

System which reduces fuel consumption by recommending the most appropriate gear.

Operation

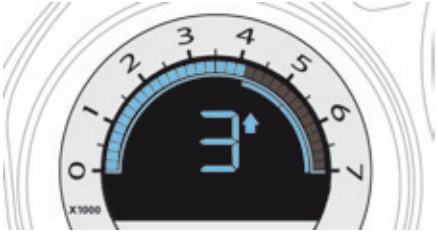
Depending on the driving situation and your vehicle's equipment, the system may advise you to skip one (or more) gear(s). You can follow this instruction without engaging the intermediate gears.
The gear engagement recommendations must not be considered compulsory. Indeed, the configuration of the road, the amount of traffic and safety remain determining factors when choosing the best gear. Therefore, the driver remains responsible for deciding whether or not to follow the advice given by the system.
This function cannot be deactivated.

> i With an automatic gearbox, the system is only active in manual mode.

The information appears in the instrument panel in the form of an arrow.

> i On vehicle fitted with a manual gearbox, the arrow may be accompanied by the gear recommended.

Example:
- You are in third gear.
- You press the accelerator pedal.



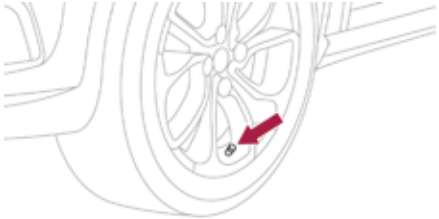
- The system may suggest that you engage a higher gear.

> i The system adapts its gear change recommendation according to the driving conditions (slope, load, etc.) and the demands of the driver (power, acceleration, braking, etc.).
> The system never suggests:
> - engaging first gear,
> - engaging reverse gear,
> - changing down.

* Depending on engine.

Tyre under-inflation detection

System which automatically checks the pressures of the tyres while driving.
The system continuously monitors the pressures of the four tyres, as soon as the vehicle is moving.



Pressure sensors are located in the valve of each tyre (except the spare wheel).
The system triggers an alert if a drop in pressure is detected in one or more tyres.

The tyre under-inflation detection system is an aid to driving which does not replace the need for vigilance on the part of the driver.

! This system does not avoid the need to check the tyre pressures regularly (including the spare wheel) and before a long journey.
Driving with under-inflated tyres adversely affects road holding, extends braking distances and causes premature tyre wear, particularly under arduous conditions (vehicle loaded, high speed, long journey).

e Driving with under-inflated tyres increases fuel consumption.

! The tyre pressures for your vehicle can be found on the tyre pressure label.
The tyre pressures must be checked when the tyres are cold (vehicle stopped for 1 hour or after driving for less then 6 miles (10 km) at moderate speed). Otherwise, add 0.3 bar to the values indicated on the label.
For more information on **Identification markings**, including the tyre pressure label, refer to the corresponding section.

Under-inflation alert

The alert is given by the fixed illumination of this warning lamp, accompanied by an audible signal, and depending on equipment, the display of a message.

In the event of a problem on one of the tyres, the symbol or the message appears, depending on equipment, to identify it.

- ☞ Reduce speed immediately, avoid sudden steering movements or harsh brake applications.
- ☞ Stop as soon as it is safe to do so.
- ☞ If you have a compressor (e.g. the one in the temporary puncture repair kit), check the four tyre pressures when cold.
  If it is not possible to check the tyre pressures at the time, drive carefully at reduced speed.
  or
- ☞ In the event of a puncture, use the temporary puncture repair kit or the spare wheel (depending on equipment).

i The alert is maintained until the tyre or tyres concerned is reinflated, repaired or replaced.
The spare wheel (space-saver type or a steel rim) does not have a sensor.

! The loss of pressure detected does not always lead to visible deformation of the tyre.
Do not rely on just a visual check.

Operating fault

The flashing and then fixed illumination of the under-inflation warning lamp accompanied by the illumination of the service warning lamp indicates a fault with the system.

i This alert is also displayed when one or more wheels is not fitted with a sensor (e.g. a space-saver or steel spare wheel).

In this case, monitoring of the tyre pressures is not assured.

Go to a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop to have the system checked or, following the repair of a puncture, to have the original wheel, equipped with a sensor, refitted.

Any tyre repair or replacement on a wheel fitted with this system must be carried out by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.
If after changing a tyre, a wheel is not detected by your vehicle (e.g. fitting snow tyres), you must have the system reinitialised by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Stop & Start

The Stop & Start system puts the engine temporarily into standby - STOP mode - during stops in the traffic (red lights, traffic jams, or other...). The engine restarts automatically - START mode - as soon as you want to move off. The restart takes place instantly, quickly and silently.
Perfect for urban use, the Stop & Start system reduces fuel consumption and exhaust emissions as well as the noise level when stationary.

Operation

Going into engine STOP mode

ECO **With a manual gearbox,** at a speed below 12 mph (20 km/h), or when the vehicle is stationary with the PureTech 130 petrol and BlueHDi Diesel 115 and 120 versions, this warning lamp comes on in the instrument panel and the engine switches to standby automatically when you place the gear lever in neutral and release the clutch pedal.

ECO **With an automatic gearbox,** when the vehicle is stationary, this warning lamp comes on in the instrument panel and the engine switches to standby automatically when you press the brake pedal or place the gear selector at position **N**.

If your vehicle is fitted with the system, a time counter calculates the sum of the periods in STOP mode during a journey. It resets itself to zero every time the ignition is switched on with the key or the "START/STOP" button.

i STOP mode does not affect the functionality of the vehicle, such as braking, power steering, for example. Never refuel with the engine in STOP mode; you must switch off the ignition with the key or the "START/STOP" button.

Special cases: STOP mode unavailable

STOP mode is not invoked when:
- the vehicle is on a steep slope (up or down),
- the driver's door is open,
- the driver's seat belt is not fastened,
- the vehicle has not exceeded 6 mph (10 km/h) since the last engine start (using the key or the "START/STOP" button),
- the electric parking brake is applied or being applied,
- the engine is needed to maintain a comfortable temperature in the passenger compartment,
- demisting is active,
- some special conditions (battery charge, engine temperature, braking assistance, ambient temperature...) where the engine is needed to assure control of a system.

In this case, the **"ECO"** warning lamp flashes for a few seconds, then goes off.

This operation is perfectly normal.

Going into engine START mode

ECO **With a manual gearbox,** this warning lamp switches off and the engine restarts automatically when you press the clutch pedal **fully**.

ECO **With an automatic gearbox,** this warning lamp switches off and the engine restarts automatically when:

- you release the brake pedal with the gear selector in position **D** or **M**,
- you are in position **N**, with the brake pedal released, and you place the gear selector in position **D** or **M**,
- you engage reverse gear.

Special cases: START invoked automatically

For safety reasons or to ensure smooth operation, START mode is invoked automatically when:

- you open the driver's door,
- you unfasten the driver's seat belt,
- the speed of the vehicle exceeds 15 mph (25 km/h) with a manual gearbox (3 km/h (2 mph) with PureTech 130 petrol and BlueHDi Diesel 115 and 120 versions) or 2 mph (3 km/h) with an automatic gearbox,
- the electric parking brake is being applied,
- some special conditions (battery charge, engine temperature, braking assistance, ambient temperature...) where the engine is needed to assure control of a system.

ECO In this case the **"ECO"** warning lamp flashes for few seconds, then goes off.

This operation is perfectly normal.

i With a manual gearbox in STOP mode, if a gear is engaged without fully depressing the clutch pedal, a warning lamp comes on or an alert message is displayed asking you to depress the clutch pedal to restart the engine.

Deactivation / Reactivation

In some cases, such as the maintaining of a comfortable temperature in the passenger compartment, it may be useful to deactivate the Stop & Start.
Deactivation can be requested at any time once the ignition has been switched on.
If the engine is in STOP mode, it restarts straight away.
The Stop & Start is reactivated automatically each time the ignition is switched on.

With the switch on the dashboard

☞ Press this switch.

Deactivation is confirmed by the illumination of the indicator lamp in the control switch and the display of a message.

Pressing the switch again reactivates the system.

The indicator lamp in the switch goes off, accompanied by the display of a message.

Opening the bonnet
Before doing anything under the bonnet, deactivate the Stop & Start system to avoid the risk of injury related to an automatic change to START mode.

Driving on flooded roads
Before driving through a flooded road, it is strongly recommended that you deactivate the Stop & Start system.
For more information on **Driving advice**, particularly on flooded roads, refer to the corresponding section.

Operating fault

In the event of a malfunction with the system, the **"ECO OFF"** switch warning lamp flashes, then comes on continuously.

Have it checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

In the event of a fault in STOP mode, the vehicle may stall. All of the instrument panel warning lamps come on.
Depending on version, an alert message may also be displayed asking you to put the gear lever into position **N** and put your foot on the brake pedal.
It is then necessary to switch off the ignition, then restart the engine.

The Stop & Start requires a 12 V battery with special technology and specifications. All work on this type of battery must be carried out exclusively by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.
For more information on the **12 V battery**, refer to the corresponding section.

Lane departure warning system

System which detects the involuntary crossing of longitudinal traffic lane markings on the ground (solid or broken line).
Sensors, fitted below the front bumper, trigger a warning if the vehicle drifts over a lane marking (speed higher than 50 mph (80 km/h)).
This system is particularly useful on motorways and main roads.

! The lane departure warning system cannot in any circumstances replace the need for vigilance on the part of the driver.
It is necessary to observe driving regulations and take a break every two hours.

Activation

☞ When switching the ignition on or with the engine running, press this button; the indicator lamp comes on.

Deactivation

☞ Press this button again, the indicator lamp goes off.

The status of the system remains in the memory when the ignition is switched off.

Detection

You are warned by the vibration of the driver's seat cushion:

- on the right-hand side, if the marking on the ground has been crossed on the right,
- on the left-hand side, if the marking on the ground has been crossed on the left.

No warning is transmitted while the direction indicator is active and for approximately 20 seconds after the direction indicator is switched off.
A warning may be transmitted if a direction marking (e.g. arrow) or non-standard marking (e.g. graffiti) is crossed.

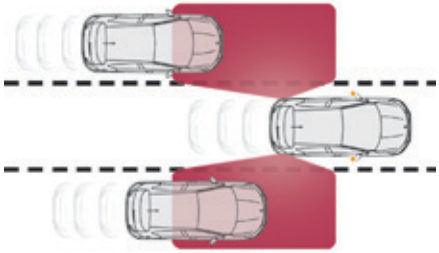
Operating fault

SERVICE In the event of a malfunction, the service warning lamp comes on, accompanied by an audible signal and a message in the screen.

Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

i The detection may be impeded:
- if the sensors are dirty (mud, snow...),
- if the markings on the ground are worn,
- if there is little contrast between the markings on the ground and the road surface.

Blind spot monitoring system

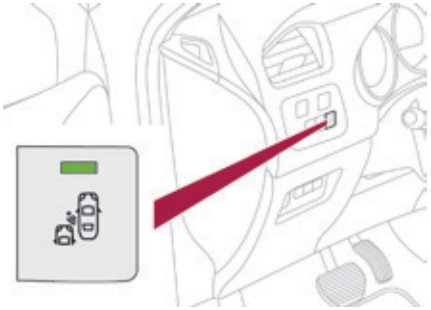


This driving assistance system warns the driver of the presence of another vehicle in the blind spot angle of their vehicle (areas masked from the driver's field of vision), as soon as this presents a potential danger.

A warning lamp appears in the door mirror on the side in question:

- immediately, when being overtaken,
- after a delay of about one second, when overtaking a vehicle slowly.

Operation

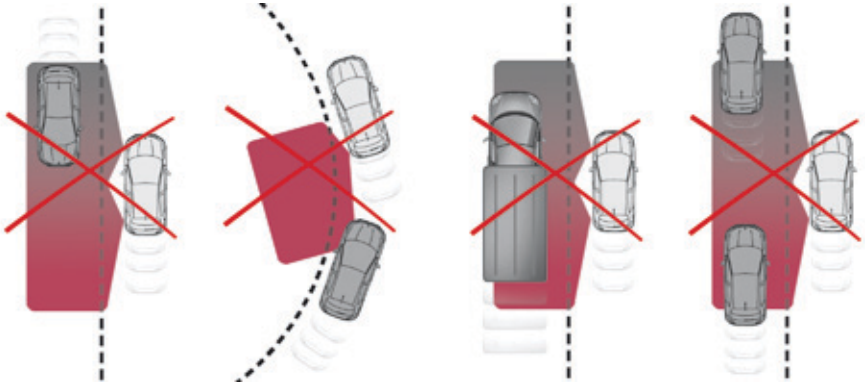


☞ On switching on the ignition, or engine running, press this button to activate the function; the warning lamp comes on.

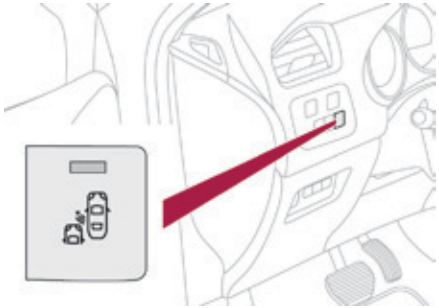
Sensors fitted in the front and rear bumpers monitor the blind spots.

! This system is designed to improve safety when driving and is in no circumstances a substitute for the use of the interior rear view mirror and door mirrors. It is the driver's responsibility to constantly check the traffic, to assess the distances and relative speeds of other vehicles and to predict their movements before deciding whether to change lane. The blind spot sensor system can never replace the need for vigilance on the part of the driver.

The alert is given by a warning lamp which comes on in the door mirror on the side in question as soon as a vehicle - car, lorry, cycle - is detected.
For this, the following conditions must be met:
- all the vehicles must be moving in the same direction,
- the speed of your vehicle is between 7 and 75 mph (12 and 140 km/h),
- when you overtake a vehicle with a speed difference of less than 6 mph (10 km/h),
- when a vehicle overtakes you with a speed difference of less than 15 mph (25 km/h),
- the traffic must be flowing normally,
- in the case of an overtaking manoeuvre, if this is prolonged and the vehicle being overtaken remains in the blind spot,
- you are driving on a straight or slightly curved road,
- your vehicle is not pulling a trailer, a caravan...



No alert will be given in the following situations:
- in the presence of immobile objects (parked vehicles, barriers, street lamps, road signs...),
- with vehicles moving in the opposite direction,
- driving on a sinuous road or a sharp corner,
- when overtaking (or being overtaken by) a very long vehicle (lorry, coach...) which is at the same time detected at the rear in the blind spot angle and present in the driver's forward field of vision,
- in very heavy traffic: vehicles detected in front and behind are confused with a lorry or a stationary object,
- when overtaking quickly.



☞ To deactivate the system, press this button again; the warning lamp goes off.

The state of the system remains in memory on switching off the ignition.

i The system is automatically deactivated when towing with a towbar approved by CITROËN.

Operating fault

In the event of a fault, the warning lamp in the button flashes then goes off.
Have it checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

i The system may suffer temporary interference in certain weather conditions (rain, hail...).
In particular, driving on a wet surface or moving from a dry area to a wet area can cause false alerts (for example, the presence of a fog of water droplets in the blind spot angle is interpreted as a vehicle).
In bad or wintry weather, ensure that the sensors are not covered by mud, ice or snow.
Take care not to cover the warning zone in the door mirrors or the detection zones on the front and rear bumpers with adhesive labels or other objects; they may hamper the correct operation of the system.

Memorising speeds

This function allows speed settings to be registered which will then be offered as settings for two systems: the speed limiter (a maximum speed) and the cruise control (cruising speed).
You can memorise up to six speed settings in the system, depending on version. By default, some speed settings are already memorised.

With your Audio system

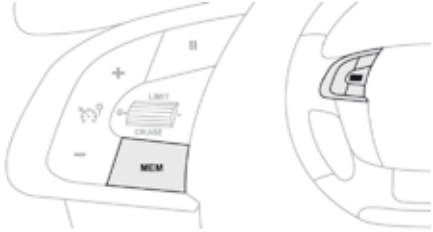
Activating the function

Modifying a speed setting

- Go to the main menu by pressing the **"MENU"** button:
- Select the "Personalisation-configuration" menu and confirm.
- Select "Vehicle parameters" menu and confirm.
- Select the "Driving assistance" line and conform.
- Select "Speeds memorised" line and confirm.
- Select "Activation" to activate the function.
- Select the speed setting to be modified and confirm.
- Modify the speed setting.
- Select "**OK**" and confirm to save the modifications.

! As a safety measure, the driver must only modify a speed setting when stationary.

"MEM" button



- Press this button to display the list of memorised speed settings.

With the touch screen tablet

Modifying a speed setting

☞ Press this button to select the "**Driving**" menu.

☞ In the secondary page, press "**Speed settings**".

☞ Select the system for which you want to memorise new speed settings:

- speed limiter

or

- cruise control.

☞ Choose the speed setting to be modified.

☞ Enter the new value using the numerical keypad and confirm.

☞ Confirm to save the modification and quit the menu.

"MEM" button

Press this button to select a speed settings for use by the speed limiter or cruise control.
For more information on the **Speed limiter** and/or the **Cruise control**, refer to the corresponding section.

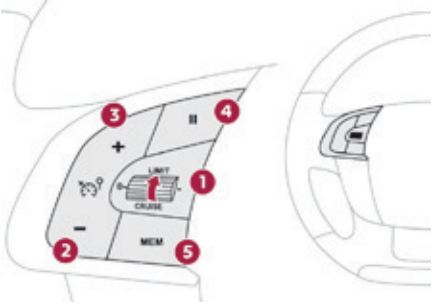
Speed limiter

System which prevents the vehicle from exceeding the speed programmed by the driver.

i The speed limiter is **switched on** manually.
The minimum programmed speed is 20 mph (30 km/h).
The programmed speed remains in the system memory when the ignition is switched off.

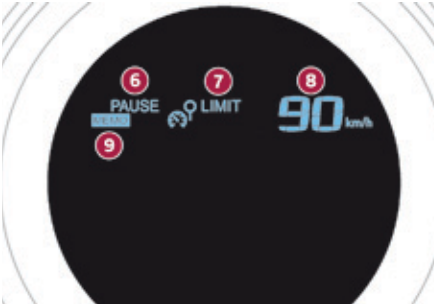
! The speed limiter is a driving aid that cannot, in any circumstances, replace the need to observe speed limits or the need for vigilance on the part of the driver.

Steering mounted controls



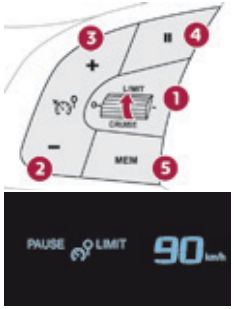
1. Speed limiter mode selection wheel.
2. Programmed value decrease button.
3. Programmed value increase button.
4. Speed limiter on / pause button.
5. Display memorised speed settings button.

Displays in the instrument panel



6. Speed limiter on / pause indication.
7. Speed limiter mode selection indication.
8. Programmed speed value.
9. Selection of a memorised speed setting.

Switching on



☞ Turn the wheel **1** to the **"LIMIT"** position to select the speed limiter; the function is paused.

☞ If the speed setting is suitable (last speed setting programmed in the system) press button **4** to switch the speed limiter on.

☞ Pressing button **4** temporarily interrupts the function (pause).

Adjusting the limit speed setting

You do not have to switch the speed limiter on in order to set the speed.

To modify the limit speed setting using memorised speeds and from your Audio system:

☞ first activate the system,

☞ make a long press on button **2** or **3**, the system displays the memorised speed closest to the actual speed of the vehicle; this setting becomes the new limit speed,

☞ to choose another memorised speed, make another long press on button **2** or **3**.

For more information on **Memorising speeds**, refer to the corresponding section.

To modify the limit speed setting using memorised speeds and from the touch screen:

☞ press button **5** to display the six memorised speed settings,

☞ press the button for the desired speed setting.

This setting becomes the new limit speed.

To modify the limit speed setting from the current speed of the vehicle:

☞ in steps of +/- 1 mph (km/h), make successive short presses on button **2** or **3**,

☞ continuously, in steps of +/- 5 mph (km/h), press and hold button **2** or **3**.

Temporarily exceeding the programmed speed

☞ If you want to temporarily exceed the programmed limit speed, press **firmly** on the accelerator pedal, going beyond the **point of resistance**.

The speed limiter is deactivated temporarily and the displayed programmed speed flashes.

! On a steep descent or in the event of sharp acceleration, the speed limiter will not be able to prevent the vehicle from exceeding the programmed speed.

When the limit speed is exceeded but is not due to action by the driver, there is an audible signal to complete the alert.

Once the speed of the vehicle returns to the programmed setting, the speed limiter functions again: the display of the programmed speed setting becomes steady again.

Switching off

☞ Turn wheel **1** to the **"0"** position: the display of information on the speed limiter disappears.

Operating fault

Flashing dashes indicate a fault with the speed limiter.
Have it checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

! The use of mats not approved by CITROËN may interfere with the operation of the speed limiter.
To avoid any risk of jamming of the pedals:
- ensure that the mat is positioned correctly,
- do not fit one mat on top of another.

Cruise control

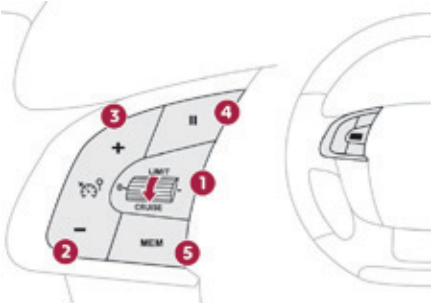
System which automatically maintains the cruising speed of the vehicle at a setting programmed by the driver, without any action on the accelerator pedal.

i The cruise control is **switched on** manually.
It requires a minimum vehicle speed of 25 mph (40 km/h) as well as:
- with a manual gearbox, the engagement of fourth gear or higher,
- with an automatic gearbox, the gear selector at position **D** or second gear or higher in manual mode.

The operation of the cruise control can be interrupted (pause):
- by pressing control **4** or by pressing the brake or clutch pedal,
- automatically, if operation of the dynamic stability control system is triggered.

i Switching off the ignition cancels any programmed speed setting.

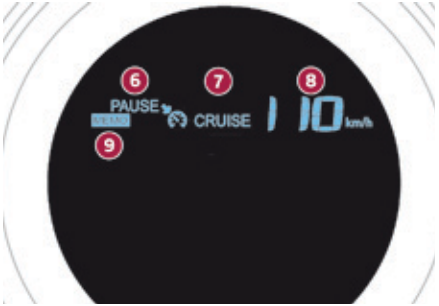
Steering mounted controls



1. Cruise control mode selection wheel.
2. Button for setting the current speed of the vehicle as the cruise setting or lowering the cruise setting.
3. Button for setting the current speed of the vehicle as the cruise setting or raising the cruise setting.
4. Cruise control pause / resume button.
5. Display memorised speed settings button.

! The cruise control system is a driving aid that cannot, in any circumstances, replace the need to observe speed limits, nor the need for vigilance on the part of the driver.

Displays in the instrument panel



6. Cruise control pause / resume indication.
7. Cruise control mode selected indication.
8. Cruise speed setting.
9. Selecting a memorised cruise speed.

! As a safety measure, you are advised to keep your feet near the pedals at all times.

Switching on

☞ Turn the wheel **1** to the **"CRUISE"** position to select cruise control mode; the function is paused.

☞ To start the cruise control and set a cruise speed, once the vehicle has reached the desired speed, press button **2** or **3**: the current speed of your vehicle becomes the cruise speed setting.
You can release the accelerator pedal.

☞ Pressing button **4** interrupts operation of the system (pause).
☞ Pressing button **4** again restores operation of the cruise control (ON).

Adjusting the cruise speed setting

The cruise control must be activated.

To modify the cruise speed setting using memorised speeds and from your Audio system:
☞ first activate the system,
☞ make a long press on button **2** or **3**, the system displays the memorised speed closest to the actual speed of the vehicle; this setting becomes the new cruise speed,
☞ to choose another memorised speed, make another long press on button **2** or **3**.

For more information on **Memorising speeds**, refer to the corresponding section.

To modify the cruise speed setting using memorised speeds and from the touch screen:
☞ press button **5** to display the six memorised speed settings,
☞ press the button for the desired speed setting.

This setting becomes the new cruise speed.

! As a precaution, it is recommended that the cruise speed chosen be close to the current speed of your vehicle, so as to avoid any sudden acceleration or deceleration of the vehicle.

To modify the cruise speed setting from the current speed of the vehicle:
☞ in steps of + or - 1 mph (km/h), make repeated short presses on button **2** or **3**,
☞ continuously, in steps of + or - 5 mph (km/h), press and hold button **2** or **3**.

! Take care: pressing and holding button **2** or **3** results in a rapid change in the speed of your vehicle.

Temporarily exceeding the programmed speed

When required (overtaking manoeuvre...), it is possible to exceed the programmed speed by pressing the accelerator pedal.

The cruise control is temporarily overridden and the programmed speed setting flashes.

To return to the programmed speed, simply release the accelerator pedal.
Once the vehicle has returned to the programmed speed, the cruise control takes over again: the display of the programmed speed setting becomes steady again.

! When descending a steep hill, the cruise control system cannot prevent the vehicle from exceeding the programmed speed.

You may have to brake to control the speed of your vehicle. In this case, the cruise control is automatically paused.
To activate the system again, press button **4**.

Switching off

☞ Turn wheel **1** to the **"0"** position: the cruise control information disappears from the screen.

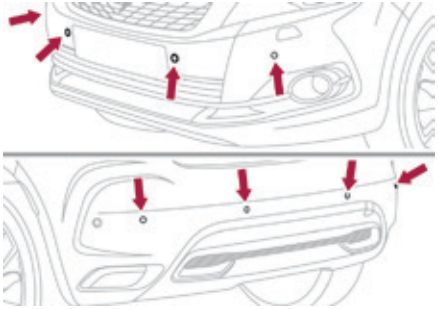
Operating fault

Flashing dashes indicate a fault with the cruise control system.
Have it checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

! Only use the cruise control if the traffic conditions will allow you to drive for a certain time at a steady speed and at a safe distance from the vehicle ahead.
Do not activate the cruise control in urban areas, in heavy traffic, on winding or steep roads, on slippery or flooded roads, or in conditions of poor visibility (heavy rain, fog, falling snow...).
In some circumstances, it may not be possible to maintain or reach the programmed speed: towing, vehicle heavily loaded, steep climb.

! The use of mats not approved by CITROËN may interfere with the operation of the cruise control.
To avoid any risk of jamming of the pedals:
- ensure that the mat is positioned correctly,
- never fit one mat on top of another.

Parking sensors



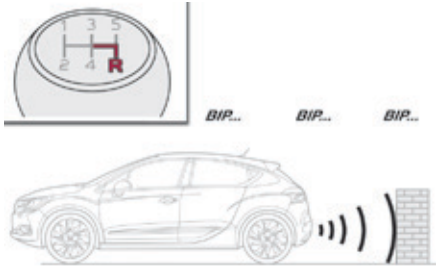
This system indicates the proximity of an obstacle (e.g. pedestrian, vehicle, tree, gate) which comes within the field of detection of sensors located in the bumper.
Certain types of obstacle (e.g. stake, roadworks cone) detected initially will no longer be detected at the end of the manoeuvre, if they are located in blind spots in the sensors' field of detection.

! This system cannot in any circumstances replace the need for vigilance on the part of the driver.

Rear parking sensors

The system is switched on by engaging reverse gear.
This is confirmed by an audible signal.
The system is switched off when you come out of reverse gear.

Audible assistance



The proximity information is given by an intermittent audible signal, the frequency of which increases as the vehicle approaches the obstacle.
The sound emitted by the speaker (right-hand or left-hand) indicates the side on which the obstacle is located.
When the distance between the vehicle and the obstacle becomes less than approximately thirty centimetres, the audible signal becomes continuous.

Visual assistance

This supplements the audible signal by displaying bars in the screen which move progressively nearer to the vehicle.
When the obstacle is very close, the "Danger" symbol is displayed in the screen.

Front parking sensors

In addition to the rear parking sensors, the front parking sensors are triggered when an obstacle is detected in front and the speed of the vehicle is still below 6 mph (10 km/h).
The front parking sensors are interrupted if the vehicle stops for more than three seconds in forward gear, if no further obstacles are detected or when the speed of the vehicle exceeds 6 mph (10 km/h).

i The sound emitted by the speaker (front or rear) indicates whether the obstacle is in front or behind.

Deactivation/Activation of the front and rear parking sensors

The function is deactivated by pressing this button. The indicator lamp in the button comes on.
Pressing this button again reactivates the function. The indicator lamp in the button goes off.

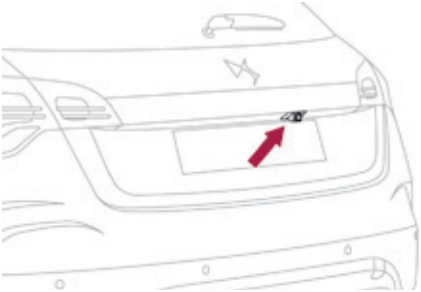
i The function will be deactivated automatically if a trailer is being towed or a bicycle carrier is fitted (vehicle fitted with a towbar or bicycle carrier recommended by CITROËN).

Operating fault

SERVICE In the event of a malfunction of the system, when reverse gear is engaged this warning lamp is displayed in the instrument panel and/or a message appears in the screen, accompanied by an audible signal (short beep). Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

i In bad weather or in winter, ensure that the sensors are not covered with mud, ice or snow. When reverse gear is engaged, an audible signal (long beep) indicates that the sensors may be dirty. Certain sound sources (motorcycle, lorry, pneumatic drill, etc.) may trigger the audible signals of the parking sensor system.

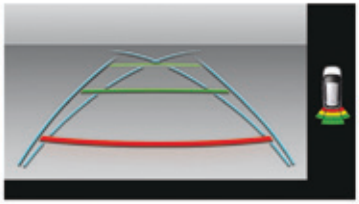
Reversing camera



The reversing camera is activated automatically when reverse gear is engaged.
The colour image is provided in the touch screen tablet.

i The reversing camera system may be accompanied by parking sensors.

! This system is a driving aid that does not replace vigilance on the part of the driver, who must remain in control of the vehicle at all times.



The blue lines represent the general direction of the vehicle.
The blue curved lines represent the maximum turning circle.

The green lines represent distances of around 1 to 2 metres beyond the edge of the vehicle's rear bumper.
The red line represents the distance of around 30 cm beyond the edge of your vehicle's rear bumper.

The lines displayed in the screen do not allow the position of the vehicle to be determined relative to tall obstacles (for example: vehicles nearby).
Some deformation of the image is normal.

i **High pressure jet washing**

When cleaning your vehicle, keep the end of the high pressure lance at least 30 cm from the camera lens.
Clean the camera lens regularly using a soft cloth.

PRACTICAL INFORMATION

07

TOTAL & DS

A DYNAMIC PARTNERSHIP, DIRECTED TOWARDS THE FUTURE.

For more than 45 years, TOTAL and DS have shared common values: excellence, creativity and technological innovation.
It is in this same spirit that TOTAL has developed a range of TOTAL QUARTZ lubricants adapted to DS engines,
making them even more fuel efficient and protective of the environment.

Choose TOTAL QUARTZ lubricants for servicing your vehicle, this is your assurance of optimum durability and performance from your engine.

DS AUTOMOBILES

DS prefers TOTAL

TOTAL

Fuel

Capacity of the tank: approximately **60** litres.

Low fuel level

When the low fuel level in the tank is reached, this warning lamp comes on in the instrument panel, accompanied by an audible warning and the display of an alert message. When it first comes on, **around 6 litres** of fuel remain in the tank.

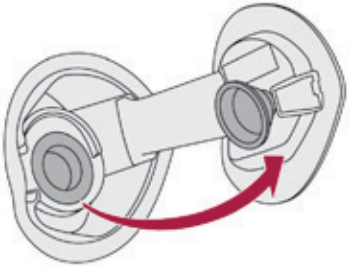
Until sufficient fuel has been added, every time the ignition is switched on, this warning lamp appears, accompanied by an audible signal and an alert message. When driving, this audible signal and alert message are repeated with increasing frequency, as the level drops towards **0**.
You must refuel as soon as possible to avoid running out.
For more information on **Running out of fuel (Diesel)**, refer to the corresponding section.

Refuelling

Additions of fuel must be of at least 5 litres to be registered by the fuel gauge.
Opening the filler cap may result in an inrush of air. This vacuum is entirely normal and results from the sealing of the fuel system.

! If your vehicle is fitted with Stop & Start, never refuel with the engine in STOP mode; you must switch off the ignition using the key, or the START/STOP button if your vehicle has Keyless Entry and Starting.

- Press this button until the automatic opening of the fuel flap is heard.
  This button remains active for a few minutes after switching off the ignition. If necessary, switch the ignition on again to reactivate it.
- Take care to select the pump that delivers the correct fuel for your vehicle.



- Introduce the nozzle so as to push in the metal non-return flap**.**
- Make sure that the nozzle is pushed in as far as possible before starting to refuel (risk of blowback).
- Maintain this position while refuelling.
- Push the fuel flap to close it.

If you are filling your tank to the top, do not persist after the third cut-off; this could cause your vehicle to malfunction.
The petrol or Diesel engine of your vehicle is fitted with a catalytic converter, a device which helps to reduce the level of harmful emissions in the exhaust gases.
For petrol engines, the use of unleaded fuel is compulsory.
The filler neck is narrower, admitting unleaded petrol nozzles only.

! **If you have put in the wrong fuel for your vehicle, you must have the tank drained and refilled with the correct fuel before you start the engine.**

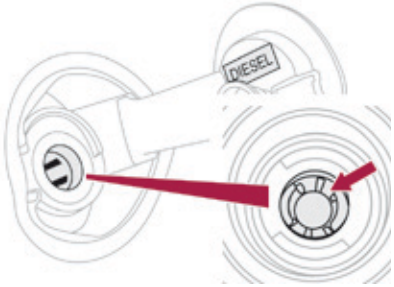
Fuel supply cut-off

Your vehicle is equipped with a safety device which cuts off the fuel supply in the event of a collision.

Misfuel prevention (Diesel)*

Mechanical device which prevents filling the tank of a Diesel vehicle with petrol. It avoids the risk of engine damage that can result from filling with the wrong fuel.
Located in the filler neck, the misfuel prevention device appears when the filler cap is removed.

Operation



When a petrol filler nozzle is introduced into the fuel filler neck of your Diesel vehicle, it comes into contact with the flap. The system remains closed and prevents filling.
Do not persist but introduce a Diesel type filler nozzle.

i It remains possible to use a fuel can to fill the tank.
In order to ensure a good flow of fuel, do not place the nozzle of the fuel can in direct contact with the flap of the misfuel prevention device and pour slowly.

i **Travelling abroad**
As Diesel fuel pump nozzles may be different in other countries, the presence of the misfuel prevention device may make refuelling impossible. Not all Diesel vehicles are fitted with misfuel protection, so before travelling abroad, we recommend that you check with the CITROËN dealer network, whether your vehicle is suitable for the fuel pumps in the country in which you intend to travel.

* Depending on the country of sale.

Fuel used for petrol engines

The petrol engines are compatible with bio-fuels that conform to current and future European standards and can be obtained from filling stations:

E5

E10

- Petrol that meets the EN228 standard, mixed with a bio-fuel meeting the EN15376 standard.

i The only petrol additives authorised for use are those that meet the B715001 standard.

i Travelling abroad

Certain fuels could damage the engine of your vehicle. In certain countries, the use of a particular fuel may be required (specific octane rating, specific sales name...) to ensure correct operation of the engine.
For any additional information, contact your dealer.

Fuel used for Diesel engines

The Diesel engines are compatible with biofuels that conform to current and future European standards and can be obtained from filling stations:

B7

- Diesel fuel that meets standard EN590 mixed with a biofuel that meets standard EN14214 (possibly containing up to 7 % Fatty Acid Methyl Ester),

B10

- Diesel fuel that meets standard EN16734 mixed with a biofuel that meets standard EN14214 (possibly containing up to 10 % Fatty Acid Methyl Ester),

XTL

- Paraffinic Diesel fuel that meets standard EN15940 mixed with a biofuel that meets standard EN14214 (possibly containing up to 7 % Fatty Acid Methyl Ester).

B20

B30

The use of B20 or B30 fuel meeting standard EN16709 is possible in your Diesel engine. However, this use, even occasional, requires strict application of the special servicing conditions referred to as "Arduous conditions".

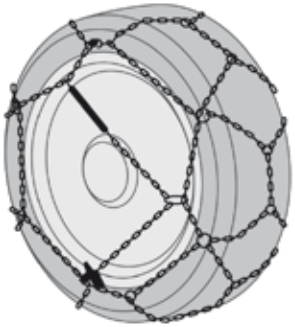
For more information, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

! The use of any other type of (bio) fuel (vegetable or animal oils, pure or diluted, domestic fuel...) is strictly prohibited (risk of damage to the engine and fuel system).

i The only Diesel additives authorised for use are those that meet the B715000 standard.

Snow chains

In wintry conditions, snow chains improve traction as well as the behaviour of the vehicle when braking.



i The snow chains must be fitted only to the front wheels. They must never be fitted to "space-saver" type spare wheels.

Use only the chains designed to be fitted to the type of wheel fitted to your vehicle:

Original tyre size	Maximum link size.
215/60 R16	9 mm
215/55 R17	
225/45 R18	
225/40 R19	cannot be fitted with chains

For more information on snow chains, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

i Take account of the legislation in force in your country on the use of snow chains and the maximum running speed authorised.

i It is strongly recommended that before you leave, you practise fitting the snow chains on a level and dry surface.

Advice on installation

- If you have to fit the chains during a journey, stop the vehicle on a flat surface on the side of the road.
- Apply the parking brake and position any wheel chocks to prevent movement of your vehicle.
- Fit the chains following the instructions provided by the manufacturer.
- Move off gently and drive for a few moments, without exceeding 30 mph (50 km/h).
- Stop your vehicle and check that the snow chains are correctly tightened.

! Avoid driving with snow chains on roads that have been cleared of snow, to avoid damaging your vehicle's tyres and the road surface. If your vehicle is fitted with alloy wheels, check that no part of the chain or its fixings is in contact with the wheel rim.

Very cold climate screen*

Removable protective screen which prevents the accumulation of snow at the radiator cooling fan.

Fitting

☞ Offer up the very cold climate screen to the front of the lower section of the front bumper.

☞ Press around its edge to engage its fixing clips one by one.

Removal

☞ Use a screwdriver as a lever to release each fixing clip in turn.

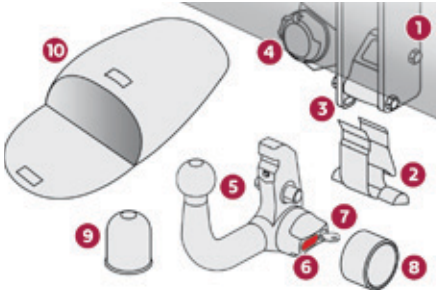
i Do not forget to remove the very cold climate screen when:
- the ambient temperature exceeds 10 °C,
- towing,
- driving at speeds above 75 mph (120 km/h).

* Depending on the country of sale.

Towbar with quickly detachable towball

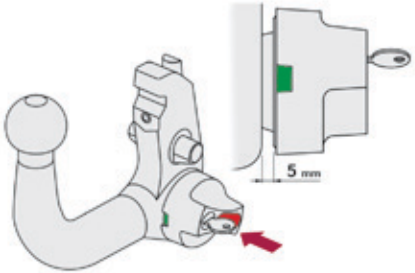
Presentation

This towbar allows the towball to be fitted and removed quickly and easily without the use of tools. Installed behind the rear bumper, the towbar is invisible after removing the towball and folding the trailer harness socket carrier.



1. Carrier
2. Protective blanking plug.
3. Security ring.
4. Folding trailer harness socket.
5. Detachable towball.
6. Locking / unlocking wheel.
7. Security key lock.
8. Locking wheel protector.
9. Ball protector.
10. Storage bag.

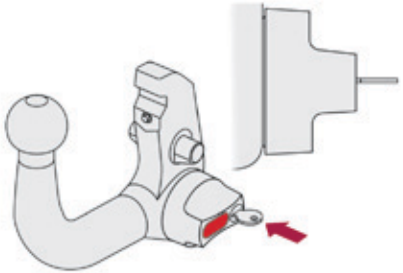
A. Locked position



The locking wheel is not in contact with the towball (gap of about 5 mm).
The green mark is visible.
The lock for the locking wheel is facing rearward.

! Observe the legislation in force in the country in which you are driving.

B. Unlocked position



The locking wheel is in contact with the towball.
Then green mark is hidden.
The lock for the locking wheel is facing forward.

i For more information on the **Technical data** and in particular the maximum trailer weight and the recommended nose weight, refer to the corresponding section.
For more information on the **Driving advice**, in particular when towing a trailer, refer to the corresponding section.

Before each use

Check that the towball is correctly fitted by verifying the following points:

- the towball is correctly locked in place (position **A**),
- the security key lock is on and the key removed; the locking wheel can no longer be operated,
- the towball must no longer move at all in its carrier; try to shake it by hand.

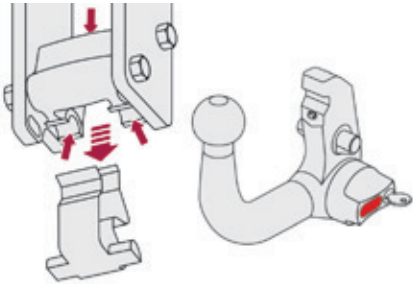
During use

Never unlock the device when a trailer or load carrier is fitted to the towball.
Never exceed the maximum authorised weight for the vehicle plus trailer (Gross Train Weight - GTW).
Before driving, check the adjustment of the headlamp beam height.
For more information on **Adjusting the headlamps**, refer to the corresponding section.

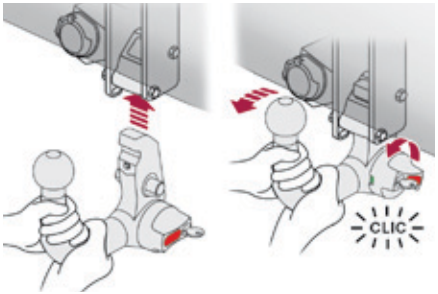
After use

For journeys made without a trailer or load carrier, the trailer harness socket must be folded away, the towball removed and the blanking plug inserted in the carrier. This measure applies particularly if the towball could hinder visibility of the number plate or lighting.

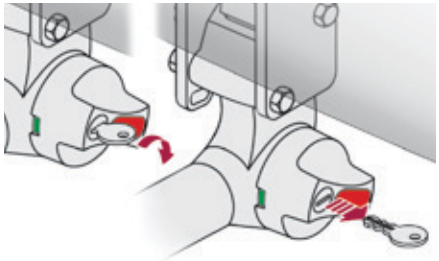
Fitting the towball



Remove the protective plug from the carrier and check the condition of the fixing system.
If necessary, clean the carrier with a brush or clean cloth.
Take the towball from the storage bag.
Remove the protective cover from the ball and the protective cap from the locking wheel.
Stow the plug, cover and cap in the storage bag.
Check that the towball is unlocked (position **B**).
If not, insert the key in the lock and turn the key anti-clockwise to unlock the mechanism.



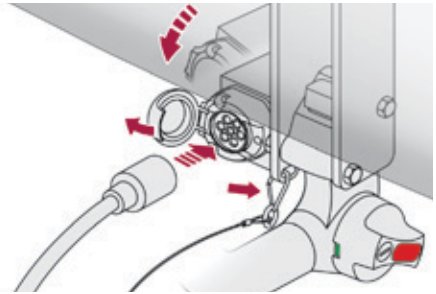
Take the towball in both hands; insert the end of the towball into the carrier by lifting it, then, to ensure that it has correctly locked in place, pull firmly down on the ball end of the towball.
The locking wheel automatically turns a quarter of a turn anti-clockwise, making a perceptible click; take care to keep your hands clear.



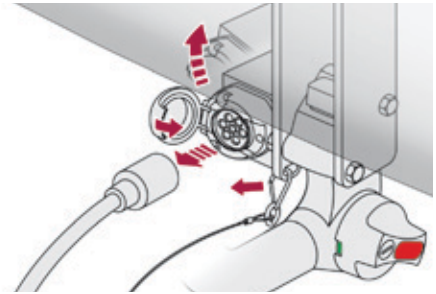
Check that the towball has correctly locked in place (position **A**).
Turn the key clockwise to lock the towball fixing mechanism.
Always remove the key and keep it in a safe place.

! If the key cannot be turned or removed, this means that the towball is not fitted correctly; start the procedure again.
If one of the locking conditions is not met, start the procedure again.
In all cases, if the marking remains red, do not use the towbar and contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

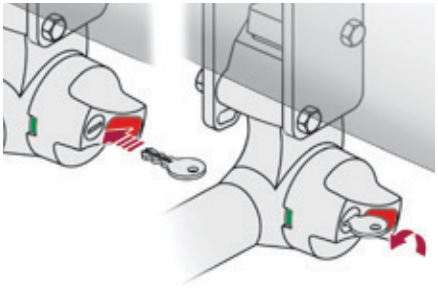
Removing the towball



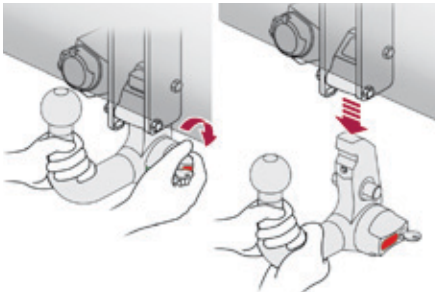
Attach the trailer to the towball.
Attach the cable on the trailer to the security ring located on the carrier.
Lower the trailer harness socket carrier by pulling down on the ring visible below the bumper.
Remove the protective cover from the socket and connect the trailer wiring harness.



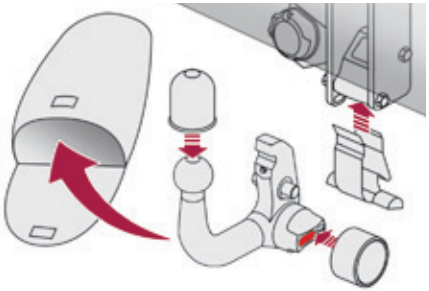
Disconnect the trailer harness from the socket on the carrier.
Detach the cable on the trailer from the security ring on the carrier.
Unhook the trailer from the towball.
Return the trailer harness connector carrier to the folded position.



Insert the key into the lock.
Turn the key anti-clockwise to unlock the towball fixing mechanism.



Grasp the towball firmly with one hand; with the other hand, press and turn the locking wheel clockwise as far as it will go.
Extract the towball downward.



Refit the protective cover for the ball and the protective cover for the locking wheel.
Stow the towball in its bag.
Refit the protective blanking plug to the carrier.

! Be ready for the weight of the towball (around 3.5 kg). Risk of injury!

Maintenance

Correct operation is only possible if the towball and its carrier remain clean.
Before cleaning the vehicle with a high pressure jet wash, the towbar harness socket carrier must be folded away, the towball removed and the blanking plug inserted in the carrier.

For any work on the towbar, got to a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Towing a trailer

Your vehicle is primarily designed for transporting people and luggage, but it may also be used for towing a trailer.

i We recommend the use of genuine CITROËN towbars and their harnesses that have been tested and approved from the design stage of your vehicle, and that the fitting of the towbar is entrusted to a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.
If the towbar is not fitted by a CITROËN dealer, it must still be fitted in accordance with the vehicle manufacturer's instructions.

! Driving with a trailer places greater demands on the towing vehicle and the driver must take particular care.
For more information on **Driving advice**, particularly when towing, refer to the corresponding section.

i For more information on **Weights** (and the towed loads which apply to your vehicle) refer to the corresponding section.

! You must observe the maximum trailer weight, indicated on the registration certificate or in the technical specification for your vehicle.

Load reduction mode

System which manages the use of certain functions according to the level of charge remaining in the battery.
When the vehicle is being driven, the load reduction function temporarily deactivates certain functions, such as the air conditioning, the heated rear screen...
The deactivated functions are reactivated automatically as soon as conditions permit.

Energy economy mode

System which manages the period of use of certain functions to conserve a sufficient level of charge in the battery.
After the engine has stopped, you can still use functions such as the audio equipment, windscreen wipers, dipped beam headlamps, courtesy lamps, etc. for a maximum combined period of thirty minutes.

i This period may be greatly reduced if the battery is not fully charged.

Switching to economy mode

Once this period has elapsed, a message appears in the screen indicating that the vehicle has switched to economy mode and the active functions are put on standby.

i If the telephone is being used at the same time with the touch screen tablet, it will be interrupted after 10 minutes.

Exiting economy mode

These functions are reactivated automatically the next time the vehicle is driven.

☞ In order to resume the use of these functions immediately, start the engine and let it run for a few minutes.

The time available to you will then be double the period for which the engine is left running. However, this period will always be between five and thirty minutes.

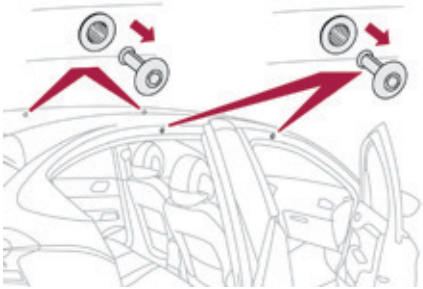
! A flat battery prevents the engine from starting.
For more information on the **12 V battery**, refer to the corresponding section.

Fitting roof bars

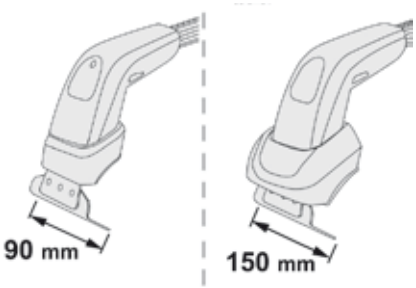
As a safety measure and to avoid damaging the roof, it is essential to use the transverse bars approved for your vehicle.

! Longitudinal roof bars are fitted as original equipment to certain versions. These play a purely aesthetic role and transverse roof bars must not be fitted to these longitudinal bars.

i Be sure to refer to national legislation in order to comply with the regulations for transporting objects which are longer than the vehicle.



When fitting roof bars, use only the four fixing points located in the roof frame. The points are masked by the vehicle doors when closed.
Remove the protective covers, levering them off with a screwdriver. Take care not to scratch the paint.
The roof bar fixings include a stud to be fitted to the hole at each fixing point.
Observe the fitting instructions and the conditions of use in the guide supplied with the bars.
Keep the protective covers safe so that they can be refitted after removing the roof bars.



i Maximum load distributed over the roof bars, for a load height not exceeding 40 cm (except bicycle carriers):
- for roof bars with pads at **90 mm**: **50 kg**
- for roof bars with pads at **150 mm**: **80 kg**.

For more information, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.
If the height exceeds 40 cm, adapt the speed of the vehicle to the profile of the road to avoid damaging the roof bars and the fixings on the vehicle.

Changing a wiper blade

Before removing a front wiper blade

☞ Within one minute after switching off the ignition, operate the wiper stalk to position the wiper blades vertically on the windscreen.

Removing

☞ Raise the corresponding wiper arm.
☞ Unclip the wiper blade and remove it.

Fitting

☞ Put the corresponding new wiper blade in place and clip it.
☞ Fold down the wiper arm carefully.

After fitting a front wiper blade

☞ Switch on the ignition.
☞ Operate the wiper stalk again to park the wiper blades.

Bonnet

Opening

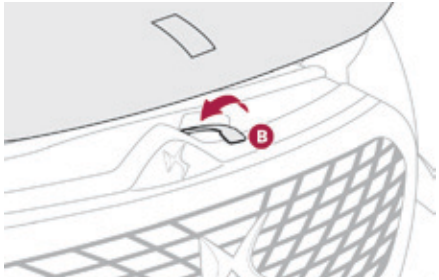
! Before doing anything under the bonnet, deactivate the Stop & Start system to avoid any risk of injury resulting from an automatic change to START mode.

The cooling fan may start after switching off the engine: take care with articles and clothing that might be caught by the fan blades.

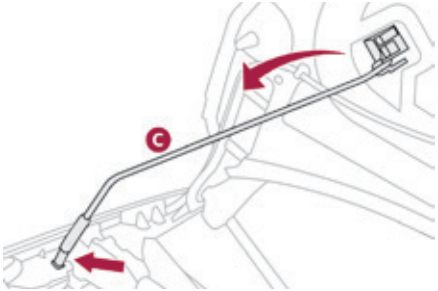
☞ Open the front left door.

☞ Pull the interior bonnet release lever **A**, located at the bottom of the door aperture.

i The location of the interior bonnet release lever prevents opening of the bonnet while the front left door is closed.



☞ Push the exterior safety catch **B** to the left and raise the bonnet.



☞ Unclip the stay **C** from its housing on the back of the bonnet.
☞ Fix the stay in the notch to hold the bonnet open.

Closing

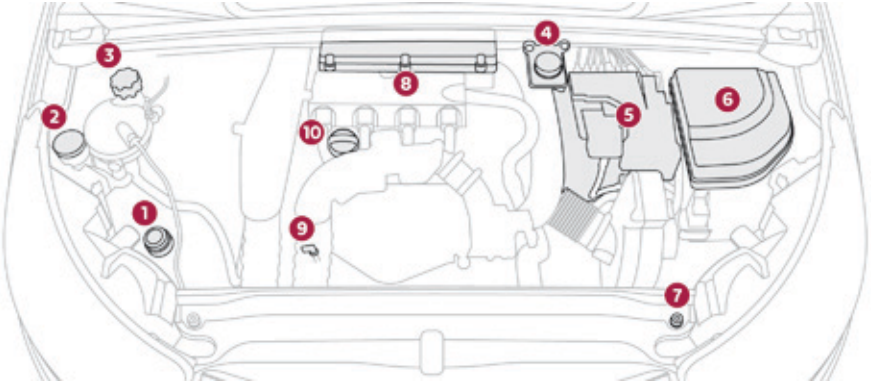
☞ Take the stay out of the support notch.
☞ Clip the stay in its housing on the back of the bonnet.
☞ Lower the bonnet and release it at the end of its travel.
☞ Pull on the bonnet to check that it is secured correctly.

! Do not open the bonnet in high winds. When the engine is hot, handle the exterior safety catch and the bonnet stay with care (risk of burns).

! Because of the presence of electrical equipment under the bonnet, it is recommended that exposure to water (rain, washing, ...) be limited.

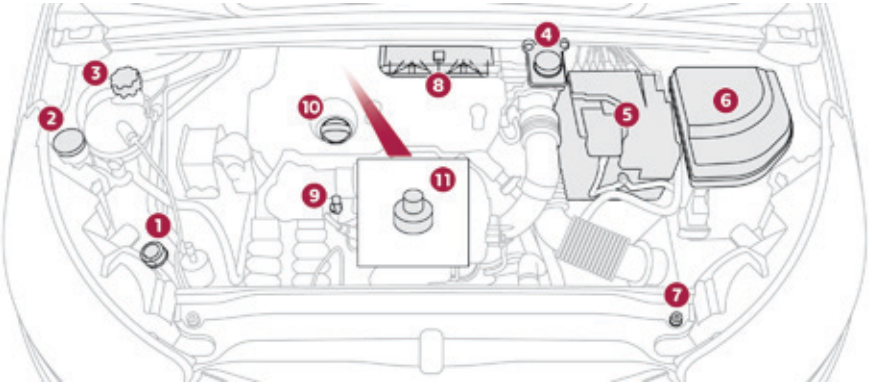
Petrol engines

1. Power steering fluid reservoir.
2. Screenwash and headlamp wash fluid reservoir.
3. Coolant header tank.
4. Brake fluid reservoir.
5. Battery / Fuses.
6. Fusebox.
7. Remote earth point (-).
8. Air filter.
9. Engine oil dipstick.
10. Engine oil filler cap.



Diesel engines

1. Power steering fluid reservoir.
2. Screenwash and headlamp wash fluid reservoir.
3. Coolant header tank.
4. Brake fluid reservoir.
5. Battery / Fuses.
6. Fusebox.
7. Remote earth point (-).
8. Air filter.
9. Engine oil dipstick.
10. Engine oil filler cap.
11. Priming pump*.



! The Diesel fuel system operates under high pressure:
- Never carry out any work on this system yourself.
- HDi engines make use of advanced technology.

All maintenance and repairs require specially trained staff, which only a CITROËN dealer can provide.

* According to engine.

Checking levels

Check all of these levels regularly, in line with the manufacturer's service schedule. Top them up if necessary, unless otherwise indicated.
If a level drops significantly, have the corresponding system checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

! Take care when working under the bonnet, as certain areas of the engine may be extremely hot (risk of burns) and the cooling fan could start at any time (even with the ignition off).

Engine oil level

The check is carried out either when the ignition is switched on using the oil level indicator in the instrument panel for vehicles so equipped, or using the dipstick.

i To ensure that the reading is correct, your vehicle must be parked on a level surface with the engine having been off for more than 30 minutes.

It is normal to top up the oil level between two services (or oil changes). CITROËN recommends that you check the level, and top up if necessary, every 3 000 miles (5 000 kms).

Checking using the dipstick

The location of the dipstick is shown in the corresponding underbonnet layout view.

☞ Take the dipstick by its coloured grip and remove it completely.

☞ Wipe the end of the dipstick using a clean non-fluffy cloth.

A = MAX

B = MIN

☞ Refit the dipstick and push fully down, then pull it out again to make the visual check: the correct level is between the marks **A** and **B**.

If you find that the level is above the **A** mark or below the **B** mark, **do not start the engine**.

- If the level is above the **MAX** mark (risk of damage to the engine), contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.
- If the level is below the **MIN** mark, you must top up the engine oil.

Oil grade

Before topping up the oil or changing the oil, check that the oil is the correct grade for your engine and conforms to the manufacturer's recommendations.

Topping up the engine oil level

The location of the oil filler cap is shown in the corresponding underbonnet layout view.

- ☞ Unscrew the oil filler cap to reveal the filler aperture.
- ☞ Add oil in small quantities, avoiding any spills on engine components (risk of fire).
- ☞ Wait a few minutes before checking the level again using the dipstick.
- ☞ Add more oil if necessary.
- ☞ After checking the level, carefully refit the oil filler cap and the dipstick in its tube.

After topping up the oil, the check when switching on the ignition with the oil level indicator in the instrument panel is not valid during the 30 minutes after topping up.

Engine oil change

Refer to the manufacturer's service schedule for details of the interval for this operation.
In order to maintain the reliability of the engine and emission control system, never use additives in the engine oil.

Brake fluid level

The brake fluid level should be close to the "MAX" mark. If it is not, check the brake pad wear.

Changing the fluid

Refer to the manufacturer's service schedule for details of the interval for this operation.

Fluid specification

The brake fluid must conform to the manufacturer's recommendations.

Power steering fluid level

The power steering fluid level should be close to the "MAX" mark. With the engine cold, unscrew the cap to check the level.

Coolant level

Check the coolant level regularly.
It is normal to top up this fluid between services.

To ensure that the measurement is reliable, the vehicle must be parked on level ground and the engine must be cold.

The coolant level should be close to the "MAX" mark but should never exceed it.
If the level is close to or below the "MIN" mark, it is essential to top up.
A low coolant level presents a risk of serious damage to your engine.

! The cooling fan may start after switching off the engine: take care with articles and clothing that might be caught by the fan blades.

When the engine is hot, the temperature of the coolant is regulated by the fan.

When the engine is hot, as the cooling system is pressurised, wait at least one hour after switching off the engine before carrying out any work.
To avoid the risk of scalding in the event of an urgent need to top up, with a cloth around the cap, unscrew it by two turns to allow the pressure to drop.
Once the pressure has dropped, remove the cap and top up the level.

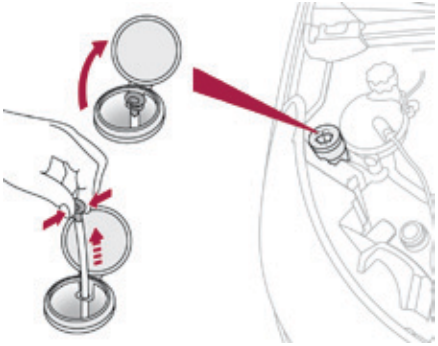
Fluid specification

The coolant must conform to the manufacturer's recommendations.

Screenwash / headlamp wash fluid level

To check the level or top up the fluid on vehicle fitted with headlamp washers, immobilise the vehicle and switch of the engine.

- Open the bonnet and secure it with the stay.



- Open the screenwash reservoir filler cap.
- Take and pinch the level gauge to block its breather.
- Remove the gauge completely from the reservoir to read the level in the transparent section.
- Top up if necessary.
- Refit the filler cap to the reservoir and close the bonnet.

Specification of the fluid

To ensure optimum cleaning and to avoid freezing, the fluid should never be topped up or replaced by plain water.
In wintry conditions, the use of a fluid with an ethyl alcohol or methanol base is recommended.

Additive level (Diesel with particle filter)

According to your version of instrument panel, the additive reservoir low level is indicated by:

- fixed illumination of the particle filter warning lamp, accompanied by an audible signal and a message that the particle filter additive level is too low,

or

SERVICE - fixed illumination of the service warning lamp, accompanied by an audible signal and a message that the particle filter additive level is too low.

Topping up

The reservoir must be topped up without delay by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Used products

! Avoid prolonged contact of used oil or fluids with the skin.
Most of these fluids are harmful to health or indeed very corrosive.

e Do not discard used oil or fluids into sewers or onto the ground.
Take used oil to a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop (France) or to an authorised waste disposal site.

Checking components

Unless otherwise indicated, check these components in accordance with the manufacturer's service schedule and according to your engine. Otherwise, have them checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

12 V battery

The battery does not require any maintenance. However, check regularly that the terminals are correctly tightened (versions without quick release terminals) and that the connections are clean.

For more information and the precautions to take before starting work on the **12 V battery**, refer to the corresponding section.

! Versions equipped with Stop & Start are fitted with a 12 V lead-acid battery of specific technology and specification.
Its replacement should be carried out only by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Air filter and passenger compartment filter

Refer to the manufacturer's service schedule for details of the replacement intervals for these components.

Depending on the environment (e.g. dusty atmosphere) and the use of the vehicle (e.g. city driving), **replace them twice as often if necessary**.
A clogged passenger compartment filter may have an adverse effect on the performance of the air conditioning system and generate undesirable odours.

Oil filter

Replace the oil filter each time the engine oil is changed.
Refer to the manufacturer's service schedule for details of the replacement interval for this component.

Particle filter (Diesel)

According to your version of instrument panel, the start of saturation of the particle emissions filter is indicated by:

- fixed illumination of the particle filter warning lamp, accompanied by an audible signal and a message that there is a risk of blockage of the particle filter,

or

SERVICE

- temporary illumination of the service warning lamp, accompanied by an audible signal and a message that there is a risk of blockage of the particle filter.

As soon as the traffic conditions permit, regenerate the filter by driving at a speed of at least 40 mph (60 km/h) until the warning lamp goes off.
If the warning lamp stays on, there is a lack of additive.

For more information on **Checking the levels** and in particular on the diesel additive level, refer to the corresponding section.
On a new vehicle, the first operations of regeneration of the particle filter may be accompanied by the smell of "burning", which is perfectly normal.
Following prolonged operation of the vehicle at very low speed or at idle, you may, in exceptional circumstances, notice the emission of water vapour at the exhaust on acceleration. This does not affect the behaviour of the vehicle or the environment.

Manual gearbox

The gearbox does not require any maintenance (no oil change).
Refer to the manufacturer's service schedule for the checking interval for this component.

Automatic gearbox

The gearbox does not require any maintenance (no oil change).
Refer to the manufacturer's service schedule for the checking interval for this component.

Brake pads

Brake wear depends on the style of driving, particularly in the case of vehicles used in town, over short distances. It may be necessary to have the condition of the brakes checked, even between vehicle services.

Unless there is a leak in the circuit, a drop in the brake fluid level indicates that the brake pads are worn.

Brake disc wear

For information on checking brake disc wear, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Parking brake

If excessive travel or a loss of effectiveness of this system is noticed, the parking brake must be checked, even between two services.

Checking this system must be done by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

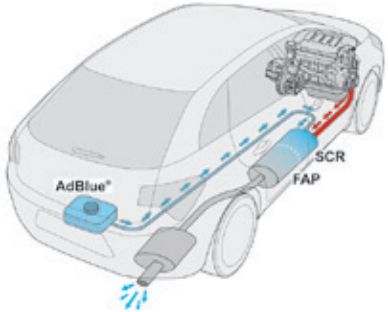
Electric parking brake

This system does not require any routine servicing. However, in the event of a problem, have the system checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

For more information on the **Electric parking brake**, refer to the corresponding section.

! Only use products recommended by CITROËN or products of equivalent quality and specification.
In order to optimise the operation of units as important as those in the braking system, CITROËN selects and offers very specific products.
After washing the vehicle, dampness, or in wintry conditions, ice can form on the brake discs and pads: braking efficiency may be reduced. Make light brake applications to dry and defrost the brakes.

AdBlue® and SCR system for BlueHDi Diesel engines



To assure respect for the environment and conformity with the new Euro 6 emissions standard, without adversely affecting the performance or fuel consumption of Diesel engines, CITROËN has taken the decision to equip its vehicles with an effective system that associates SCR (Selective Catalytic Reduction) with a particle filter (FAP) for the treatment of exhaust gases.

SCR system

Using a fluid called AdBlue® containing urea, a catalytic converter turns up to 85% of nitrogen oxides (NOx) into nitrogen and water, which are harmless to health and the environment.

The AdBlue® is held in a special tank with a capacity of about 17 litres: this provides a driving range of about 12 500 miles (20 000 km). An alert is triggered automatically to warn you when the reserve level is reached: you can then drive about 1 500 miles (2 400 km) before the tank is empty.

During each scheduled service of your vehicle by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop, the AdBlue® tank is refilled in order to allow normal operation of the SCR system.

If the estimated mileage of your vehicle between two services is greater than 12 500 miles (20 000 km), it will be necessary to top-up the AdBlue®.

! Once the AdBlue® tank is empty, a system required by regulations prevents starting of the engine.
If the SCR system is faulty, the level of emissions from your vehicle will no longer meet the Euro 6 standard: your vehicle becomes polluting.
In the event of a confirmed fault with the SCR system, you must go to a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop as soon as possible: after a running distance of 650 miles (1 100 km), a system will be triggered automatically to prevent engine starting.
In either case, a range indicator gives you the distance you can travel before the vehicle is immobilised.

Topping-up the AdBlue®

Filling the AdBlue® tank is an operation included in every routine service on your vehicle by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.
Nevertheless, given the capacity of the tank, it may be necessary to top-up the fluid between services, more particularly if an alert (warning lamps and a message) signals the requirement. You can go to a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.
If you envisage topping-up yourself, please read the following warnings carefully.

i **Freezing of the AdBlue®**
AdBlue® freezes at temperatures below around -11°C.
The SCR system includes a heater for the AdBlue® tank, allowing you to continue driving in all weather conditions.

Precautions in use

AdBlue® is a urea-based solution. This liquid is non-flammable, colourless and odourless (kept in a cool area).
In the event of contact with the skin, wash the affected area with soap and running water. In the event of contact with the eyes, wash (irrigate) the eyes with large amounts of water or with an eye wash solution for at least 15 minutes. If a burning sensation or irritation persists, get medical attention.
If swallowed, immediately wash out the mouth with clean water and then drink plenty of water.
In certain conditions (high exterior temperature, for example), the risk of release of ammonia cannot be excluded: do not inhale the fluid.
Ammonia vapour has an irritant effect on mucous membranes (eyes, nose and throat).

! Keep AdBlue® out of the reach of children, in its original container or bottle.
Never transfer AdBlue® to another container: it would lose its purity.

Use only AdBlue® fluid that meets the ISO 22241 standard.

! Never dilute AdBlue® with water.
Never pour AdBlue® into the Diesel fuel tank.

The supply in a non-drip container or bottle simplifies topping up. You can obtain 1.89 litre (half a US gallon) bottles or 5 or 10 litre containers from a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

! Never top up from an AdBlue® dispenser reserved for heavy goods vehicles.

Recommendations on storage

AdBlue® freezes at about -11°C and deteriorates above 25°C. It is recommended that bottles be stored **in a cool area** and **protected from direct sunlight**.
Under these conditions, the fluid can be kept **for at least a year**.
If the additive has frozen, it can be used once it has completely thawed out.

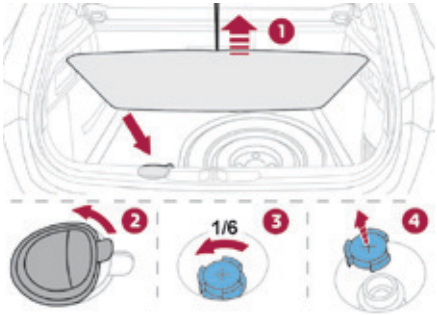
! Never store bottles of AdBlue® in your vehicle.

e Do not dispose of AdBlue® bottles or containers in the household waste. Place them in a container provided for this purpose or take them to your dealer.

Procedure

Before starting the top-up procedure, ensure that the vehicle is parked on a flat and level surface.

☞ Switch off the ignition and remove the key, or if your vehicle has one, press the START/STOP button to switch off the engine.



☞ Raise the boot floor for access to the AdBlue® tank.
Secure the boot floor by attaching its cord to the hook on the parcel shelf support.

☞ Unclip the black plastic blanking plug using its tab.

☞ Insert your fingers into the aperture and turn the blue cap a 6th of a turn anti-clockwise.

☞ Carefully lift off the cap, without dropping it.

☞ Obtain a bottle of AdBlue®. After first checking the use-by date, read carefully the instructions on use on the label before pouring the contents of the bottle into your vehicle's AdBlue® tank.

! Important: if your vehicle's AdBlue® tank is completely empty - which is confirmed by the alert displays and the impossibility of starting the engine - you must add at least 3.8 litres (so two 1.89 litre bottles).

☞ After emptying the bottle, wipe away any spillage around the tank filler using a damp cloth.

! If any additive is split or splashed, wash immediately with cold water or wipe with a damp cloth.
If the additive has crystallised, clean it off using a sponge and hot water.

☞ Refit the blue cap to the tank and turn it a 6th of a turn clockwise, to its stop.
☞ Refit the black plastic blanking plug, clipping it in on the flap
☞ Detach the cord from the parcel shelf support and lower the boot floor.

! Important: **in the event of a top-up after a breakdown because of a lack of additive**, you must wait around 5 minutes before switching on the ignition, **without opening the driver's door, locking the vehicle, introducing the key into the ignition switch, or introducing the key of the "Keyless Entry and Starting" system into the passenger compartment**. Switch on the ignition, then, after 10 seconds, start the engine.

e Never dispose of AdBlue® additive bottles in the household waste. Place them in a special container provided this purpose or take them to your dealer.

IN THE EVENT OF A FAULT

08

Temporary puncture repair kit

This kit consists of a compressor and a sealant cartridge.
It allows the **temporary repair** of a tyre.
You are then able to go to the nearest garage.

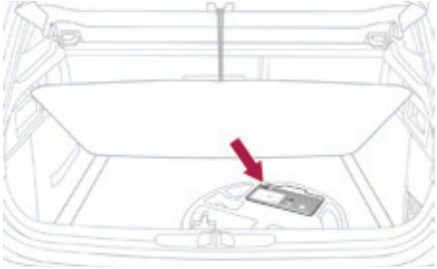
i It is designed to repair most punctures which could affect the tyre, located on the tyre tread or shoulder.
Its compressor can be used to check and adjust the pressure of the tyre.

i Tyre under-inflation detection
If the vehicle is fitted with tyre under-inflation detection, the under-inflation warning lamp will remain on after the wheel has been repaired until the system is reinitialised by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

i The vehicle's electric system allows the connection of a compressor for long enough to inflate a tyre after a puncture repair or for inflating a small inflatable accessory.

i **Only** the 12 V socket **at the front** of the vehicle allows the connection of the compressor for long enough to repair or inflate a tyre.
The other 12 V sockets in the vehicle are not suited to the use of the compressor.

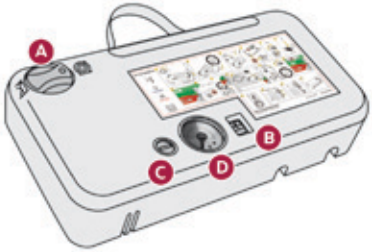
Access to the kit

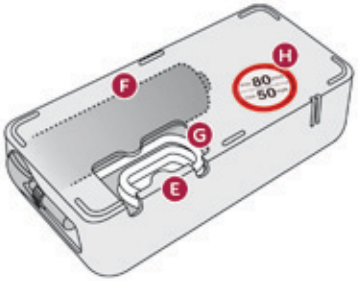


This kit is installed in the storage box, under the boot floor.

Type 1

Description of the kit





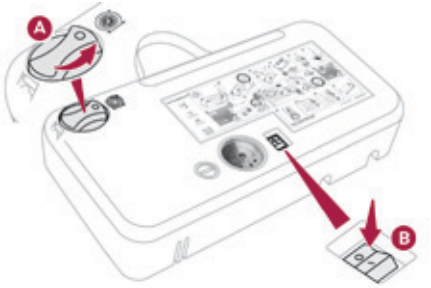
A. "Sealant" or "Air" position selector.
B. On **"I"** / off **"O"** switch.
C. Deflation button.
D. Pressure gauge (in bars and psi).

E. Compartment housing a cable with an adaptor for a 12 V socket.
F. Sealant cartridge.
G. White pipe with cap for repair and inflation.
H. Speed limit sticker.

i The speed limit sticker **H** must be affixed to the vehicle's steering wheel to remind you that a wheel is in temporary use.
Do not exceed a speed of 50 mph (80 km/h) when driving with a tyre repaired using this type of kit.

Repair procedure

1. Sealing

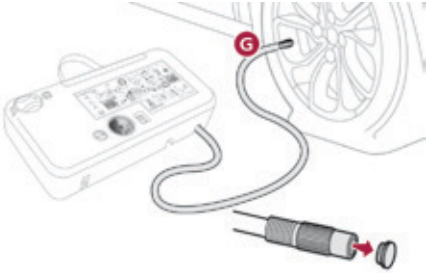


☞ Switch off the ignition.

☞ Turn the selector **A** to the "sealant" position.

☞ Check that the switch **B** is in position **"O"**.

ℹ Avoid removing any foreign bodies which have penetrated into the tyre.



☞ Uncoil the white pipe **G** fully.

☞ Unscrew the cap from the white pipe.

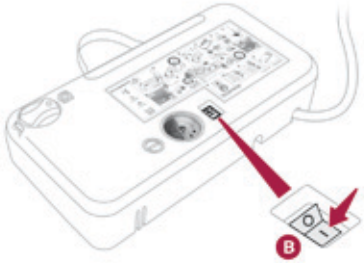
☞ Connect the white pipe to the valve of the tyre to be repaired.

! Take care, this product is harmful if swallowed and causes irritation to the eyes. Keep this product out of the reach of children.

☞ Connect the compressor's electric plug to the vehicle's 12 V socket.

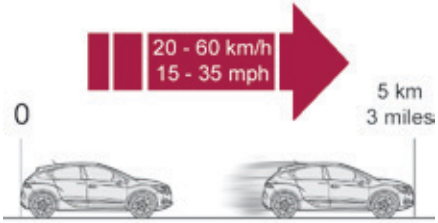
☞ Start the vehicle and leave the engine running.

! Do not start the compressor before connecting the white pipe to the tyre valve: the sealant product would be expelled through the pipe.



☞ Switch on the compressor by moving the switch **B** to position **"I"** until the tyre pressure reaches 2.0 bars.
The sealant is injected into the tyre under pressure; do not disconnect the pipe from the valve during this operation (risk of splashing).

i If after around 5 to 7 minutes the pressure is not attained, this indicates that the tyre is not repairable; contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop for assistance.

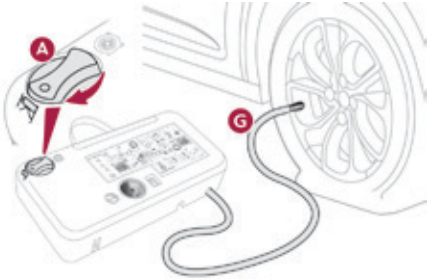


☞ Remove the kit and screw the cap back on the white pipe.
Take care to avoid staining your vehicle with traces of fluid. Keep the kit to hand.

☞ Drive immediately for approximately three miles (five kilometres), at reduced speed (between 12 and 37 mph (20 and 60 km/h)), to plug the puncture.

☞ Stop to check the repair and the tyre pressure using the kit.

2. Inflation



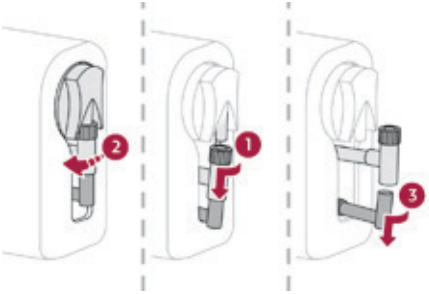
- Turn the selector **A** to the "Air" position.
- Uncoil the white pipe **G** fully.
- Connect the white pipe to the tyre valve.

- Connect the compressor's electric plug to the vehicle's 12 V socket.
- Start the vehicle again and leave the engine running.

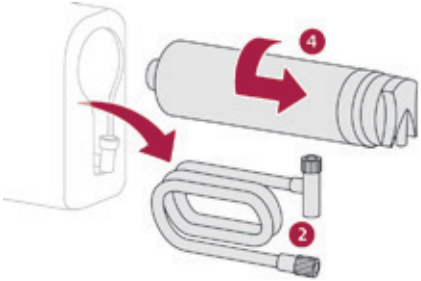
! As soon as possible, go to a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.
You must inform the technician that you have used this kit. After inspection, the technician will advise you on whether the tyre can be repaired or if it must be replaced.

- Adjust the pressure using the compressor (to inflate: switch **B** in position **"I"**; to deflate: switch **B** in position **"O"** and press button **C**), in accordance with the vehicle's tyre pressure label (located on the left-hand door aperture).
A loss of pressure indicates that the puncture has not been fully plugged; contact a CITROËN dealer or qualified workshop for assistance.
- Remove and stow the kit.
- Drive at reduced speed (50 mph [80 km/h] max) limiting the distance travelled to approximately 120 miles (200 km).

Removing the pipe and cartridge



- Turn the pipe assembly **2** to the left until it contacts the unit.
- Disconnect the union **1** from the cartridge by turning it a quarter turn anti-clockwise.
- Extract the pipe assembly **2**, then disconnect the union **3** from the air delivery pipe by turning it a quarter turn anti-clockwise.

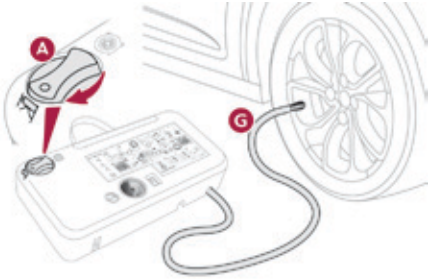


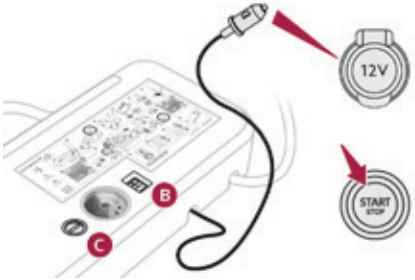
- Remove the pipe assembly **2**.
- Support the compressor vertically.
- Unscrew the cartridge **4** from the bottom.

To fit the new cartridge and new pipe, carry out these operations in reverse order.

! Beware of discharges of fluid.
The expiry date of the fluid is indicated on the cartridge.
The sealant cartridge is designed for single use; even if only partly used, it must be replaced.
After use, do not discard the cartridge into the environment, take it to an authorised waste disposal site or a CITROËN dealer.
Do not forget to obtain a new sealant cartridge, available from CITROËN dealers or from a qualified workshop.

Checking / adjusting tyre pressures





You can also use the compressor without injecting any product, to check and if necessary adjust your tyre pressures.

- ☞ Turn the selector **A** to the "Air" position.
- ☞ Uncoil the white pipe **G** fully.
- ☞ Connect the pipe to the tyre valve.
- ☞ Connect the compressor's electrical connector to the vehicle's 12 V socket.
- ☞ Start the vehicle and let the engine run.
- ☞ Adjust the pressure using the compressor (to inflate: switch **B** in position **"I"**; to deflate: switch **B** in position **"O"** and press button **C**), according to the vehicle's tyre pressure label.
- ☞ Remove the kit then stow it.

Type 2

Composition of the kit

1. 12 V compressor, with integral pressure gauge.
2. Sealant cartridge, with integral hose.
3. Speed limit sticker.

i The speed limit sticker must be secured to the interior of the vehicle in the driver's field of vision, to remind you that a wheel is in temporary use.

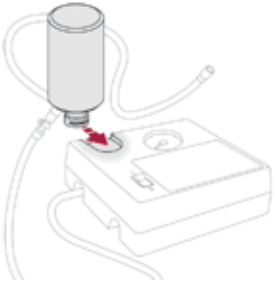
! Do not exceed a speed of 50 mph (80 km/h) when driving with a tyre repaired using this type of kit.

Repair procedure

- Switch off the ignition.
- Secure the speed limit sticker inside the vehicle.
- Uncoil the pipe stowed under the compressor.

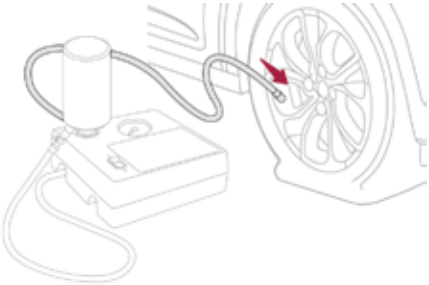
- Connect the pipe from the compressor to the sealant cartridge.

i Avoid removing any foreign bodies which have penetrated into the tyre.



☞ Turn the sealant cartridge and secure it in the cut-out provided on the compressor.

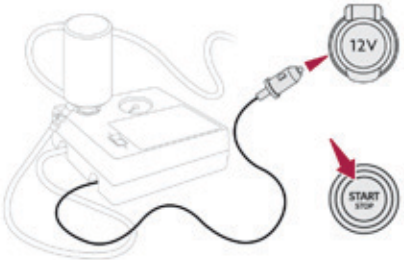
☞ Remove the valve cap from the tyre to be repaired, and place it in a clean area.



☞ Connect the hose from the sealant cartridge to the valve of the tyre to be repaired and tighten firmly.

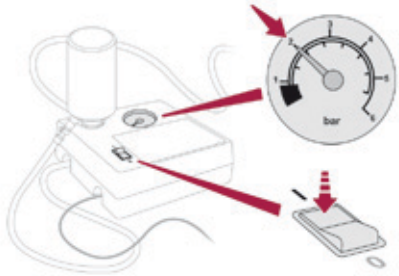
☞ Check that the compressor switch is at the "**O**" position.

☞ Uncoil fully the electric cable, stowed under the compressor.



☞ Connect the compressor's plug to the vehicle's 12 V socket.

☞ Switch on the ignition.

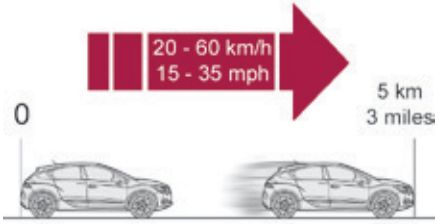


☞ Start the compressor by placing the switch at the "**I**" position and leave it running until the tyre pressure reaches 2.0 bar.
The sealant product is injected into the tyre under pressure; do not disconnect the pipe from the valve during this operation (risk of splashing and stains).

i If after around 5 to 7 minutes the pressure is not attained, this indicates that the tyre is not repairable; contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop for assistance.

! Take care, the sealant product is harmful if swallowed and causes irritation to the eyes.
Keep this product out of the reach of children.
The use-by date is marked on the cartridge.
After use, do not discard the cartridge by the roadside, take it to a CITROËN dealer or an authorised waste disposal site.
Don't forget to obtain a new sealant cartridge, available from a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

☞ Place the switch in the "**O**" position.
☞ Remove the kit.

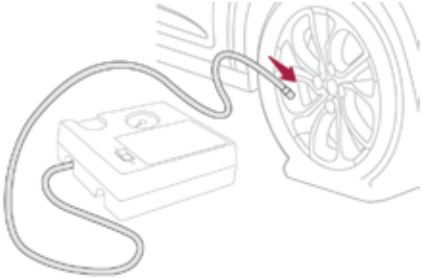


☞ Drive immediately for approximately three miles (five kilometres), at reduced speed (between 15 and 35 mph (20 and 60 km/h)), to plug the puncture.
☞ Stop to check the repair and the tyre pressure using the kit.

Checking / adjusting tyre pressures

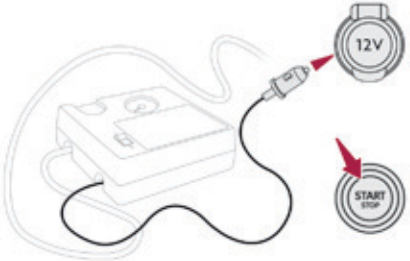
You can also use the compressor, without injecting sealant, to check and if necessary adjust the tyre pressures

- Remove the valve cap from the tyre and place it in a clean area.
- Uncoil the pipe stowed under the compressor.

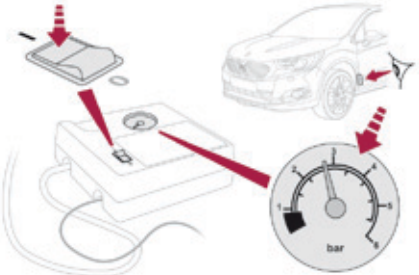


- Screw the pipe onto the valve and tighten firmly.

- Check that the compressor switch is at the "**O**" position.
- Uncoil fully the electric cable, stowed under the compressor.



- Connect the compressor's plug to the vehicle's 12 V socket.
- Switch on the ignition.

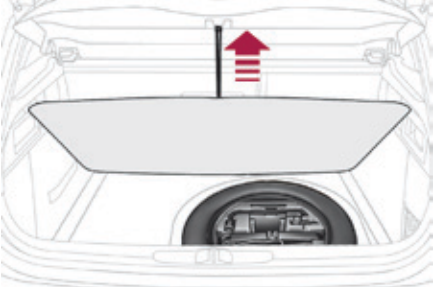


- Start the compressor by placing the switch at the "**I**" position and adjust the pressure to the value shown on the vehicle's tyre pressure label.
  To deflate: press the black button on the compressor pipe, at the valve connector.
- Once the correct pressure is reached, put the switch to the "**O**" position.
- Remove the kit then stow it.

Spare wheel

Procedure for changing a wheel with a damaged or punctured tyre for the spare wheel, using the tools supplied with the vehicle.

Access to the tools

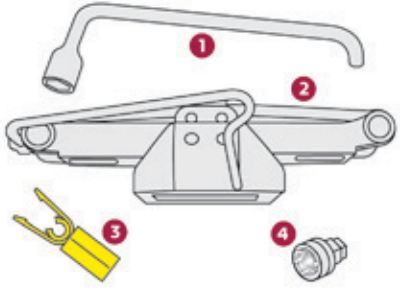


The tools are installed in the boot under the floor.

To gain access to them:

- ☞ open the boot,
- ☞ raise the floor,
- ☞ secure it by hooking its cord on the hook on the rear shelf support,
- ☞ with a standard size spare wheel, unclip and remove the box in the middle of the wheel containing the tools,
  or
- ☞ with a "space-saver" spare wheel; lift the wheel at the rear towards you for access to the storage box containing the tools.

List of tools



1. Wheelbrace.
   For removing the wheel trim and the wheel fixing bolts.
2. Jack with integral handle.
   For raising the vehicle.
3. Bolt cover removal tool.
   For removing the bolt head protectors on alloy wheels.
4. Socket for the security bolts (located in the glove box).
   For adapting the wheelbrace to the special "security" bolts.

! All of these tools are specific to your vehicle and can vary according to equipment.
Do not use them for any other purposes.

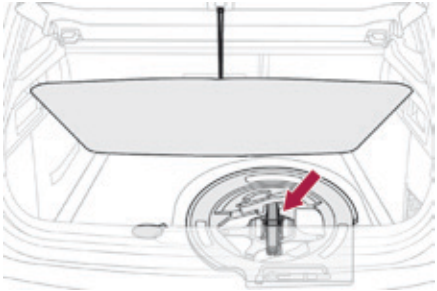
i The jack must only be used to change a wheel with a damaged or punctured tyre.
Do not use any jack other than the one supplied with this vehicle.
If the vehicle does not have its original jack, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop to obtain the correct jack for it.
The jack meets European standards, as defined in the Machinery Directive 2006/42/CE.
The jack does not require any maintenance.

Wheel with trim

When removing the wheel, detach the trim first using the wheelbrace **1** pulling at the valve passage hole.
When refitting the wheel, refit the trim starting by placing its notch facing the valve and press around its edge with the palm of your hand.

For BlueHDi Diesel versions

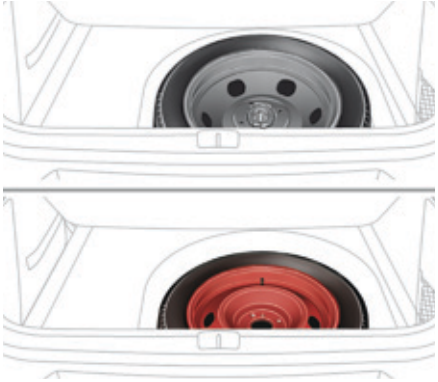
If your vehicle has an **electric parking brake**, the jack is stowed in a bag placed in the boot.



If your vehicle has a **manual parking brake**, the jack is stowed under the spare wheel and under the storage box:

- ☞ remove the "space-saver" type spare wheel,
- ☞ remove the polystyrene storage box,
- ☞ push the jack forward, then lift it by its rear part.

Access to the spare wheel



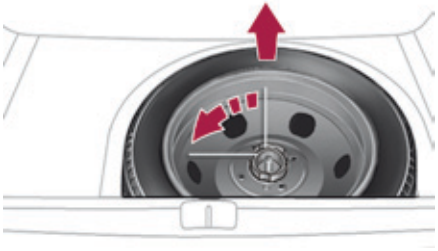
The spare wheel is installed in the boot under the floor.
Depending on version, the spare wheel may be a standard size steel or alloy wheel; for some countries of sale it is the "space saver" type.

Tyre under-inflation detection

The spare wheel is not fitted with a sensor. The punctured wheel must be repaired by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

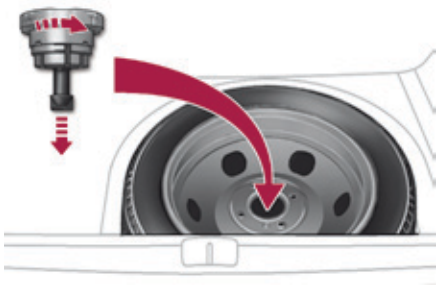
If your vehicle has an electric parking brake, only a "space saver" type of wheel can be stowed in the boot.

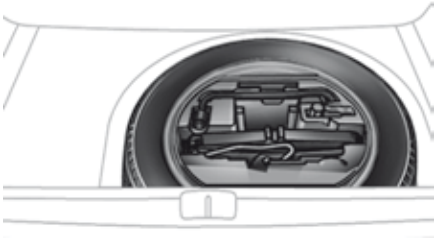
Taking out the standard wheel



- Unscrew the central nut.
- Remove the fixing assembly (nut and bolt).
- Raise the spare wheel towards you from the rear.
- Take the wheel out of the boot.

Putting the standard wheel back in place





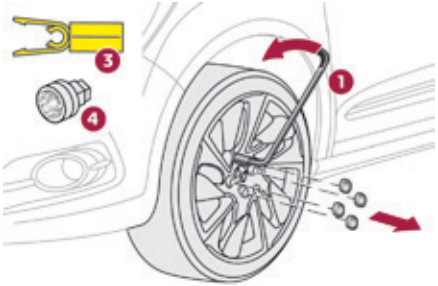
- Put the wheel back in its housing.
- Unscrew the nut on the bolt by a few turns.
- Put the fixing assembly (nut and bolt) in place in the centre of the wheel.
- Tighten fully until the central nut clicks to retain the wheel correctly.
- Put the box back in place in the centre of the wheel and clip it.

Removing a wheel

Parking the vehicle

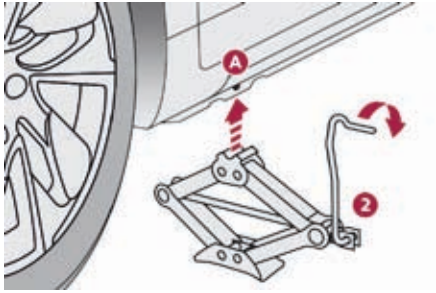
Immobilise the vehicle where it does not block traffic: the ground must be level, stable and non-slippery ground.
Apply the parking brake unless it has been programmed to automatic mode, switch off the ignition and engage first gear* to lock the wheels.
Check that the braking warning lamps in the instrument panel are on (not flashing).
The occupants must get out of the vehicle and wait where they are safe.
If necessary, place a chock under the wheel diagonally opposite the wheel to be changed.
Never go underneath a vehicle raised using a jack; use an axle stand.

List of operations

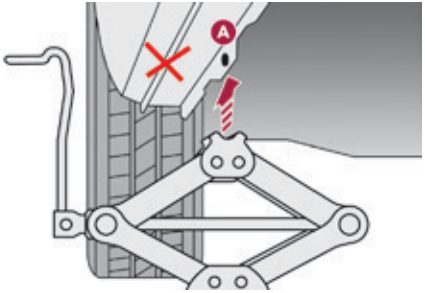


- Remove the bolt cover from each of the bolts using the tool **3** (according to equipment).
- Fit the security socket **4** on the wheelbrace **1** to slacken the security bolt.
- Slacken the other bolts using the wheelbrace **1** only.

* Position **P** for an automatic gearbox.

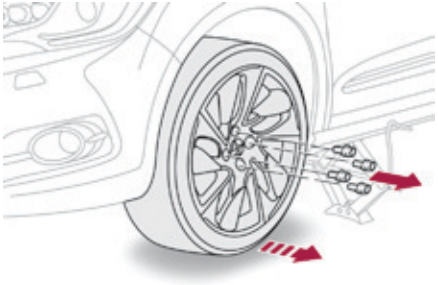


☞ Place the foot of the jack **2** on the ground and ensure that it is directly below the front **A** or rear **B** jacking point provided on the underbody, whichever is closest to the wheel to be changed.



☞ Extend the jack **2** until its head comes into contact with the jacking point **A** or **B** used; the contact area **A** or **B** on the vehicle must be engaged with the central part of the head of the jack.

☞ Raise the vehicle until there is sufficient space between the wheel and the ground to admit the spare (not punctured) wheel easily.



☞ Remove the bolts and store them in a clean place.

☞ Remove the wheel.

! Ensure that the jack is stable. If the ground is slippery or loose, the jack may slip or drop - Risk of injury!
Take care to position the jack only at one of the jacking points **A** or **B** under the vehicle, ensuring that the head of the jack is centred under the contact area of the vehicle. Otherwise, there is a risk of damage to the vehicle and/or the jack dropping - Risk of injury!

Fitting a wheel

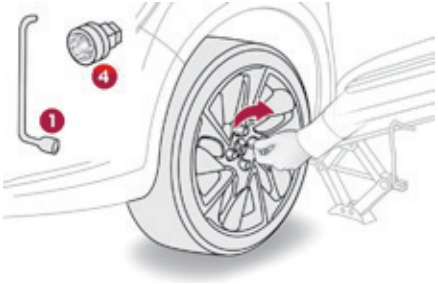
Fitting a steel or "space-saver" spare wheel

If your vehicle is fitted with alloy wheels, when tightening the bolts on fitting it is normal to notice that the washers do not come into contact with the steel or "space-saver" spare wheel. The wheel is secured by the conical contact of each bolt.

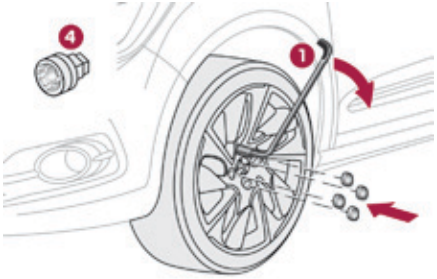
After changing a wheel

To store the punctured wheel in the boot correctly, first remove the central cover.
When using the "space-saver" type spare wheel, do not exceed 50 mph (80 km/h).
Have the tightening of the bolts and the pressure of the spare wheel checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop without delay.
Have the punctured wheel repaired and replace it on the vehicle as soon as possible.

List of operations



- Put the wheel in place on the hub.
- Screw in the bolts by hand to the stop.
- Pre-tighten the security bolt using the wheelbrace **1** fitted with the security socket **4**.
- Pre-tighten the other bolts using the wheelbrace **1** only.



- Lower the vehicle fully.
- Fold the jack **2** and detach it.

- Tighten the security bolt using the wheelbrace **1** fitted with the security socket **4**.
- Tighten the other bolts using the wheelbrace **1** only.
- Refit the bolt covers to the bolts (according to equipment).
- Store the tools in the box.

Changing a bulb

The headlamps have polycarbonate lenses with a protective coating:

- **do not clean them using a dry or abrasive cloth, nor with a detergent or solvent product,**
- use a sponge and soapy water or a pH neutral product,
- when using a high pressure washer on persistent marks, do not keep the lance directed towards the lamps or their edges for too long, so as not to damage their protective coating and seals.

Changing a bulb should only be done after the headlamp has been switched off for several minutes (risk of serious burns).

- Do not touch the bulb directly with your fingers, use a lint-free cloth.

It is imperative to use only anti-ultraviolet (UV) type bulbs to avoid damaging the headlamp.
Always replace a failed bulb with a new bulb with the same type and specification.

Light-emitting diodes (LED)

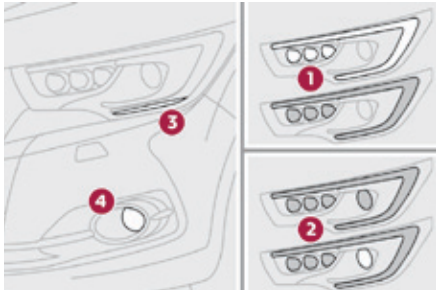
For the replacement of this type of lamp, go to a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.
LED (light-emitting diode) replacement kits are available from CITROËN dealers.

Risk of electrocution

Xenon bulbs (D1S) must be replaced by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

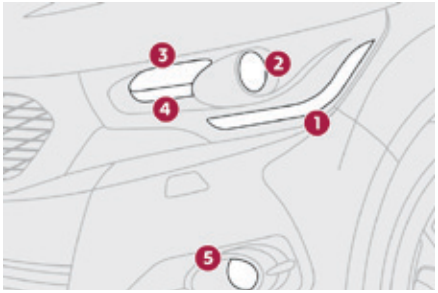
Front lamps

Model with directional xenon and full-LED headlamps



1. **Daytime running lamps / sidelamps (LEDs).**
2. **Directional main beam / dipped beam headlamps (D1S).**
3. **Direction indicators (LEDs).**
4. **Directional foglamps (LEDs).**

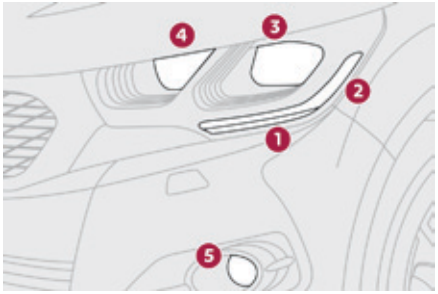
Model with halogen headlamps (type 1)



1. **Direction indicators (H21 clear).**
2. **Dipped beam headlamps (H7).**
3. **Main beam headlamps (H1).**
4. **Daytime running lamps / sidelamps (P21/5W XL).**
5. **Directional front foglamps (H11).**

i Bulbs with lugs, type H1, H7... take care to position them correctly to ensure the best lighting.

Model with halogen headlamp and LED light signature (type 2)*



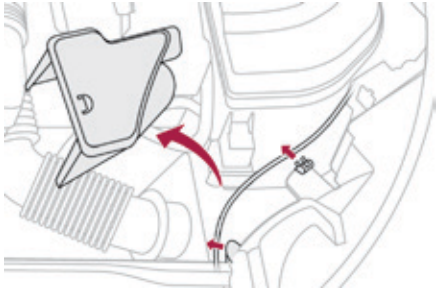
1. **Direction indicators (LEDs).**
2. **Daytime running lamps / sidelamps (LEDs).**
3. **Dipped beam headlamps (H7).**
4. **Main beam headlamps (H7).**
5. **Directional front foglamps (H11).**

i Bulbs with lugs, type H1, H7... take care to position them correctly to ensure the best lighting.

* LED: light emitting diodes.

Access to bulbs

Depending on the engine and only on the left hand side, you must first carry out the following operations for access to the protective covers on the bulbs.



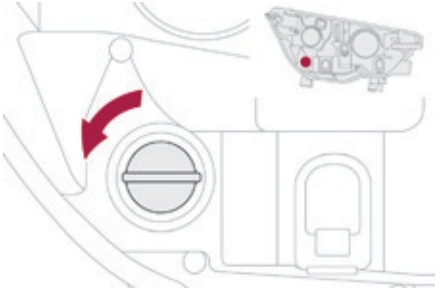
- Remove the air deflector by unclipping each of its three attachment points.
- Unclip the bonnet release cable at its two fixings.
- Move the cable down.

After changing the failed bulb, remember to put everything back in place (cable and air deflector).

Changing direction indicator bulbs

i Rapid flashing of the direction indicator warning lamp (right or left) indicates the failure of a bulb on that side.

Model with halogen headlamps (type 1)



- Turn the bulb holder a quarter of a turn and extract it.
- Pull out the bulb and change it.

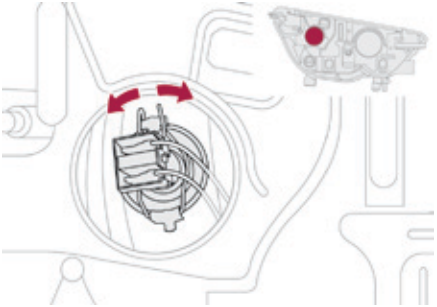
To reassemble, carry out these operations in reverse order.

Model with halogen (type 2) and xenon headlamps

For the replacement of this type of LED lamp, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

i Amber coloured bulbs, such as the direction indicators, must be replaced with bulbs of identical specifications and colour.

Changing dipped beam headlamp bulbs (on models with halogen headlamps)

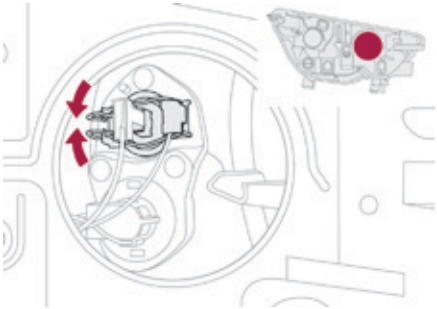


- Remove the protective cover by pulling the tab.
- Disconnect the connector.
- Spread the springs to release the bulb.
- Pull the bulb out and change it.

To reassemble, carry out these operations in reverse order.

! When refitting, close the protective cover carefully to preserve the sealing of the headlamp.

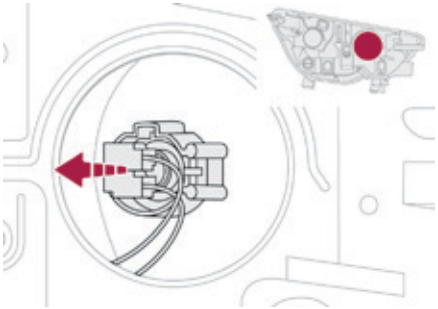
Changing main beam headlamp bulbs (on models with type 1 halogen headlamps)



- Remove the protective cover by pulling the tab.
- Disconnect the connector.
- Squeeze the springs to release the bulb.
- Pull the bulb out and change it.

To reassemble, carry out these operations in reverse order.

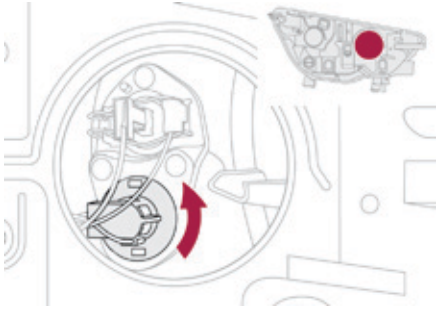
Changing main beam headlamp bulbs (on models with type 2 halogen headlamps)



- Remove the protective cover by pulling the tab.
- Disconnect the connector.
- Pull the bulb out and change it.

To reassemble, carry out these operations in reverse order.

Changing daytime running lamp / sidelamp bulbs (on models with type 1 halogen headlamps)



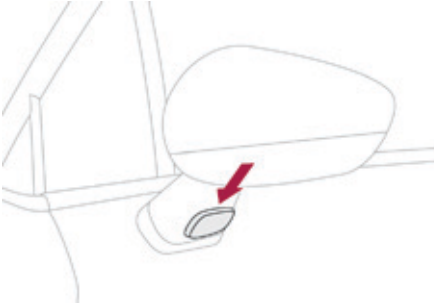
- Remove the protective cover by pulling the tab.
- Disconnect the wiring connector.
- Turn the bulb holder a quarter of a turn and extract it.
- Pull the bulb and change it.

To reassemble, carry out these operations in reverse order.

Changing daytime running lamp / sidelamp bulbs (on models with type 2 halogen or xenon headlamps)

For the replacement of this type of LED lamp, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Changing integrated direction indicator side repeaters

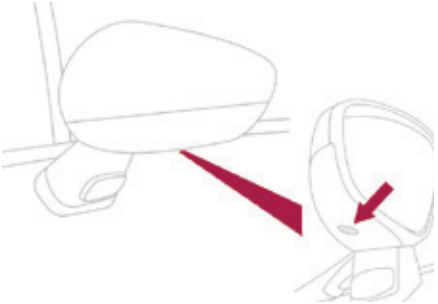


- Insert a flat screwdriver towards the centre of the repeater between the repeater and the base of the mirror.
- Tilt the flat screwdriver to extract the repeater and remove it.
- Disconnect the repeater connector.

To reassemble, carry out these operations in reverse order.

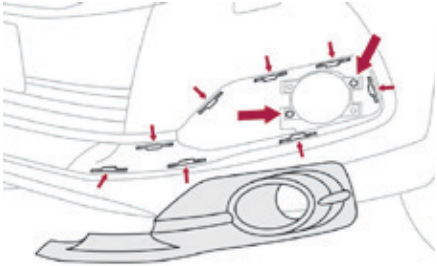
Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop to obtain replacement repeaters.

Changing the side spotlamps (LEDs)



For the replacement of this type of light emitting diode lamp, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

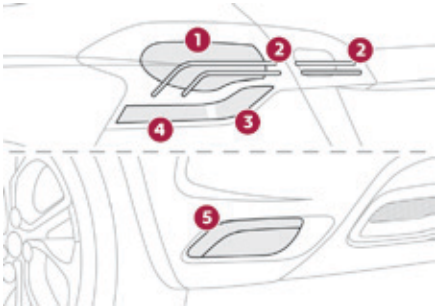
Changing foglamp bulbs (on models with halogen headlamps)



- Introduce a flat screwdriver in the hole in the finisher.
- Pull and lever to unclip the bumper finisher.
- Remove the two module fixing screws and remove it from its housing.
- Disconnect the bulb holder connector.
- Turn the bulb holder a quarter of a turn and extract it.
- Pull the bulb and change it.

To refit, carry out these operations in reverse order.
To replace these bulbs you may also contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

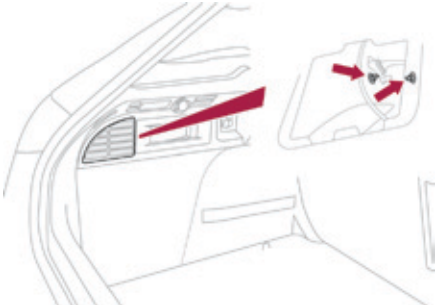
Rear lamps

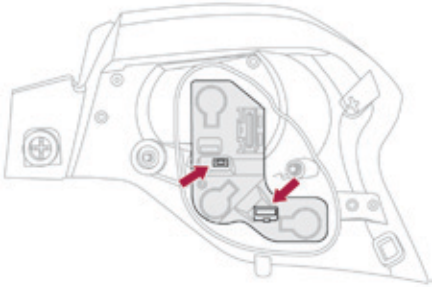


1. **Brake lamps (P21/5W).**
2. **Sidelamps (LEDs)*.**
3. **Direction indicators (PY21W amber).**
4. **Reversing lamp (P21W).**
5. **Rear foglamps (P21W).**

i Amber bulbs, such as those for the direction indicators, must be replaced by bulbs of the same rating and colour. The lamps on the tailgate, other than the guide lamps, are dummy units. They are there for aesthetic purposes only.

Changing stop lamp, reversing lamp and direction indicator bulbs





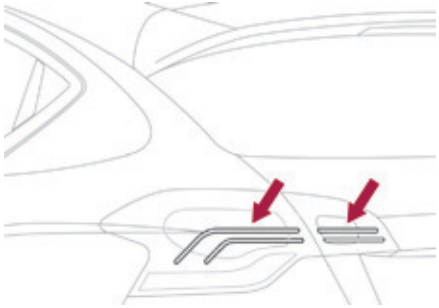
These three bulbs are changed from inside the boot:

- ☞ open the boot,
- ☞ remove the access grille from the corresponding side trim panel,
- ☞ slacken the two nuts using a 10 mm tube spanner then remove the nuts by hand,
- ☞ unclip the lamp unit connector,
- ☞ extract the lamp unit carefully pulling in its middle towards the outside,
- ☞ remove the foam seal,
- ☞ unclip the two small secondary connectors,
- ☞ spread the two tabs and remove the bulb holder,
- ☞ turn the bulb a quarter of a turn and change it.

To reassemble, carry out these operations in reverse order.
Take care to engage the lamp unit in its guides, while keeping it in line with the vehicle.
Tighten sufficiently to ensure sealing, but without forcing, so as to avoid damaging the lamp.

* LED: light-emitting diodes.

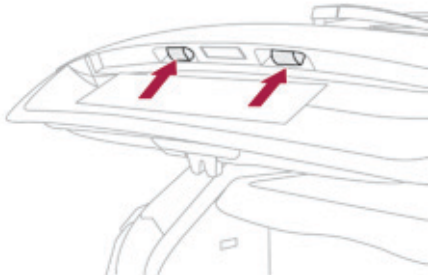
Changing the light guides / sidelamps



For the replacement of this type of light-emitting diode lamp, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Number plate lamps (W5W)

To facilitate the removal of the lamp, carry out this operation with the tailgate half open.



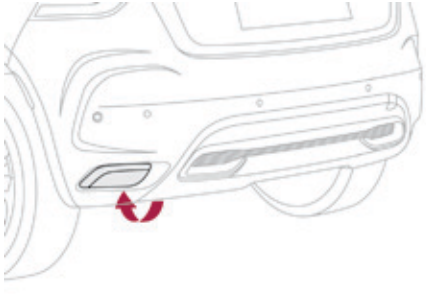
- ☞ Insert a thin screwdriver into the lens cutout.
- ☞ Push it outwards.
- ☞ Remove the lens.
- ☞ Change the faulty bulb.

To refit, press on the lens to clip it in place.

Third brake lamp (LEDs)

For the replacement of this type of light emitting diode lamp, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Changing foglamp bulbs



These bulbs are replaced from outside the rear bumper:

- ☞ pass your hand under the bumper,
- ☞ turn the bulb holder a quarter turn and remove it,
- ☞ turn the bulb a quarter turn, pull it out and fit a new bulb.

For reassembly, carry out these operations in reverse order.

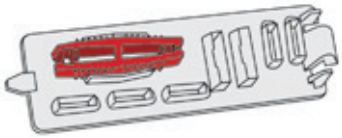
! Take care not to touch the silencer; there is a risk of burns if changing a bulb within a few minutes of switching off the ignition.

Changing a fuse

Access to the tools

The extraction tweezer is fitted to the back of the dashboard fusebox cover.
For access to it:

- ☞ unclip the cover by pulling at the top right, then left,
- ☞ disengage the cover completely and turn it over,



- ☞ remove the carrier on which the tweezer is fitted.

Changing a fuse

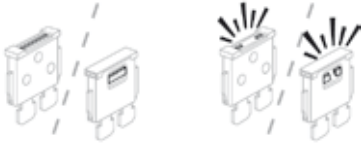
Before changing a fuse:

- ☞ the cause of the failure must be identified and rectified,
- ☞ all electrical consumers must be switched off,
- ☞ the vehicle must be immobilised with the ignition off,
- ☞ identify the failed fuse using the tables and layout drawings in the following pages.

To replace a fuse, you must:

- ☞ use the special tweezer to extract the fuse from its housing and check the condition of its filament.
- ☞ always replace the failed fuse with a fuse of the same rating (same colour); using a different rating could cause faults (risk of fire).

If the fuse fails again soon after replacement, have the vehicle's electrical system checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.



Good **Failed**

Tweezer

! The replacement of a fuse not shown in the tables below may cause a serious malfunction of your vehicle. Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Installing electrical accessories

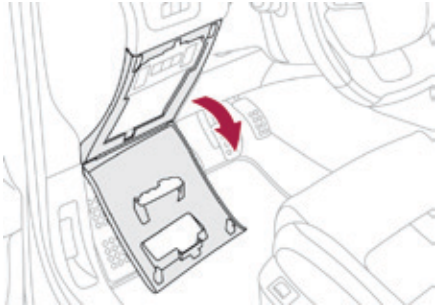
Your vehicle's electrical system is designed to operate with standard or optional equipment.
Before installing other electrical equipment or accessories on your vehicle, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

CITROËN will not accept responsibility for the cost incurred in repairing your vehicle or for rectifying malfunctions resulting from the installation of accessories not supplied and not recommended by CITROËN and not installed in accordance with its instructions, in particular when the combined consumption of all of the additional equipment connected exceeds 10 milliamperes.

Dashboard fuses

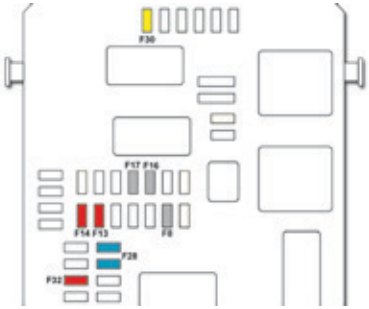
The fuseboxes are located in the lower dashboard (left-hand side).

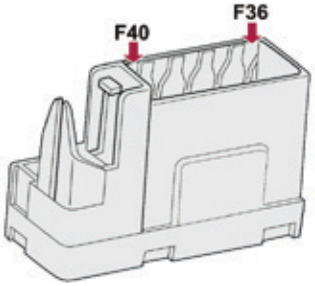
Access to the fuses



☞ Unclip the cover by pulling the right-hand upper part, then left.

Fuse tables





Fusebox 1

Fuse N°	Rating	Functions
F8	**3 A**	Alarm siren, alarm ECU.
F13	**10 A**	Cigarette lighter / Front 12 V socket.
F14	**10 A**	12 V socket in boot.
F16	**3 A**	Lighting for the large multifunctional storage unit, rear map reading lamps, glove box illumination.
F17	**3 A**	Sun visor illumination, front map reading lamps.
F28	**15 A**	Audio system, radio (after-market).
F30	**20 A**	Rear wiper.
F32	**10 A**	Hi-Fi amplifier.

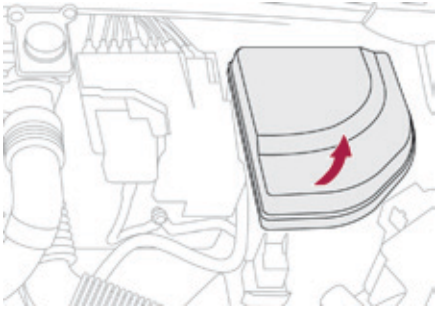
Fusebox 2

Fuse N°	Rating	Functions
F36	**15 A**	Rear 12 V socket.
F37	**-**	Not used.
F38	**-**	Not used.
F39	**-**	Not used.
F40	**25 A**	230 V / 50 Hz socket.

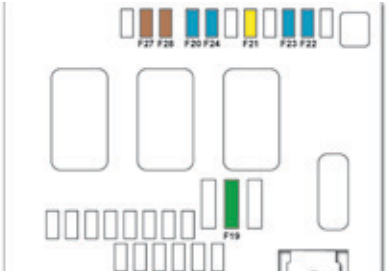
Engine compartment fuses

The fusebox is placed in the engine compartment near the battery (left-hand side).

Access to the fuses



- Unclip the cover.
- Change the fuse.
- When you have finished, close the cover carefully to ensure correct sealing of the fusebox.



Fuse table

Fuse N°	Rating	Functions
F19	30 A	Windscreen wipers slow / fast speed.
F20	15 A	Front and rear screenwash pump.
F21	20 A	Headlamp wash pump.
F22	15 A	Horn.
F23	15 A	Right-hand main beam headlamp.
F24	15 A	Left-hand main beam headlamp.
F27	5 A	Left-hand dipped headlamp.
F28	5 A	Right-hand dipped headlamp.

12 V battery

Procedure for starting the engine using another battery or charging a discharged battery.

General points

Lead-acid starter batteries

e Batteries contain harmful substances such as sulphuric acid and lead.
They must be disposed of in accordance with regulations and must not, in any circumstances, be discarded with household waste.
Take used remote control batteries and vehicle batteries to a special collection point.

! Protect your eyes and face before handling the battery.
All operations on the battery must be carried out in a well ventilated area and away from naked flames and sources of sparks, so as to avoid the risk of explosion or fire.
Wash your hands afterwards.

! If your vehicle has an automatic gearbox, do not try to start the engine by pushing the vehicle.

Access to the battery

The battery is located under the bonnet.
For access to the (+) terminal:

☞ release the bonnet using the interior lever, then the exterior safety catch,

☞ raise the bonnet and secure it with its stay,

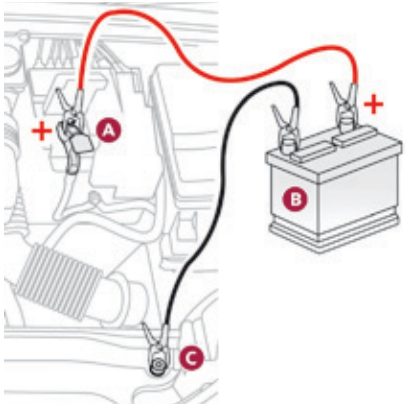
☞ lift the plastic cover for access to the (+) terminal.

Starting using another battery

When your vehicle's battery is discharged, the engine can be started using a slave battery (external or on another vehicle) and jump lead cables or a battery booster.

! Never try to start the engine by connecting a battery charger.
Never use a 24 V or higher battery booster.
First check that the slave battery has a nominal voltage of 12 V and a capacity at least equal to that of the discharged battery.
The two vehicles must not be in contact with each other.
Switch off the electrical consumers on both vehicles (audio system, wipers, lighting, ...).
Ensure that the jump lead cables do not pass close to moving parts of the engine (cooling fan, belts, ...).
Do not disconnect the (+) terminal when the engine is running.

- Raise the plastic cover on the (+) terminal, if your vehicle has one.



- Connect the red cable to the positive terminal (+) of the flat battery **A** (at the metal elbow) then to the positive terminal (+) of the slave battery **B** or the booster.
- Connect one end of the green or black cable to the negative terminal (-) of the slave battery **B** or the booster (or earth point on the other vehicle).
- Connect the other end of the green or black cable to the earth point **C** on the broken down vehicle.
- Start the engine of the vehicle with the good battery and leave it running for a few minutes.
- Operate the starter on the broken down vehicle and let the engine run.
If the engine does not start straight away, switch off the ignition and wait a few moments before trying again.
- Wait until the engine returns to idle then disconnect the jump lead cables in the reverse order.
- Refit the plastic cover to the (+) terminal, if your vehicle has one.
- Allow the engine to run for at least 30 minutes, by driving or with the vehicle stationary, so that the battery reaches an adequate state of charge.

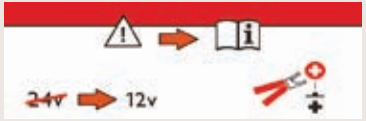
i Some functions, including Stop & Start, are not available if the battery is not sufficiently charged.

Charging the battery using a battery charger

For optimum service life of the battery, it is essential to maintain an adequate state of charge.
In some circumstances it may be necessary to charge the battery:
- if you use your vehicle essentially for short journeys,
- if the vehicle is to be taken off the road for several weeks.

Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

! If you envisage charging your vehicle's battery yourself, use only a charger compatible with lead-acid batteries of a nominal voltage of 12 V.

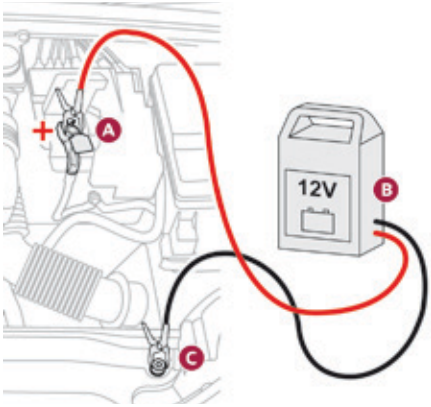


If this label is present, it is essential to use only a 12 V charger, to avoid causing irreversible damage to the electrical components related to the Stop & Start system.

! Follow the instructions for use provided by the manufacturer of the charger. Never reverse polarities.

i It is not necessary to disconnect the battery.

- Switch off the ignition.
- Switch off all electrical consumers (audio system, lighting, wipers, ...).
- Switch off the charger **B** before connecting the cables to the battery, so as to avoid any dangerous sparks.
- Ensure that the charger cables are in good condition.
- Raise the plastic cover, if your vehicle has one, on the (+) terminal.
- Connect the charger **B** cables as follows:
  - the positive (+) red cable to the (+) terminal of the battery **A**,
  - the negative (-) black cable to the earth point **C** on the vehicle.
- At the end of the charging operation, switch off the charger **B** before disconnecting the cables from the battery **A**.



e Never try to charge a frozen battery. If the battery has been frozen, have it checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop, who will check that the internal components have not been damaged and the casing is not cracked, which could cause a leak of toxic and corrosive acid.

Disconnecting the battery

In order to maintain an adequate state of charge for starting the engine, it is recommended that the battery be disconnected if the vehicle is taken out of service for a long period.

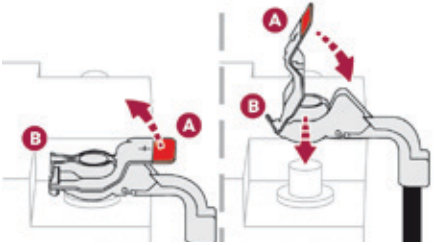
Before disconnecting the battery:

- ☞ close all openings (doors, boot, windows),
- ☞ switch off all electrical consumers (audio system, wipers, lighting, etc.),
- ☞ switch off the ignition and wait for four minutes.

At the battery, it is only necessary to disconnect the (+) terminal.

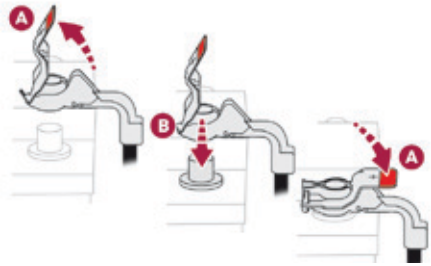
Quick-release terminal clamp

Disconnecting the (+) terminal



- ☞ Raise the lever **A** fully to release the clamp **B**.
- ☞ Remove the clamp **B** by lifting it off.

Reconnecting the (+) terminal



- ☞ Raise the lever **A** fully.
- ☞ Refit the open clamp **B** on the (+) terminal.
- ☞ Push the clamp **B** fully down.
- ☞ Lower the lever **A** to lock the clamp **B**.

! Do not force the lever as locking will not be possible if the clamp is not positioned correctly; start the procedure again.

Following reconnection of the battery

After reconnecting the battery, switch on the ignition and wait 1 minute before starting to allow initialisation of the electronic systems.

However, if minor problems persist following this operation, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Referring to the corresponding section, you must yourself initialise or reset certain systems, such as:

- the one-touch electric windows,
- the date and time,
- the settings of the audio system or of the satellite navigation system.

i The Stop & Start system may not be operational during the trip following the first engine start.
In this case, the system will only be available again after a continuous period of immobilisation of the vehicle, a period which depends on the exterior temperature and the state of charge of the battery (up to about 8 hours).

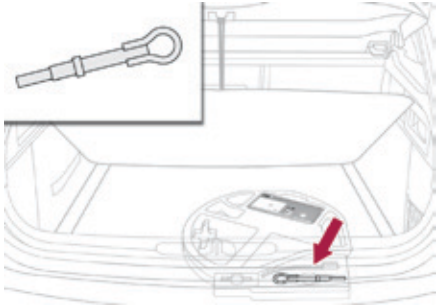
Towing the vehicle

Procedure for having your vehicle towed or for towing another vehicle using a removable towing eye.

Access to the tools

The towing eye is installed in the boot under the floor.
To gain access to it:

☞ open the boot,



☞ raise the floor,
☞ secure it by hooking its cord on the hook on the rear parcel shelf support,
☞ remove the towing eye from the holder.

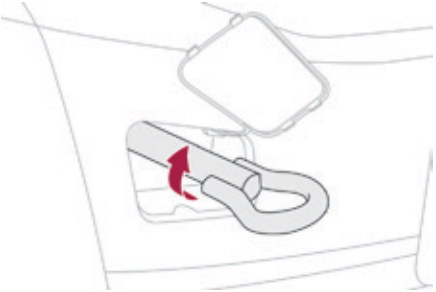
! General recommendations

Observe the legislation in force in your country.
Ensure that the weight of the towing vehicle is higher than that of the towed vehicle.
The driver must remain at the wheel of the towed vehicle and must have a valid driving licence.
When towing a vehicle with all four wheels on the ground, always use an approved towing arm; rope and straps are prohibited.
The towing vehicle must move off gently.
When towing a vehicle with the engine off, there is no longer any power assistance for braking or steering.

In the following cases, you must always call on a professional recovery service:

- vehicle broken down on a motorway or fast road,
- four-wheel drive vehicle,
- when it is not possible to put the gearbox into neutral, unlock the steering, or release the parking brake,
- towing with only two wheels on the ground,
- where there is no approved towing arm available...

Towing your vehicle

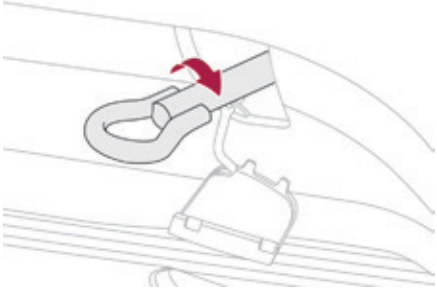


- On the front bumper, unclip the cover by pressing on the left.
- Screw the towing eye in fully.
- Install the towing arm.

- Place the gear lever in neutral (position **N** on an automatic gearbox).
  Failure to observe this instruction could result in damage to certain components (braking, transmission...) and the absence of braking assistance the next time the engine is started.

- Unlock the steering and release the parking brake.
- Switch on the hazard warning lamps on both vehicles.
- Move off gently, drive slowly and for a short distance.

Towing another vehicle



- On the rear bumper, unclip the cover by pressing at the top.
- Screw the towing eye in fully.
- Install the towing arm.
- Switch on the hazard warning lamps on both vehicles.
- Move off gently, drive slowly and for a short distance.

Running out of fuel (Diesel)

On vehicles fitted with Diesel engines, the fuel system must be primed if you run out of fuel.
For all versions other than BlueHDi, refer to the corresponding engine compartment view.

> For more information on **Diesel misfuel prevention**, refer to the corresponding section.

> If the engine does not start first time, don't keep trying but start the procedure again from the beginning.

BlueHDi engines

- Fill the fuel tank with at least five litres of Diesel.
- Switch on the ignition (without starting the engine).
- Wait around 6 seconds and switch off the ignition.
- Repeat the operation 10 times.
- Operate the starter to run the engine.

Other HDi engines

(except BlueHDi version)

- Add at least five litres of Diesel fuel to the tank.
- Open the bonnet.
- If necessary, unclip the styling cover for access to the priming pump.

- Squeeze and release the priming pump repeatedly until resistance is felt (there may be resistance at the first press).
- Operate the starter to start the engine (if the engine does not start at the first attempt, wait around 15 seconds before trying again).
- If the engine does not start after a few attempts, operate the priming pump again then start the engine.
- Refit the styling cover and clip it in place.
- Close the bonnet.

TECHNICAL DATA

09

Engines

Engine characteristics

The engine characteristics (capacity, maximum power, maximum engine speed, fuel, CO_2 emissions, etc.) for your vehicle are given in the registration document, as well as in sales brochures.
These characteristics correspond to the values type-approved on a test bed, under conditions defined in European legislation (Directive 1999/99/EC).
For more information, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Weights

Weights and towed loads

The maximum weights and towed loads for your vehicle are given are given in the registration document, as well as in sales brochures.
These values are also present on the manufacturer's plate or label.
For more information, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

The kerb weight is equal to the unladen weight + driver (75 kg).
The GTW and towed load values indicated apply up to a maximum altitude of 1 000 metres; the towed load mentioned must be reduced by 10 % for every additional 1 000 metres.
The weight of the braked trailer can be increased, within the GTW limit, on condition that the GVW of the towing vehicle is reduced by the same amount.
The recommended nose weight is the vertical load on the towbar ball (removable with or without tools).

GVW: gross vehicle weight, the maximum authorised vehicle weight.

GTW: gross train weight, the maximum authorised weight of vehicle plus trailer.

i High exterior temperatures may result in a reduction in the performance of the vehicle to protect the engine; when the exterior temperature is higher than 37 °C, limit the towed weight.

! Towing with a lightly loaded vehicle can adversely affect roadholding.
Braking distances are increased when towing a trailer.
Never exceed 60 mph (100 km/h) when towing (comply with the legislation in force in your country).

i If the exterior temperature is high, it is recommended that the engine be allowed to idle for 1 to 2 minutes after the vehicle comes to a stop, to facilitate its cooling.

Petrol engines

Engine	VTi 120	PureTech 130 S&S	THP 150
Gearbox	**Manual (5-speed)**	**Manual (6-speed)**	**Automatic (6-speed)**
Model code: NX...	**5FS0 5FS0/1**	**HNYM/S HNYM/1S HNYM/2S**	**5FEA**
Cubic capacity (cc)	1 598	1 199	1 598
Max power*: EU standard (kW)	88	96	110
Fuel	Unleaded	Unleaded	Unleaded
Braked trailer (within GTW limit) on 12% gradient (Kg)	1 200	1 200	800
Unbraked trailer (Kg)	640	675	715
Recommended nose weight (Kg)	75	75	75

* The maximum power corresponds to the value type-approved on a test bed, under conditions defined in European legislation (Directive 1999/99/EC).

.../S: model fitted with Stop & Start.
.../1: model fitted with low rolling resistance tyres.
.../2: model fitted with very low rolling resistance tyres.

Engine	THP 160	THP 165 S&S	THP 210 S&S
Gearbox	**Automatic (6-speed)**	**EAT6 automatic (6-speed)**	**Manual (6-speed)**
Model code: NX...	**5FMA**	**5GZT/S 5GZT/1S**	**5GMM/S**
Cubic capacity (cc)	1 598	1 598	1 598
Max power*: EU standard (kW)	120	121	155
Fuel	Unleaded	Unleaded	Unleaded
Braked trailer (within GTW limit) on 12% gradient (Kg)	800	1 400	1 000
Unbraked trailer (Kg)	715	690	655
Recommended nose weight (Kg)	75	75	75

* The maximum power corresponds to the value type-approved on a test bed, under conditions defined in European legislation (Directive 1999/99/EC).

.../S: model fitted with Stop & Start.
.../1: model fitted with low rolling resistance tyres.

Diesel engines

Engine	BlueHDi 100	e-HDi 115	BlueHDi 115 S&S	
Gearbox	**Manual (5-speed)**	**Manual (6-speed)**	**Manual (6-speed)**	**EAT6 automatic (6-speed)**
Model code: NX...	**BHY**	**9HD8/6 9HD8/1S**	**BHXM/S BHXM/1S -/2S -/3S**	**BHXT/1S BHXT/2S**
Cubic capacity (cc)	1 560	1 560	1 560	
Max power*: EU standard (kW)	73	84	85	
Fuel	Diesel	Diesel	Diesel	
Braked trailer (within GTW limit) on 12% gradient (Kg)	1 250	1 300	1 300	1 200
Unbraked trailer	630	680	680	640
Recommended nose weight	75	75	75	75

* The maximum power corresponds to the value type-approved on a test bed, under conditions defined in European legislation (Directive 1999/99/EC).

.../S: model fitted with Stop & Start.
.../1: model fitted with low rolling resistance tyres.
.../2: model fitted with very low rolling resistance tyres.

Engine	BlueHDi 120 S&S		BlueHDi 150 S&S	BlueHDi 180
Gearbox	**Manual (6-speed)**	**EAT6 automatic (6-speed)**	**Manual (6-speed)**	**EAT6 automatic (6-speed)**
Model code: NX...	**BHZM/S BHZM/1S -/2S -/3S**	**BHZT/S**	**AHRM/S AHRM/1S AHRM/2S**	**AHWT/S AHWT/1S AHWT/2S**
Cubic capacity (cm^3)	1 560		1 997	1 997
Max power*: EU standard (kW)	88		110	132
Fuel	Diesel		Diesel	Diesel
Braked trailer (within GTW limit) on 12% gradient (Kg)	1 300	1 200	1 300	1 300
Unbraked trailer	680	640	740	745
Recommended nose weight	75	75	75	75

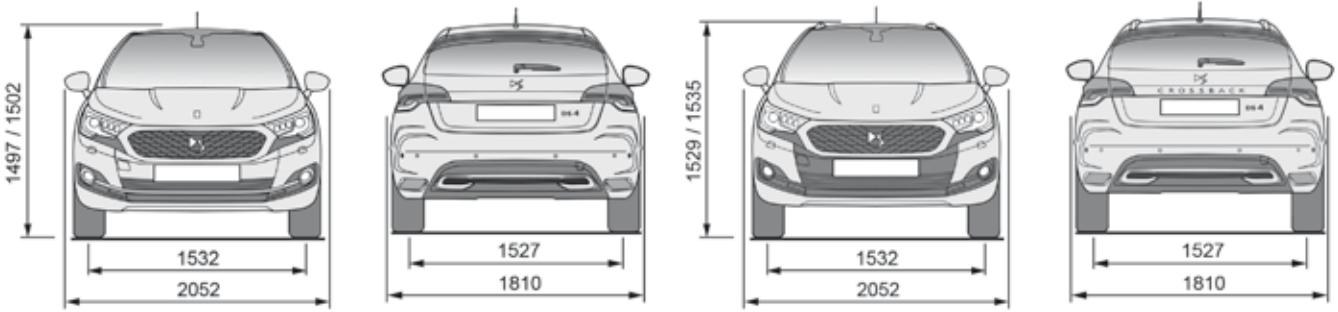
* The maximum power corresponds to the value type-approved on a test bed, under conditions defined in European legislation (Directive 1999/99/EC).

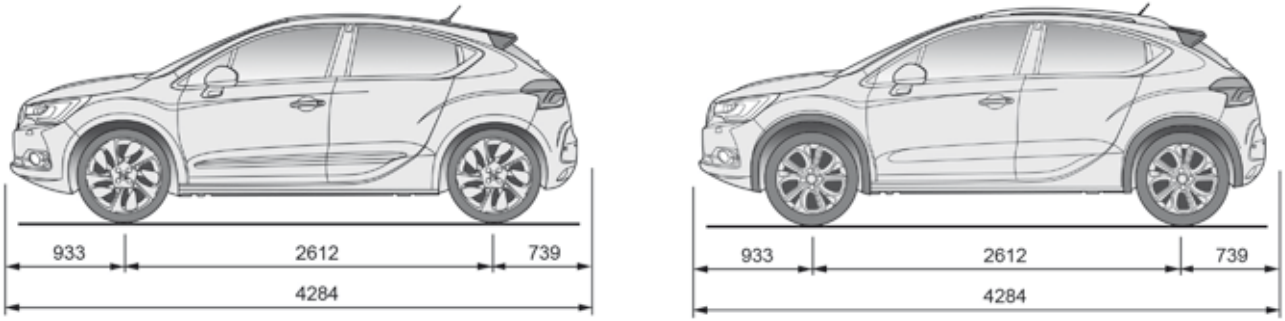
.../S: model fitted with Stop & Start.
.../1: model fitted with low rolling resistance tyres.
.../2: model fitted with very low rolling resistance tyres.

Dimensions (in mm)

These dimensions have been measured on an unladen vehicle.

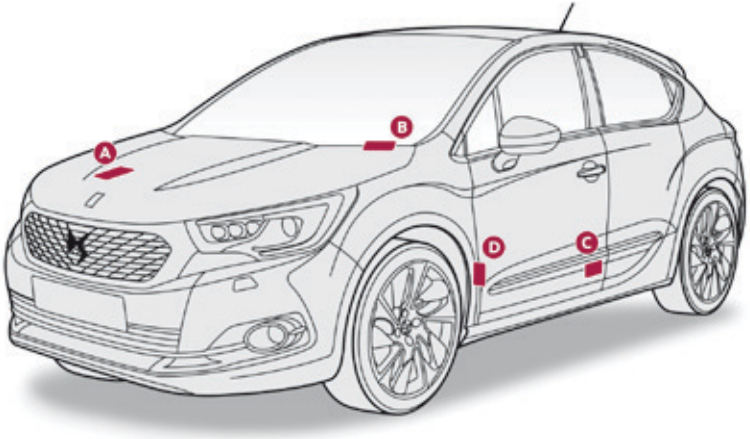
CROSSBACK





Identification markings

Various visible markings for the identification of your vehicle.



A. Vehicle identification number (VIN) under the bonnet.
This number is engraved on the bodywork near the suspension damper mounting.

B. Vehicle identification number on the dashboard.
This number is indicated on a self-adhesive label which is visible through the windscreen.

C. Manufacturer's label.
The VIN is indicated on a self-destroying label affixed to the driver's centre pillar.

D. Tyre/paint label.
This label is affixed to the driver's front pillar.

It bears the following information:
- the tyre pressures, for unladen and laden conditions,
- the tyre sizes (including the load index and speed rating),
- the spare tyre inflation pressure,
- the paint colour code.

i The original tyres fitted to the vehicle may have a load index or speed rating higher than those given on the label; this has no effect on the inflation pressures.

Checking tyre pressures
The tyre pressures should be checked when cold at least monthly.
The pressures given on the label are valid for cold tyres. If you have driven for more than 10 minutes or more than 6 miles (10 kilometres) at more than 30 mph (50 km/h), the tyres will be warm; in this case 0.3 bar (30 kPa) should be added to the pressures given on the label.

! Never reduce the pressure of a warm tyre.

e Low tyre pressures increase fuel consumption.

AUDIO AND TELEMATICS

7-inch touch screen tablet

GPS satellite navigation - Multimedia audio - Bluetooth® telephone

Contents

First steps	314
Steering mounted controls	316
Menus	317
Navigation	318
Navigation - Guidance	326
Traffic	330
Radio Media	332
Radio	338
DAB (Digital Audio Broadcasting) radio	340
Media	342
Settings	346
Connected services	354
MirrorLink™	354
CarPlay®	358
Telephone	360
Frequently asked questions	368

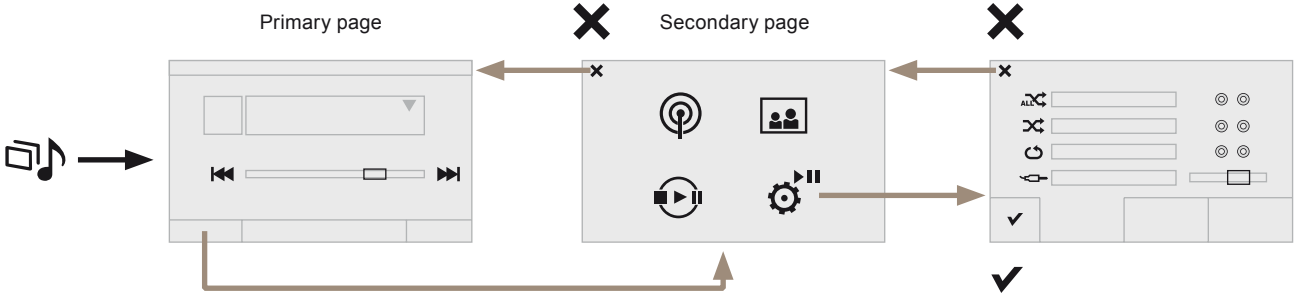
i The system is protected in such a way that it will only operate in your vehicle.

! As a safety measure, the driver should only carry out operations which require prolonged attention while the vehicle is stationary.
The display of an energy economy mode message signals that electrical systems operating are going into standby.
Refer to the energy economy mode section.

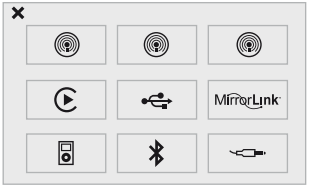
First steps

Use the buttons below the touch screen tablet for access to the menus, then press the virtual buttons in the touch screen tablet.
Each menu is displayed in one or two pages (primary page and secondary page).

In very hot conditions, the system may go into stand-by (screen and sound completely off) for a minimum period of 5 minutes.

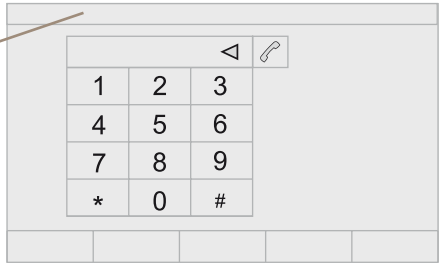


Short-cuts: using the virtual buttons in the upper band of the touch screen tablet, it is possible to go directly to the selection of audio source, the list of stations (or titles, depending on the source).



Select the audio source (depending on version):

- FM / DAB / AM* stations.
- USB memory stick.
- Smartphone via MirrorLink™ or CarPlay®.
- CD player (located in front panel).
- Telephone connected by Bluetooth* and using Bluetooth* audio streaming.
- Media player connected to the auxiliary socket (jack, cable not supplied).



With the engine running, press to mute the sound.
With the ignition off, press to switch the system on.

Volume adjustment (each source is independent, including traffic announcements (TA) and navigation instructions).

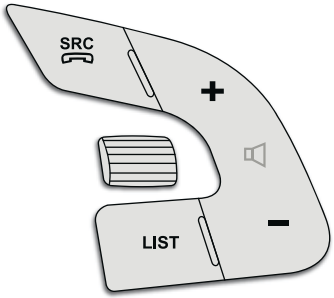
In very hot conditions, the volume may be limited to protect the system. The return to normal takes place when the temperature in the passenger compartment drops.

The screen is of the "resistive" type, it is necessary to press firmly, particularly for "flick" gestures (scrolling through a list, moving the map...). A simple wipe will not be enough. Pressing with more than one finger is not recognised.
The screen can be used when wearing gloves. This technology allows use at all temperatures.

To clean the screen, use a soft non-abrasive cloth (spectacles cloth) without any additional product.
Do not use pointed objects on the screen.
Do not touch the screen with wet hands.

* Depending on equipment.

Steering mounted controls



SRC

Media: change the multimedia source.
Telephone: start a call.
Call in progress: access to the telephone menu (End call, Secret mode, Hands-free mode).
Telephone, press and hold: reject an incoming call, end a call in progress; other than a call in progress, access to the telephone menu.

Radio, turn: automatic search for the previous / next station.
Media, turn: previous / next track.
Press: confirm a selection.

LIST

Radio: display the list of stations.
Media: display the list of tracks.
Radio, press and hold: update the list of stations received.

+

Increase volume.

–

Decrease volume.

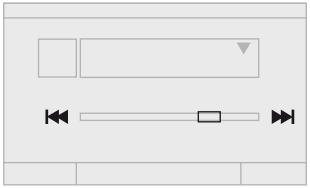
Menus

Navigation

(Depending on equipment)

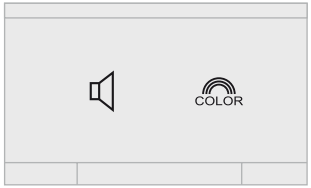
Enter navigation settings and choose a destination.

Radio Media



Select an audio source, a radio station, display photographs.

Settings



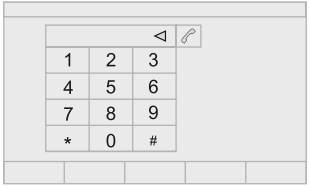
Adjust the settings for sound (balance, ambience, ...), colour schemes and the display (language, units, date, time, ...).

Connected services

(Depending on equipment)

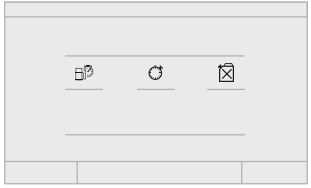
Operate certain applications on your smartphone via MirrorLink™ or CarPlay®.

Telephone



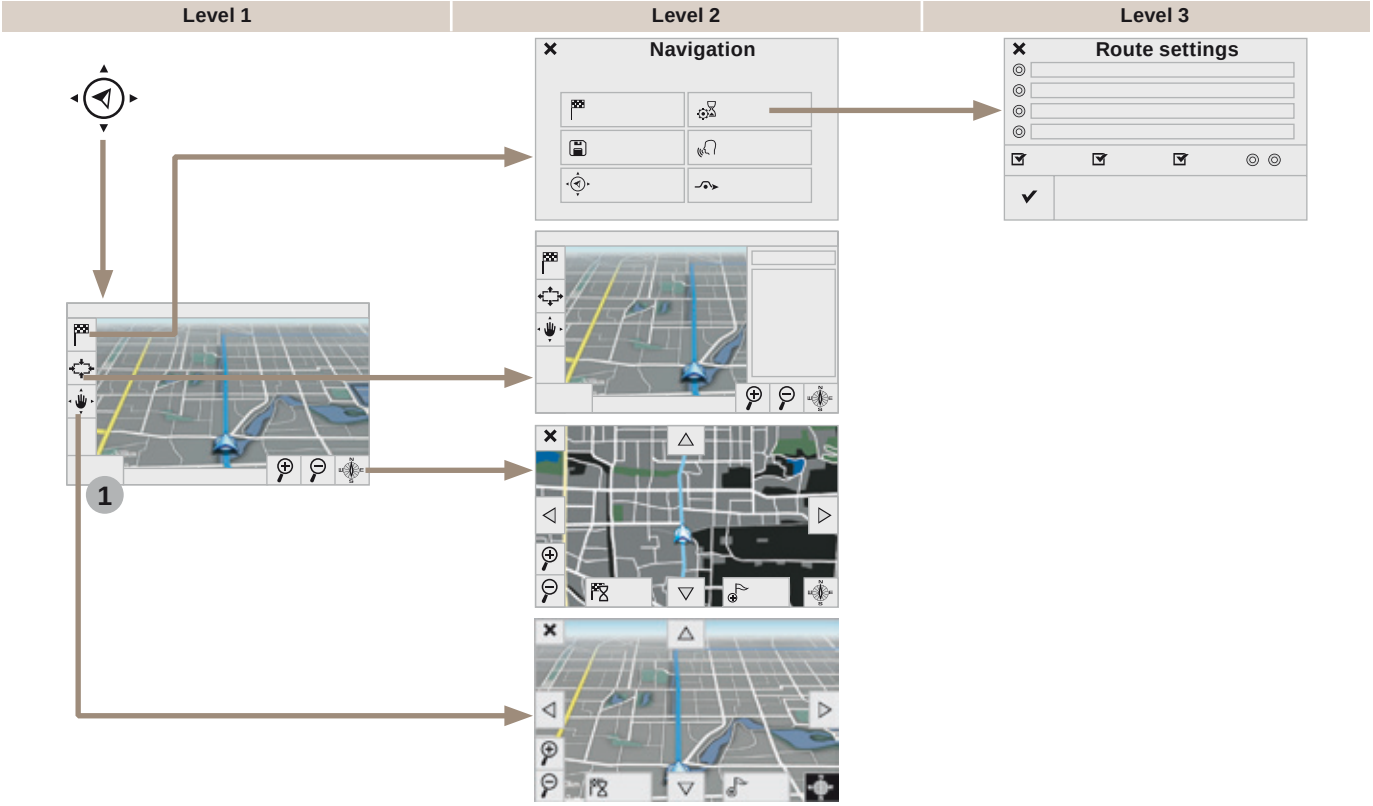
Connect a telephone by Bluetooth®.
Access to the CarPlay® function after connection of your smartphone by USB cable.

Driving

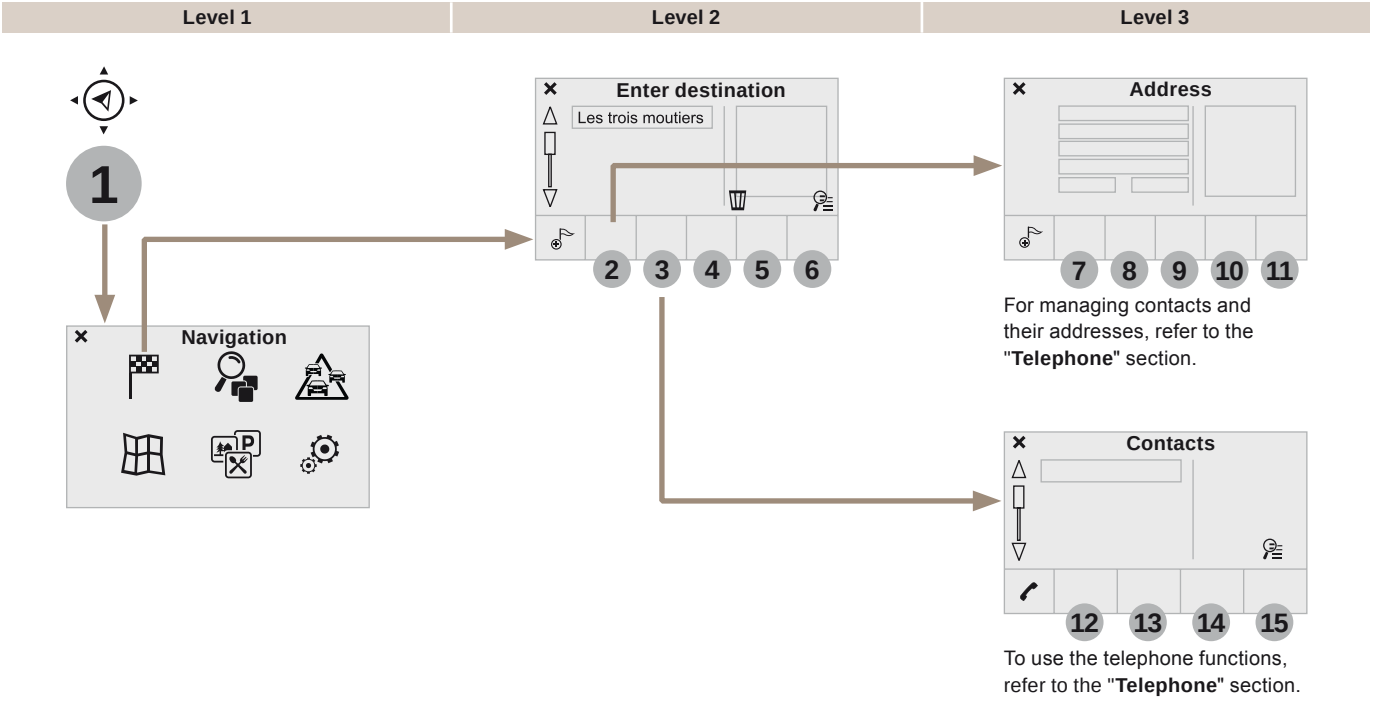


Access to the trip computer.
Activate, deactivate or enter settings for certain vehicle functions.

Navigation

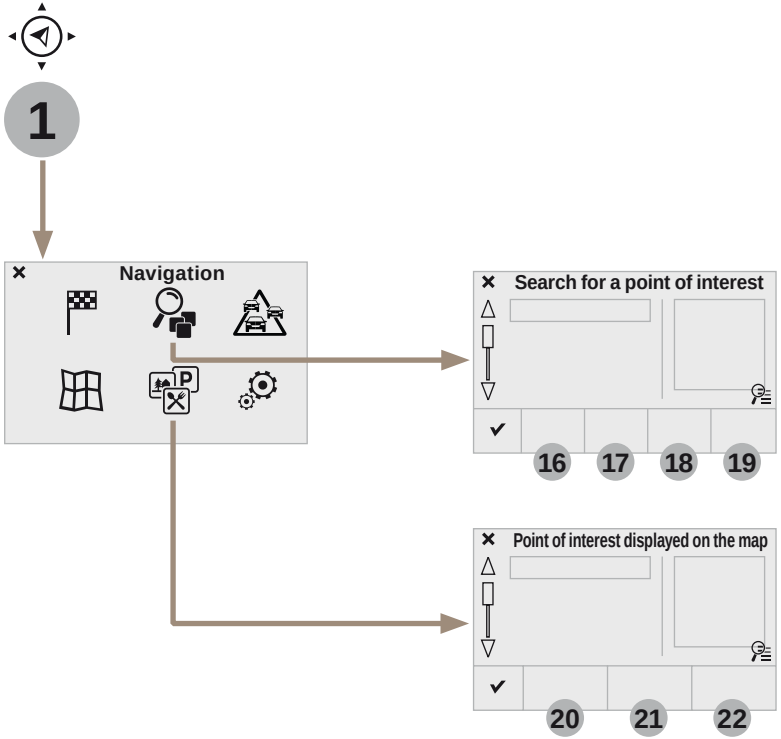


Level 1		Level 2		Level 3		Comments
	Navigation ↓ Settings Navigation		**Enter destination**			Display recent destinations
			Route settings		Fastest	Choose the navigation criteria. The map displays the route chosen according to these criteria.
					Shortest	
					Time/distance	
					Ecological	
					Tolls	
					Ferries	
					Traffic	
					Strict-Close	
					Show route on map	Display the map and start navigation.
					Confirm	Save the options.
			Save current location			Save the current address.
			Stop navigation			Delete the navigation information.
			Voice synthesis			Choose the volume for voice and announcement of street names.
			Diversion			Detour from your initial route by a determined distance.
	Navigation					Display in text mode
						Zoom in.
						Zoom out.
						Display in full screen mode. Use the arrows to move the map.
						Switch to 2D map.

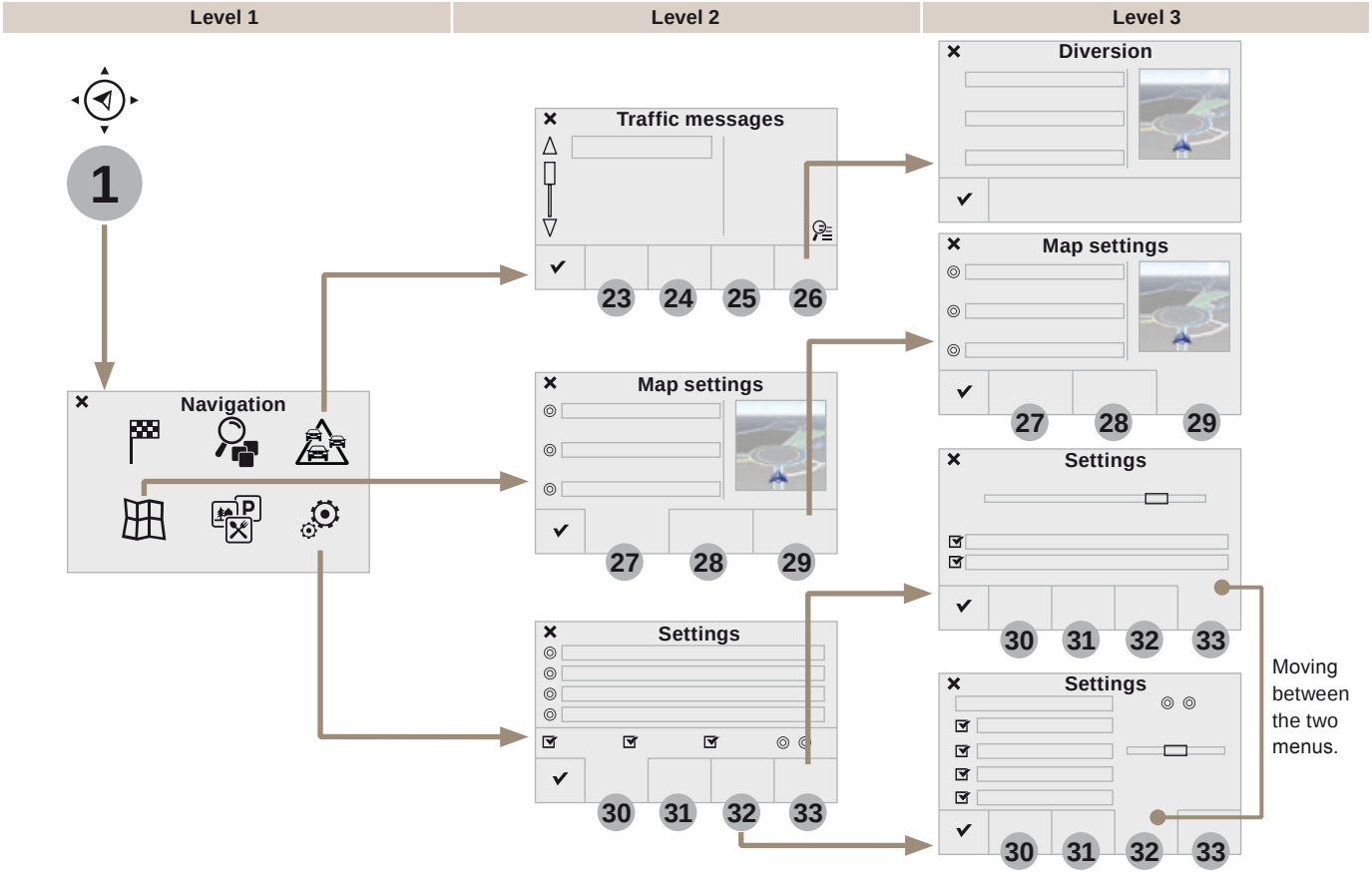

Level 1
Level 2
Level 3
1
Navigation
Enter destination
Les trois moutiers
2
3
4
5
6
Address
7
8
9
10
11
For managing contacts and their addresses, refer to the "**Telephone**" section.
Contacts
12
13
14
15
To use the telephone functions, refer to the "**Telephone**" section.

Level 1	Level 2	Level 3	Comments
Navigation ↓ **Secondary page** ↓ **Enter destination**	**Address**	Current loc.	Address settings
		Point of interest	
		Town center	
		Save	Save the current address.
		Add waypoint	Add a waypoint to the route.
		Navigate to	Press to calculate the route.
	Contacts	Addresses	Select a contact then calculate the route.
		View	
		Navigate to	
		Search for contact	
		Call	
	On the map		Display the map and zoom to view the roads.
	Itinerary		Create, add or delete a waypoint or view the itinerary.
	Stop		Delete navigation information.
	Navigate to		Press to calculate the route.

Level 1	Level 2	Level 3



Level 1		Level 2		Level 3	Comments
	Navigation ↓ Secondary page ↓ Search for POI		All POIs		List of categories available. After choosing the category, select the points of interest.
			Motor		
			Dining/hotels		
			Personal		
			Search		Save the settings.
	Navigation ↓ Secondary page ↓ Show POIs		Select all		Choose the display settings for POIs.
			Delete		
			Import POIs		
			Confirm		Save the options.


Level 1
Level 2
Level 3
1
Navigation
Traffic messages
23
24
25
26
Map settings
27
28
29
Settings
30
31
32
33
Diversion
Map settings
27
28
29
Settings
30
31
32
33
Settings
30
31
32
33
Moving between the two menus.

Level 1	Level 2	Level 3	Comments
Navigation ↓ Secondary page ↓ Traffic messages	On the route		Settings for the choice of messages and the filter radius.
	Around vehicle		
	Near destination		
	Detour	Detour over a distance	
		Recalculate route	
	Finish		Save your selections.
Navigation ↓ Secondary page ↓ Map settings	Orientation	Flat view north heading	Choose the display and orientation of the map.
		Flat view vehicle heading	
		Perspective view	
	Maps		
	Aspect	"Day" map colour	
		"Night" map colour	
		Auomatic day/night	
	Confirm		Save the settings.
Navigation ↓ Secondary page ↓ Settings	Route settings		Enter settings and choose the volume for the voice and announcement of street names.
	Voice		
	Alarm!		
	Traffic options		
	Confirm		Save your selections.

Navigation - Guidance

Choosing a new destination

Towards a new destination

Press on **Navigation** to display the primary page.

1 Press on the secondary page.

Select "**Enter destination**".

2 Select "**Address**".

▽	FRANCE
▽	PARIS
▽	Blvd Hossein
N°/	20

Select the "**Country:**" from the list offered, then in the same way the "**City:**" or its post code, the "**Road:**", the "**N°:**". Confirm each time.

10 Select "**Save**" to save the address entered as a contact entry.
The system allows up to 200 entries.

Select "**Navigate to**".

Choose the navigation criteria: "**Fastest**" or "**Shortest**" or "**Time/ distance**" or "**Ecological**".

Choose the restriction criteria: "**Tolls**", "**Ferries**", "**Traffic**", "**Strict**", "**Close**".

Select "**Confirm**".

Or

Press on "**Show route on map**" to start navigation.

To delete navigation information, press on "**Settings**".

Press on "**Stop navigation**".

To resume navigation press on "**Settings**".

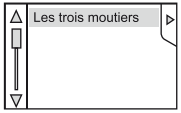
Press on "**Resume guidance**".

Towards a recent destination

Press on **Navigation** to display the primary page.

1 Press on the secondary page.

Select "**Enter destination**".



Select an address from the list offered.

Select "**Navigate to**".

Select the criteria then "**Confirm**" or press "**Show route on map**" to start navigation.

Towards a contact

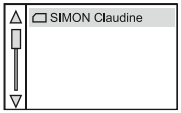
To be able to use navigation "towards a contact in the directory", it is first necessary to enter the address for your contact.

Press on **Navigation** to display the primary page.

1 Press on the secondary page.

Select "**Enter destination**".

3 Select "**Contacts**".



Select a destination from the contacts in the list offered.

Select "**Navigate to**".

Select the criteria then "**Confirm**" to start navigation.

Towards GPS coordinates

Press on **Navigation** to display the primary page.

1 Press on the secondary page.

Select "**Enter destination**".

2 Select "**Address**".

6°54'689'' Enter the "**Longitude:**" then the "**Latitude:**".

Select "**Navigate to**".

Select the criteria then "**Confirm**" or press "**Show route on map**" to start navigation.

Towards a point on the map

Press on **Navigation** to display the primary page.

1 Press on the secondary page.

Select "**Enter destination**".

4 Select "**On the map**".

Zooming in on the map shows points with information.

A long press on a point opens its content.

Towards points of interest (POI)

Points of Interest (POI) are listed in different categories.

Press on **Navigation** to display the primary page.

1 Press on the secondary page.

Select "**Search for POI**".

16 Select "**All POIs**",

Or

17 "**Motor**",

Or

18 "**Dining/hotels**".

i An annual mapping update allows new points of interest to be presented to you.
You can also update the Risk areas / Danger areas every month.
The detailed procedure is available on: http://citroen.navigation.com.

Risk areas / Danger zone alert settings

Press on **Navigation** to display the primary page.

1 Press on the secondary page.

Select "**Settings**".

32 Select "**Alarm!**" (Alert).

It is then possible to activate Risk areas alerts then:

- "Audible warning"
- "Alert only when navigating"
- "Alert only for overspeed"
- "Display speed limits"
- Timing: the choice of timing allows the time before giving a Risk areas alert to be defined.

Select "**Confirm**".

! This series of alerts and displays is only available if Risk areas have first been downloaded and installed on the system.

Traffic

Traffic information

Display of messages

Press on **Navigation** to display the primary page.

1 Press on the secondary page.

Select "**Traffic messages**".

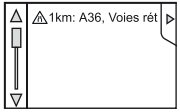
Choose filter settings for:

23 "**On the route**",

24 "**Around**",

25 "**Near destination**", filters to fine-tune the list of messages.

Press again to remove the filter.



Select the message from the list offered.

Select the magnifying glass to have voice information.

TMC (Traffic Message Channel) messages on GPS-Navigation contain traffic information transmitted in real time.

Setting filters

Press on **Navigation** to display the primary page.

1 Press on the secondary page.

Select "**Settings**".

33 Select "**Traffic options**".

Select:
- "**Be advised of new messages**",
- "**Speak messages**".

Then enter the filter radius.

Select "**Confirm**".

We recommend a filter radius of:
- 12 miles (20 km) in urban areas,
- 30 miles (50 km) on motorways.

Receiving TA messages

Press on **Navigation** to display the primary page.

1 Press on the secondary page.

Select "**Settings**".

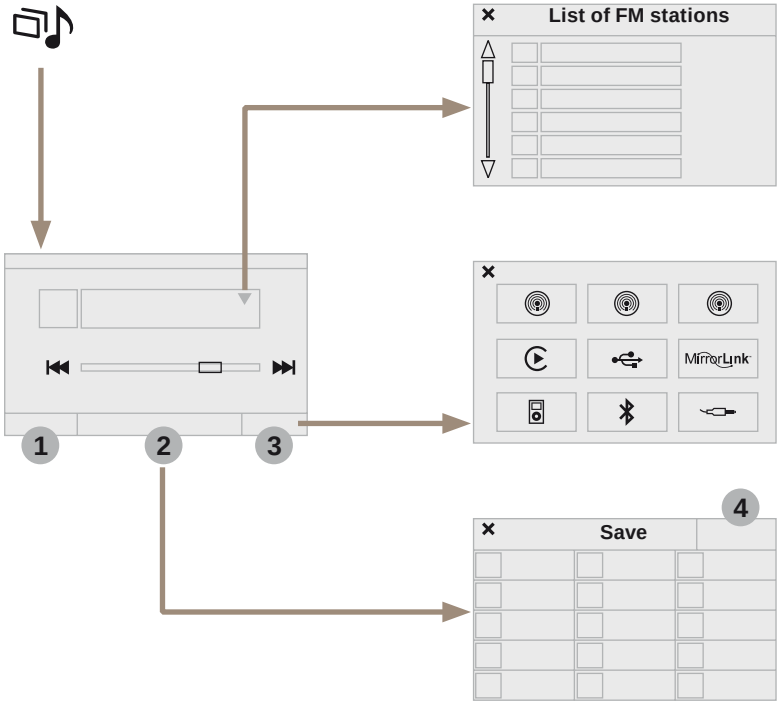
31 Select "**Voice**".

Off On Activate / Deactivate "**Traffic (TA)**".

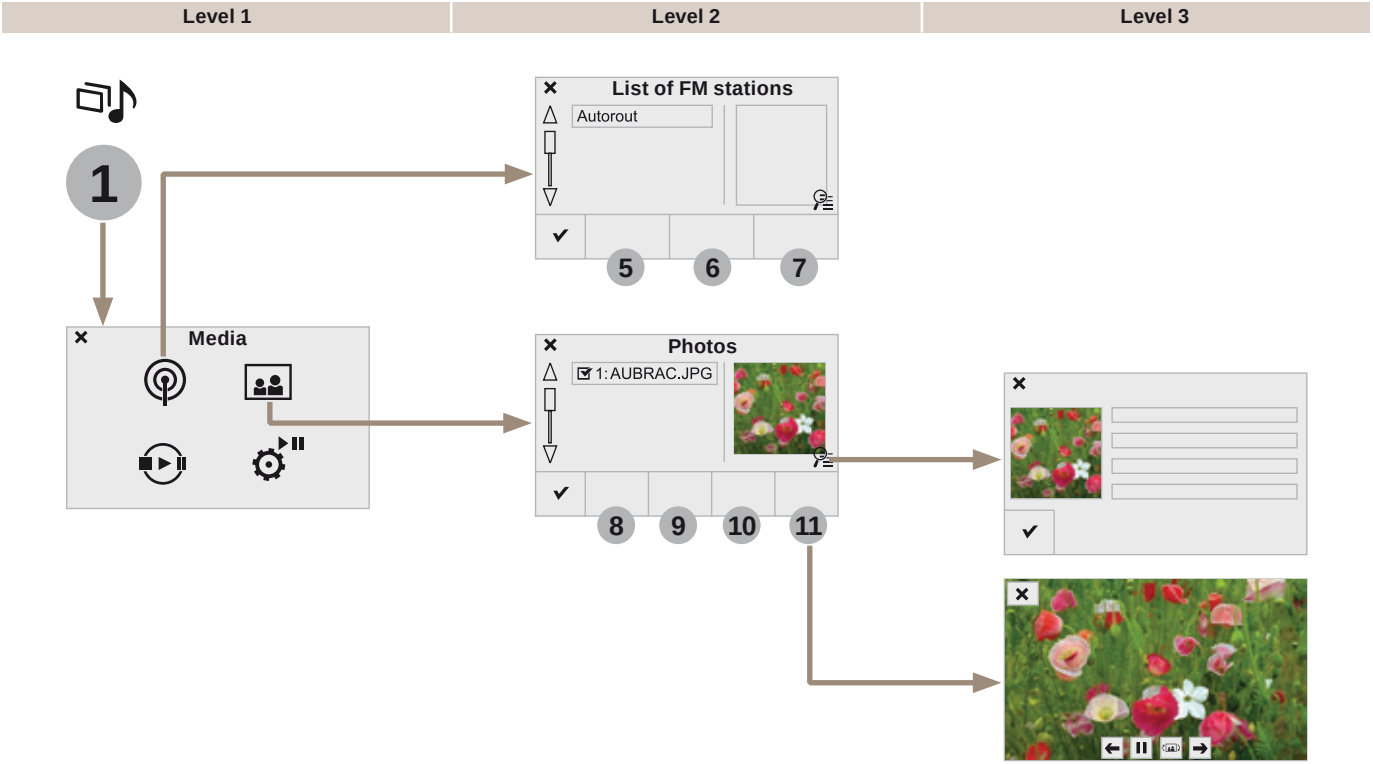
The TA (Traffic Announcement) function gives priority to TA alert messages. To operate, this function needs good reception of a radio station transmitting this type of message. When a traffic report is transmitted, the current audio source is interrupted automatically to play the TA message. Normal playback of the audio source resumes at the end of the transmission of the message.

Radio Media

Level 1	Level 2

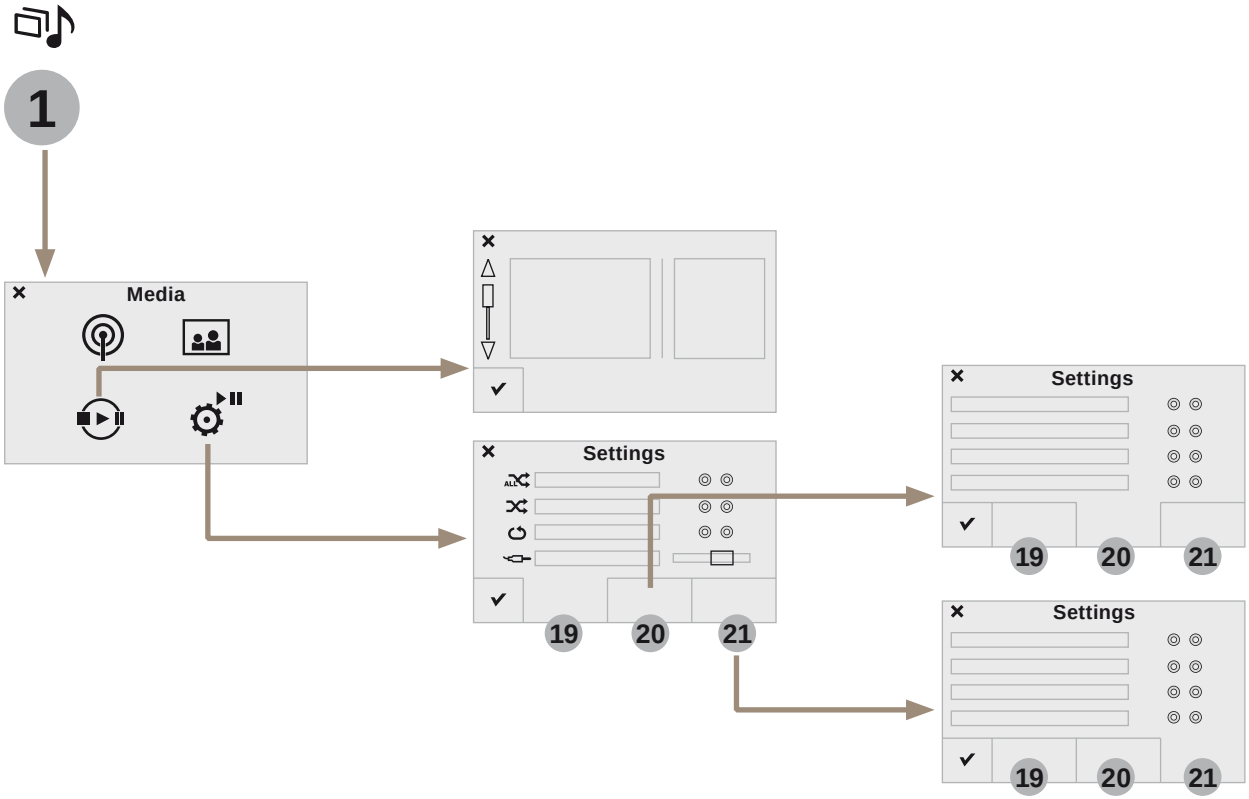


Level 1		Level 2		Comments
	Radio Media ↓ **List**		**List of FM stations**	Press on a radio station to select it.
	Radio Media ↓ **Source**		**FM Radio**	Select change of source.
			DAB Radio	
			AM Radio	
			USB	
			CD	
			MirrorLink™	
			CarPlay®	
			iPod	
			Bluetooth	
			AUX	
	Radio Media ↓ **Save**			Press an empty location to Save it.


Level 1
Level 2
Level 3
1
Media
List of FM stations
Autorout
5
6
7
Photos
1: AUBRAC.JPG
8
9
10
11

Level 1	Level 2	Level 3	Comments
Radio Media ↓ Secondary page ↓ Radio list	Save		Press a radio station to select it.
	Update list		Update the list of stations received.
	Frequency		Enter the desired radio frequency.
	Confirm		Save the settings.
Radio Media ↓ Secondary page ↓ Photos	Home screen		Display the selected photo in the home page.
	Rotate		Rotate the photo 90°.
	Select all		Select all the photos in the list. Press again to deselect.
	Slideshow	Previous photo.	Display the photos in sequence, full-screen. The system supports the following image formats: .gif, .jpg, .bmp, .png.
		Pause / Play.	
		Next photo.	
	Full screen		Display the selected photo full-screen.

Level 1	Level 2	Level 3



Level 1	Level 2	Level 3	Comments
Radio Media ↓ **Secondary page** ↓ **Media list**			Presentation of the last media used.
Radio Media ↓ **Secondary page** ↓ **Settings**	**Media** ↓ **Settings**	Shuffle (all tracks)	Choose the play settings.
		Shuffle (current album)	
		Repeat	
		Aux. amplification	
	Radio ↓ **Settings**	RDS options	Activate or deactivate the settings.
		DAB/FM station tracking	
		Display Radio Text	
		Digital radio slideshow display	
	Announcements ↓ **Settings**	Traffic announcements (TA)	Activate or deactivate the settings.
		News - Weather	
		Sport - Programm info	
		Flash - Unforeseen events	
	Confirm		Save the settings.

Radio

Selecting a station

Press on **Radio Media** to display the primary page.

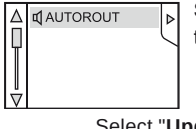
Select "**List**" in the primary page.

Or

Press on **Radio Media** to display the primary page.

1 Press on the secondary page.

Select "**Radio list**" in the secondary page.



Select a radio station from the list offered.

Select "**Update list**" to refresh the list.

To select a preset radio station.

Press on **Radio Media** to display the primary page.

2 Select "**Save**".

Mémoire 1 Select a preset radio station in the list.

3 If necessary, select change of source.

Radio FM Select "**FM Radio**".

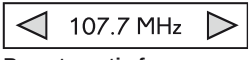
Or

Radio AM "**AM Radio**".

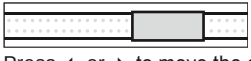
! Radio reception may be affected by the use of electrical equipment not approved by CITROËN, such as a USB charger connected to the 12 V socket. The exterior environment (hills, buildings, tunnel, car park, below ground...) may prevent reception, even in RDS station tracking mode. This phenomenon is normal in the propagation of radio waves and is in no way indicative of a fault with the audio system.

Changing a radio frequency

Press on **Radio Media** to display the primary page.



By automatic frequency search



Press ◂ or ▸ to move the cursor for an automatic search down or up for a radio frequency.

THEN

3 Select change source.

Radio FM Select "**FM Radio**".

Or

Radio AM "**AM Radio**".

OR

Press on **Radio Media** to display the primary page.

1 Press on the secondary page.

7 Press on **Frequency**.

THEN

✔ Enter the frequency in full (e.g.: 92.10 MHz) using the keypad then "**Confirm**".

FRANCE BLEU

Changing radio station
Pressing the name of the current radio station brings up a list.
To change radio station press the name of the desired station.

Presetting a station

Select a radio station or frequency (refer to the corresponding section).

5 Press on "**Save**" (preset).

Mémoire 1

Select a number in the list to preset the previously chosen radio station.
A long press on a number saves (presets) the station.

Or

4 A press on this button presets all of the stations one after the other.

Recalling preset stations

Press on **Radio Media** to display the primary page.

2 Select "**Save**" (preset).

Activating / Deactivating RDS

Press on **Radio Media** to display the primary page.

1 Press on the secondary page.

Select "**Settings**".

20 Select "**Radio**".

Off On Activate/deactivate "**RDS options**".

i RDS, if activated, allows you to continue listening to the same station by automatic retuning to alternative frequencies. However, in certain conditions, coverage of an RDS station may not be assured throughout the entire country as radio stations do not cover 100 % of the territory. This explains the loss of reception of the station during a journey.

DAB (Digital Audio Broadcasting) radio

Display of the name of the current station.

Short-cut: access to the choice of audio source and the list of stations (or titles, depending on the source).

Select the radio station.

Any thumbnail broadcast by the station.

Display the name and number of the "multiplex" service being used.

Previous "Multiplex".
Previous radio station.

Preset stations, buttons 1 to 15.
Short press: select the preset radio station.
Long press: preset a radio station.

Secondary page.

Display of "Radiotext" for the current station.

Next "Multiplex".
Next radio station.

Select the audio source.
Display the "DAB" band.

Display of options:
if active but not available, the display will be greyed out,
if active and available, the display will be blank.

i If the "DAB" radio station being listened to is not available on "FM", the "DAB FM" option is greyed out.

NewsService Journaline®

! Journaline® is a text-based information service designed for digital radio systems.
It provides text-based information structured around topics and sub-topics.
This service is available from the "LIST OF DAB STATIONS" page.

Digital radio

Digital radio provides higher quality reception and also the graphical display of current information on the radio station being listened to. Select "List" in the primary page.
The range of multiplexes available is displayed in alphabetical order.

Press on **Radio Media** to display the primary page.

3 Select change of source.

Radio DAB Select "**DAB Radio**".

Select "**List**" in the primary page.

or

Select "**Radio list**" in the secondary page.

Select the radio station from the list offered.

DAB / FM auto tracking

"DAB" does not cover 100% of the territory.
When the digital radio signal is poor, "DAB/FM station tracking" allows you to continue listening to the same station, by automatically switching to the corresponding "FM" analogue station (if there is one).

Press on **Radio Media** to display the primary page.

1 Press on the secondary page.

Select "**Settings**".

20 Select "**Radio**".

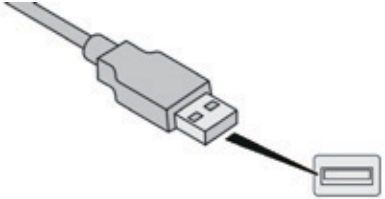
Off On Select "**Digital/FM auto tracking**" then "**Confirm**".

If "DAB/FM station tracking" is activated, there is a difference of a few seconds when the system switches to "FM" analogue radio with sometimes a variation in volume.
When the digital signal is restored, the system automatically changes back to "DAB".

If the "DAB" station being listened to is not available on "FM" ("**DAB/FM**" option greyed out), or "DAB/FM station tracking" is not activated, the sound will cut out while the digital signal is too weak.

Media

USB port



Insert the USB memory stick into the USB port or connect the USB device to the USB port using a suitable cable (not supplied).

! To protect the system, do not use a USB hub.

The system builds playlists (in temporary memory), an operation which can take from a few seconds to several minutes at the first connection.
Reduce the number of non-music files and the number of folders to reduce the waiting time.
The playlists are updated every time the ignition is switched off or on connection of a USB memory stick. The lists are memorised: if they are not modified, the subsequent loading time will be shorter.

Auxiliary socket (AUX)

This source is only available if the "Auxiliary socket" option has been activated in the "Media" settings.

Connect the portable device (MP3 player…) to the auxiliary Jack socket using an audio cable (not supplied).

First adjust the volume of your portable device (to a high level). Then adjust the volume of your audio system.
Display and management of the controls are via the portable device.

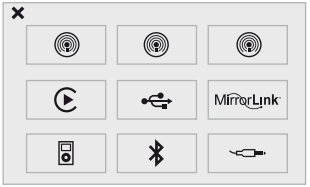
CD player

Insert the CD in the player.

Selecting the source

Press on **Radio Media** to display the primary page.

Select change of source.



Choose the source.

The steering mounted **SRC** (source) button can be used to go to the next media source, available if the source is active.

Press on **OK** to confirm the selection.

Information and advice

The audio system will only play audio files with ".wma, .aac, .flac, .ogg and .mp3" file extensions and with a bit rate of between 32 Kbps and 320 Kbps.
It also supports VBR (Variable Bit Rate) mode.
No other type of file (.mp4, etc.) can be played.
".wma" files must be of the standard wma 9 type.
The sampling rates supported are 32, 44 and 48 KHz.

It is advisable to restrict file names to 20 characters, without using of special characters (e.g. " " ? ; ù) to avoid any playing and displaying problems.

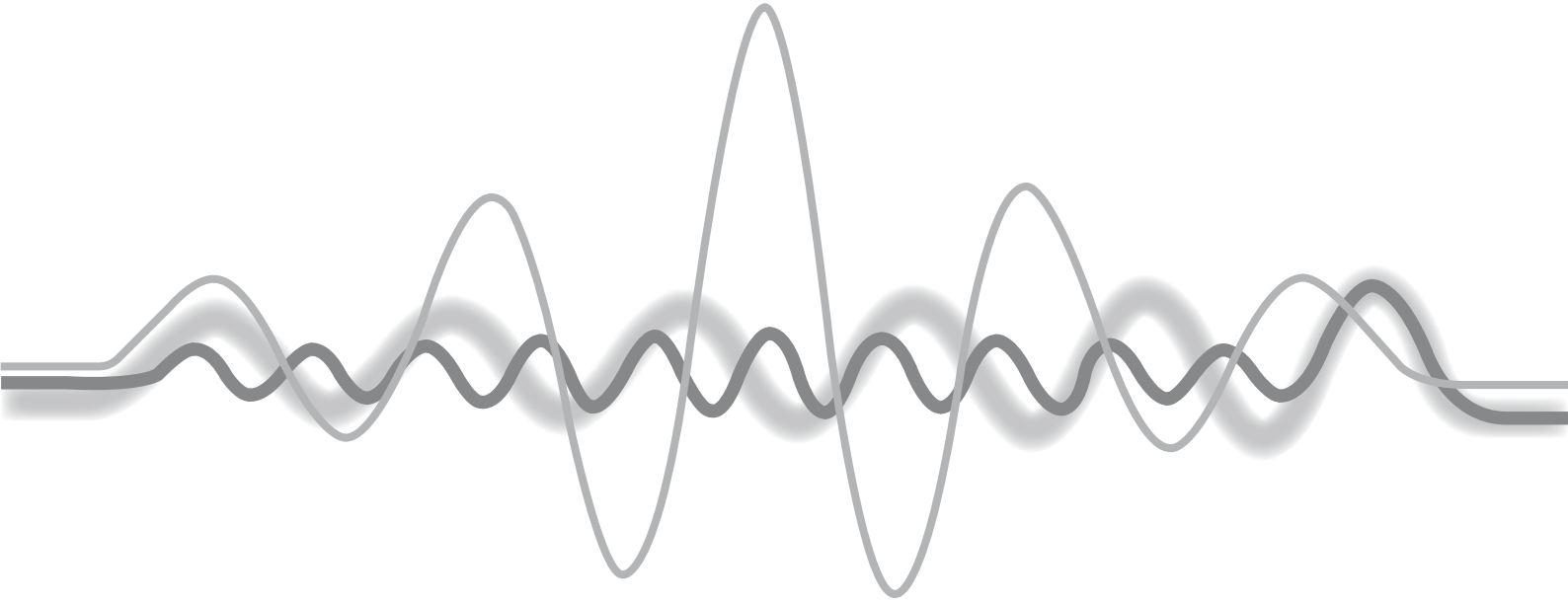
In order to be able to play a recorded CDR or CDRW, when recording it is preferable to select the ISO 9660 level 1, 2 or Joliet standard.
If the disc is recorded in another format it may not be played correctly.
It is recommended that the same recording standard is always used for an individual disc, with as low a speed as possible (4x maximum) for optimum sound quality.
In the particular case of a multi-session CD, the Joliet standard is recommended.

! The system supports USB mass storage devices, BlackBerry® devices or Apple® players via USB ports. The adaptor cable is not supplied.
Control of the peripheral device is with the audio system controls.
Other peripherals, not recognised on connection, must be connected to the auxiliary socket using a Jack cable (not supplied).

Use only USB memory sticks formatted FAT 32 (file allocation table).

! To protect the system, do not use a USB hub.

i It is recommended that the USB cable for the portable device is used.



Bluetooth® audio streaming

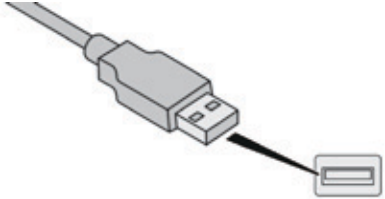
Streaming allows audio files on your telephone to be played through the vehicle's speakers.

Connect the telephone: see the "**Telephone**" section, then "**Bluetooth**".
Choose the "**Audio**" or "**All**" profile.

If play does not start automatically, it may be necessary to start the audio playback from the telephone.
Control is from the peripheral device or by using the audio system buttons.

! Once connected in streaming mode, the telephone is considered to be a media source.
It is recommended that you activate "**Repeat**" on the Bluetooth® peripheral.

Connecting Apple® players



Connect the Apple® player to the USB port using a suitable cable (not supplied).
Play starts automatically.

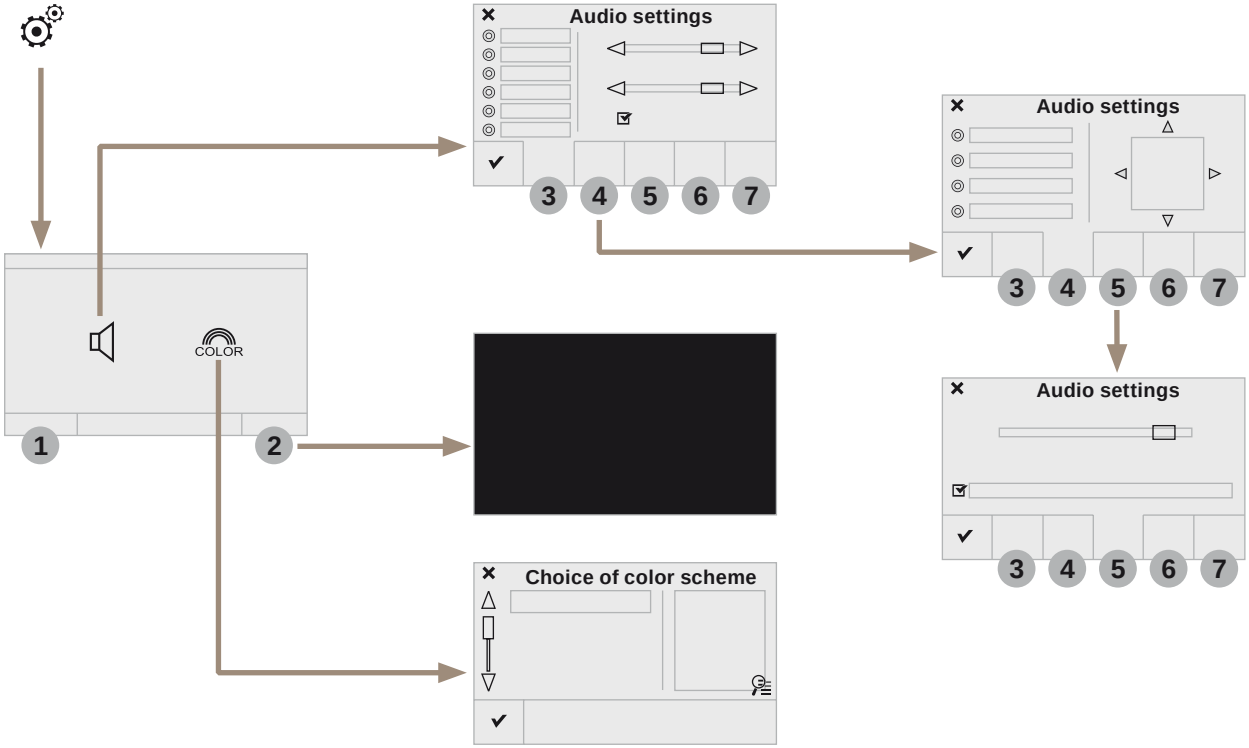
Control is via the audio system.

i The classifications available are those of the portable device connected (artists / albums / genres / playlists / audiobooks / podcasts).
The default classification used is by artist. To modify the classification used, return to the first level of the menu then select the desired classification (playlists for example) and confirm to go down through the menu to the desired track.

The version of software in the audio system may not be compatible with the generation of your Apple® player.

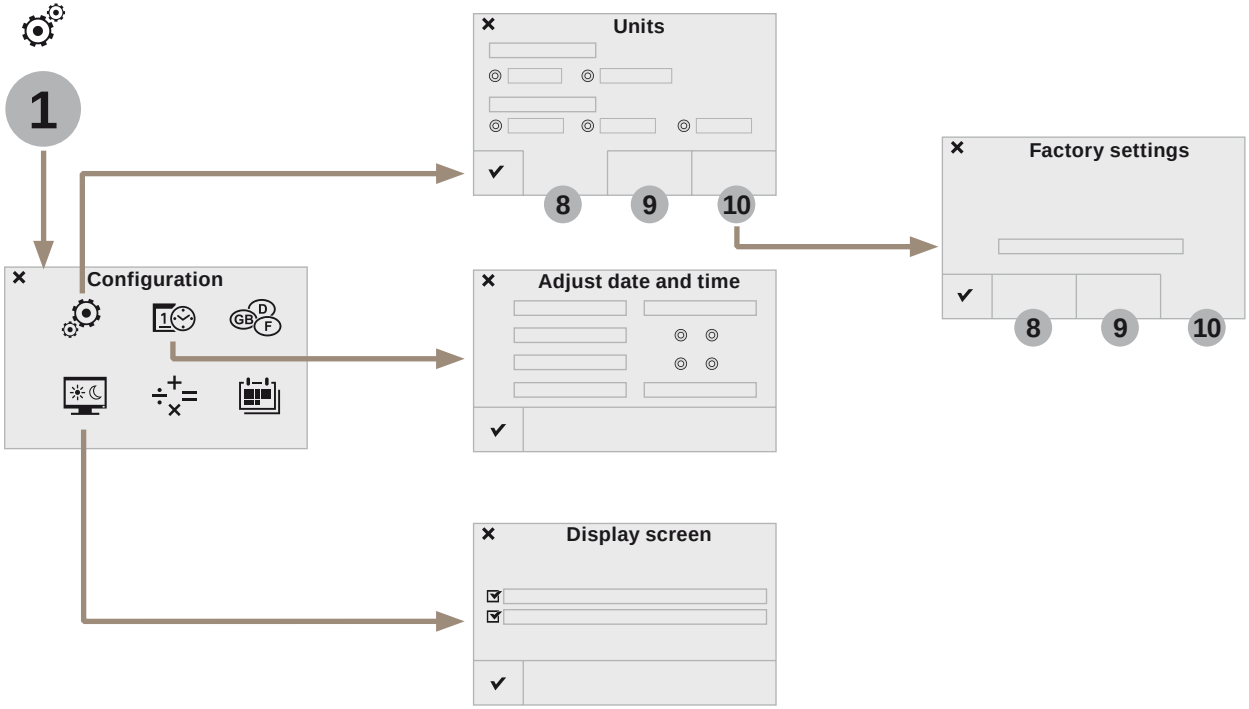
Settings

Level 1	Level 2



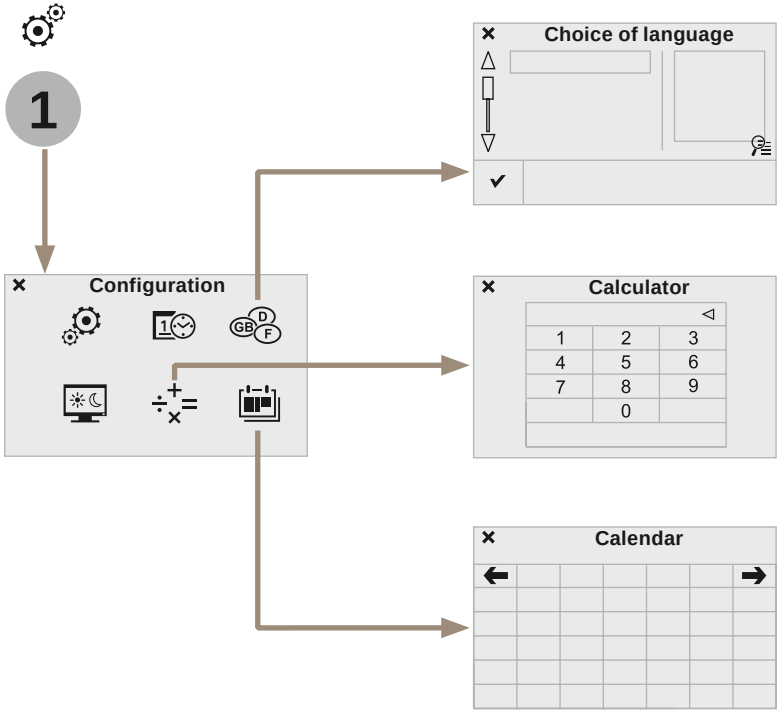
Level 1		Level 2		Comments
	Settings ↓ Audio settings		**Ambience**	Choose the sound ambience.
			Balance	Sound distribution using the Arkamys® system.
			Sound effects	Set the volume or activate the link to vehicle speed.
			Ringtones	Set the telephone ringtone and volume.
			Voice	Set the volume and voice for speaking street names
			Confirm	Save your settings.
	Settings ↓ Turn off screen			Function that turns off the display. Pressing the screen reactivates it.
	Settings ↓ Color schemes		**Confirm**	Choose the color scheme, then confirm to save the setting.

Level 1	Level 2



Level 1		Level 2		Comments
	Settings ↓ Secondary page ↓ System Settings		Units	Set the units used to display distance, fuel consumption and temperature.
			Delete data	Select the desired data in the list then press Delete.
			Factory settings	Return to factory settings.
			Confirm	Save the settings.
	Settings ↓ Secondary page ↓ Time/Date		Confirm	Set the date and time then confirm.
	Settings ↓ Secondary page ↓ Screen settings		Activate automatic text scrolling	Activate or deactivate the setting then confirm.
			Activate animations	
			Confirm	

Level 1	Level 2



Level 1		Level 2		Comments
	Settings ↓ **Secondary page** ↓ **Languages**		**Confirm**	Select the language then confirm.
	Settings ↓ **Secondary page** ↓ **Calculator**			Select the calculator.
	Settings ↓ **Secondary page** ↓ **Calendar**			Select the calendar.

Audio settings

Press on **Settings** to display the primary page.

Select "**Audio settings**".

3 Select "**Ambience**".

Or

4 "**Balance**".

Or

5 "**Sound effects**".

Or

6 "**Ringtones**".

Or

7 "**Voice**".

! The distribution (or spatialisation using the Arkamys® system) of sound is an audio process that allows the audio quality to be adapted to the number of passengers in the vehicle.
Available only with the 6-speaker configuration.

i The audio settings (**Ambience**, **Bass:**, **Treble:** and **Loudness**) are different and independent for each sound source.
The settings for **Distribution** and **Balance** are common to all sources.

i
- "**Ambience**" (choice of 6 musical ambiences)
- "**Bass:**"
- "**Treble:**"
- "**Loudness**" (Activate/Deactivate)
- "**Distribution**" ("**Driver**", "**All passengers**", "**Front only**")
- "**Audible response from touch screen**"
- "**Volume linked to speed**" (Activate/Deactivate)

i On-board audio: Arkamys© Sound Staging optimises sound distribution in the passenger compartment.

Color schemes

Press on **Settings** to display the primary page.

Select "**Color schemes**".

Select the color scheme in the list then "**Confirm**".

i At each change of color scheme the system restarts, showing a black screen for a few moments.

! As a safety measure, the procedure for changing the color scheme is only possible with the vehicle stationary.

Modifying system settings

Press on **Settings** to display the primary page.

1 Press on the secondary page.

Select "**System Settings**".

8 Select "**Units**" to change the units of distance, fuel consumption and temperature.

9 Select "**Delete data**" to delete the list of recent destinations, personal points of interest, contacts in the list.

Choose the item then select "**Delete**".

10 Select "**Factory settings**" to return to the original settings.

Press on **Settings** to display the primary page.

1 Press on the secondary page.

Select "**Screen settings**".

Activate or deactivate "**Activate automatic text scrolling**" and "**Activate animations**".

Press on **Settings** to display the primary page.

1 Press on the secondary page

Select "**Time/Date**" to change the time zone, synchronisation with GPS, the time and its format, then the date.

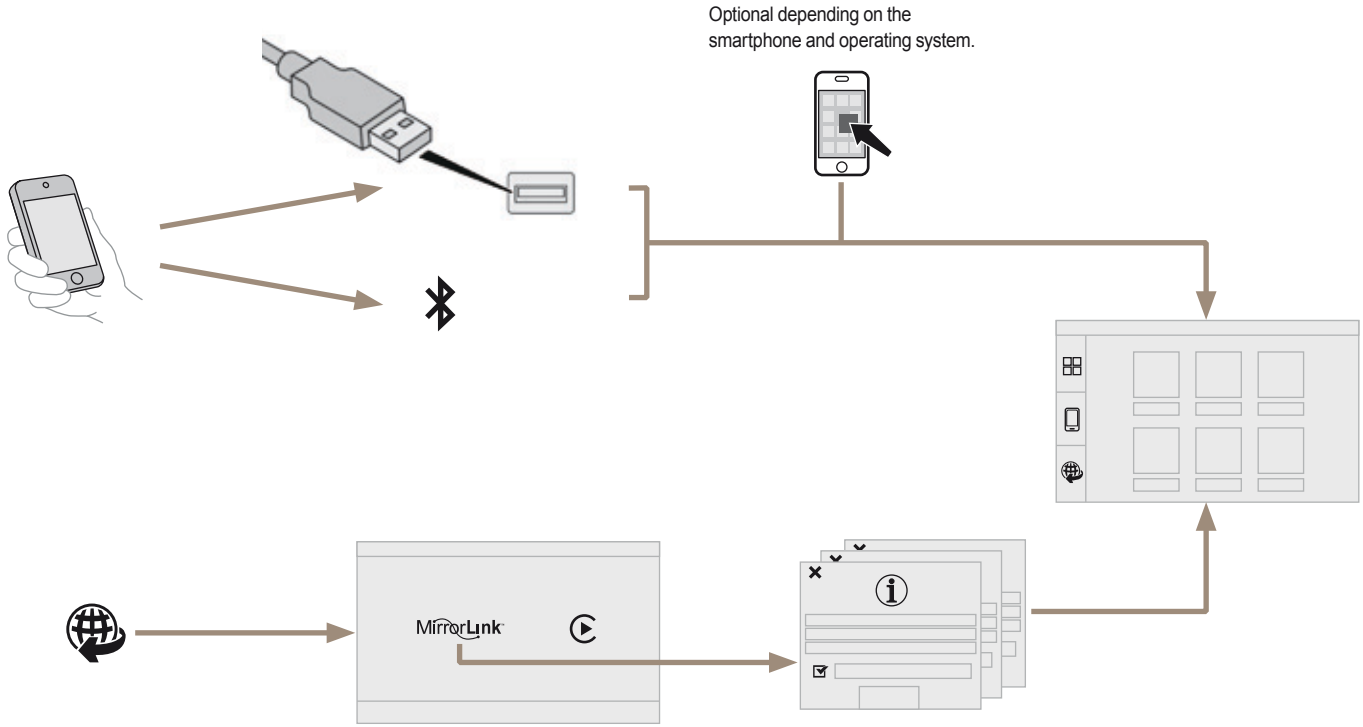
The system does not manage changes between summer time and winter time automatically (according to country).

Select "**Languages**" to change language.

Select "**Calculator**" to display a calculator.

Select "**Calendar**" to display a calendar.

Connected services
MirrorLink™



MirrorLink™ smartphone connection

! As a safety measure and because it requires sustained attention by the driver, using a smartphone when driving is prohibited.
All operations must be done with the **vehicle stationary**.

i The synchronisation of a smartphone allows applications on a smartphone that are adapted to the MirrorLink™ technology to be displayed in the vehicle's screen.
The principles and standards are constantly evolving. For the communication process between the smartphone and the system to work correctly, the smartphone must be unlocked; update the operating system of your smartphone as well as the date and time in the smartphone and the system.
For the list of eligible smartphones, connect to the brand's internet website in your country.

! As a safety measure, applications can only be viewed with the vehicle stationary; display is interrupted once the vehicle is moving.

i Please note:
- if your smartphone is supported, to make it "MirrorLink™" compatible, some phone manufacturers nevertheless invite you to first download a dedicated application.

When connecting a smartphone to the system, it is recommended that Bluetooth® be started on the smartphone

Connect a USB cable. The smartphone charges when connected by a USB cable.

From the system, press on "**Connected services**" to display the primary page.

MirrorLink™ Press on "**MirrorLink™**" to start the application in the system.

Start the application on the smartphone (optional, depending on the smartphone and operating system).

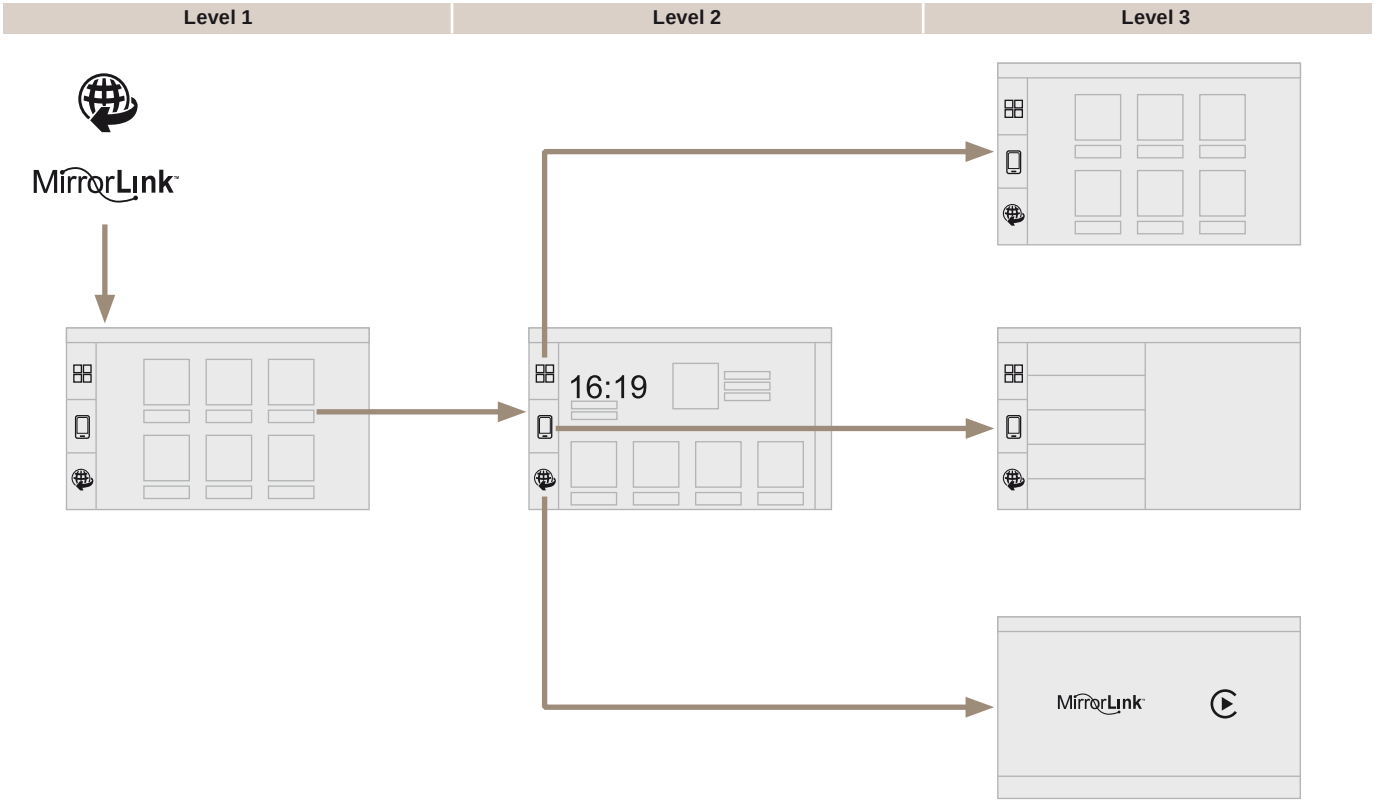
OK During the procedure, several screen pages relating to certain functions are displayed.
Accept to start and end the connection.

Once connection is established, an page is displayed with the applications already downloaded to your smartphone and adapted to MirrorLink™ technology.
If only one application has been downloaded to the smartphone, it starts automatically.

Access to the different audio sources remains accessible in the margin of the MirrorLink™ display, using touch buttons in the upper bar.
Access to the menus for the system is possible at any time using the dedicated buttons

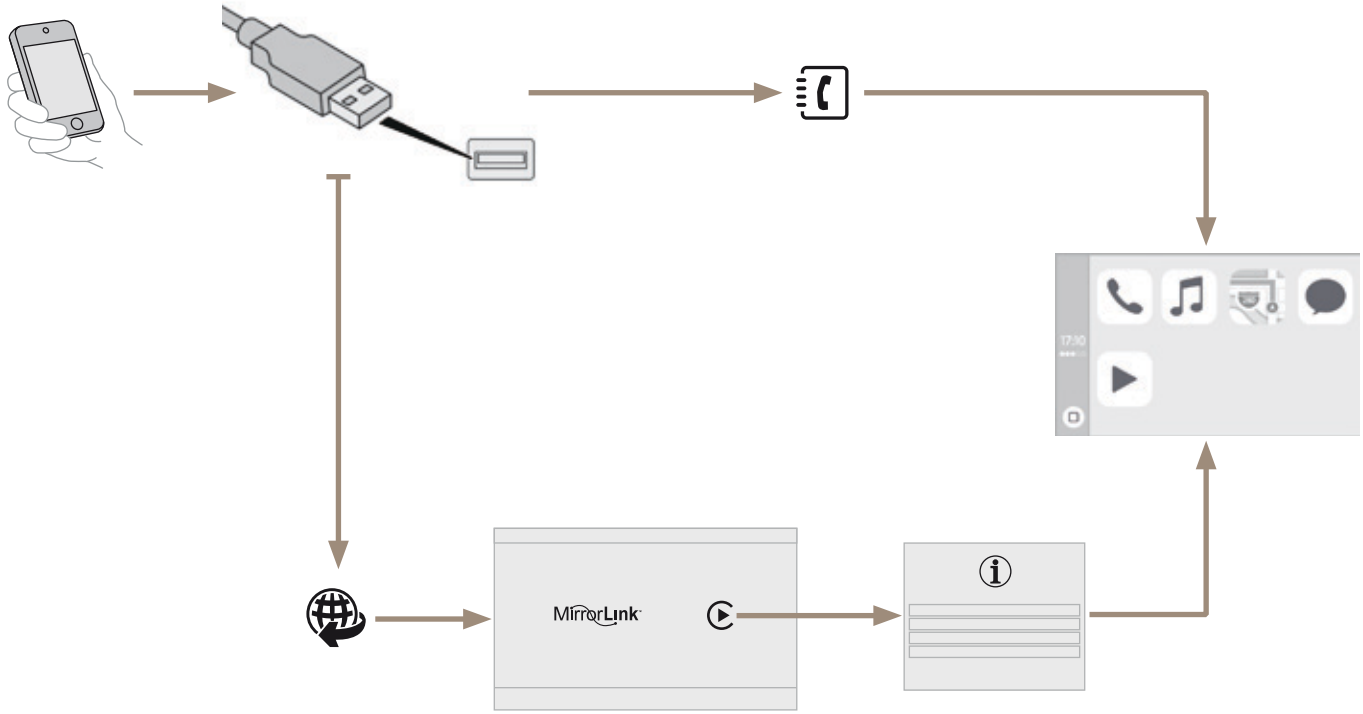
Voice recognition

Press the end of the lighting control stalk to start voice recognition of your smartphone via the system.
Voice recognition requires a compatible smartphone connected to the vehicle by Bluetooth®.


Level 1
Level 2
Level 3
MirrorLink
16:19
MirrorLink

Level 1		Level 2		Level 3		Comments
	Connected services ↓ **MirrorLink™**					Access or return to the applications already downloaded to your smartphone and adapted to MirrorLink™ technology.
						Access to a menu list depending on the application chosen. "Back": abandon the current operation, go up one level. "Home": access or return to the "Car mode" page.
						Access to the "Connected services" primary page.

CarPlay®



CarPlay® smartphone connection

! As a safety measure and because it requires sustained attention by the driver, using a smartphone when driving is prohibited.
All operations must be done with the **vehicle stationary**.

i The synchronisation of a smartphone allows applications on a smartphone that are adapted to the CarPlay® technology to be displayed in the vehicle's screen.
As the principles and standards are constantly evolving, it is recommended that you update the operating system of your smartphone.
For the list of eligible smartphones, connect to the brand's internet website in your country.

i As a safety measure, applications can only be viewed with the vehicle stationary; display is interrupted once the vehicle is moving.

Connect a USB cable. The smartphone charges when connected by a USB cable.

Press "**Telephone**" to display the CarPlay® interface.

Or

Connect the USB cable. The smartphone is charged while connected by the USB cable.

From the system, press "**Connected services**" to display the primary page.

Press on "**CarPlay**" to display the CarPlay® interface.

i During the procedure, one or more screen pages relating to certain functions are displayed on connection.

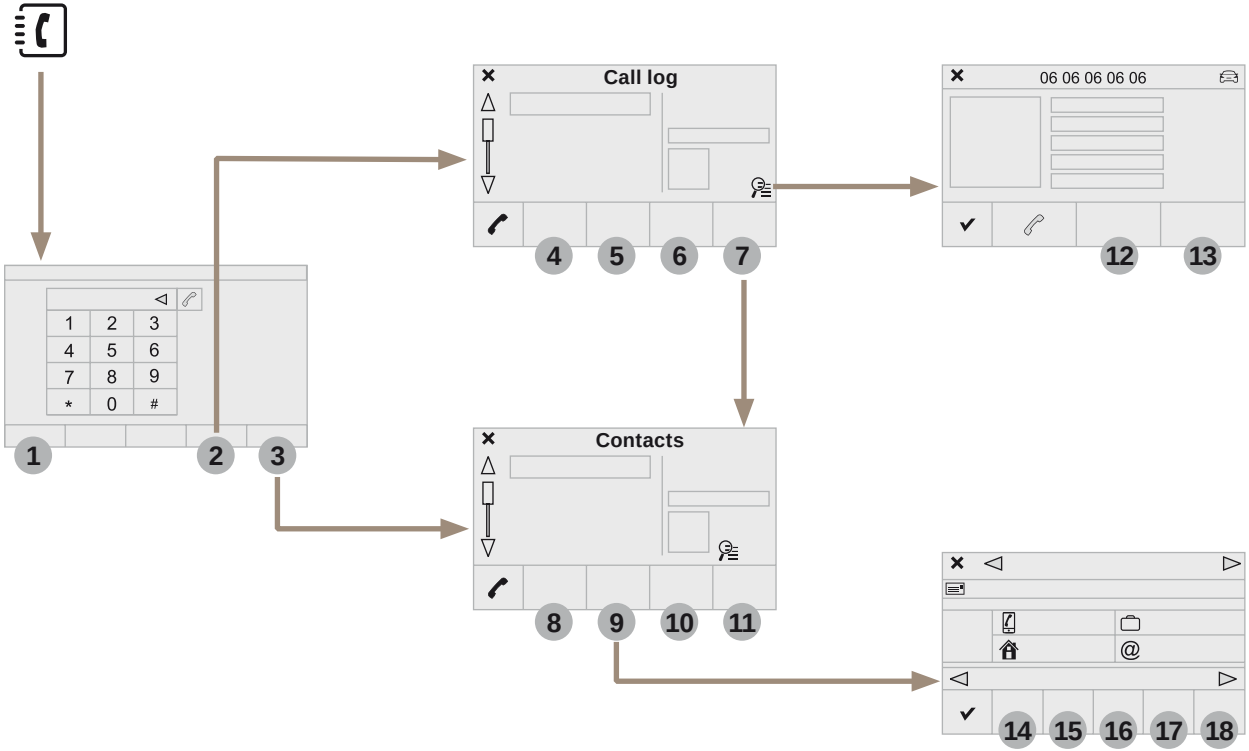
When the telephone menu is displayed, on connecting the USB cable the display changes automatically to CarPlay mode.
If a menu other than the telephone menu is displayed, on connecting the USB cable a message is displayed in the upper banner indicating the activation of the CarPlay mode.
Press on Open to display the CarPlay mode.

Voice recognition

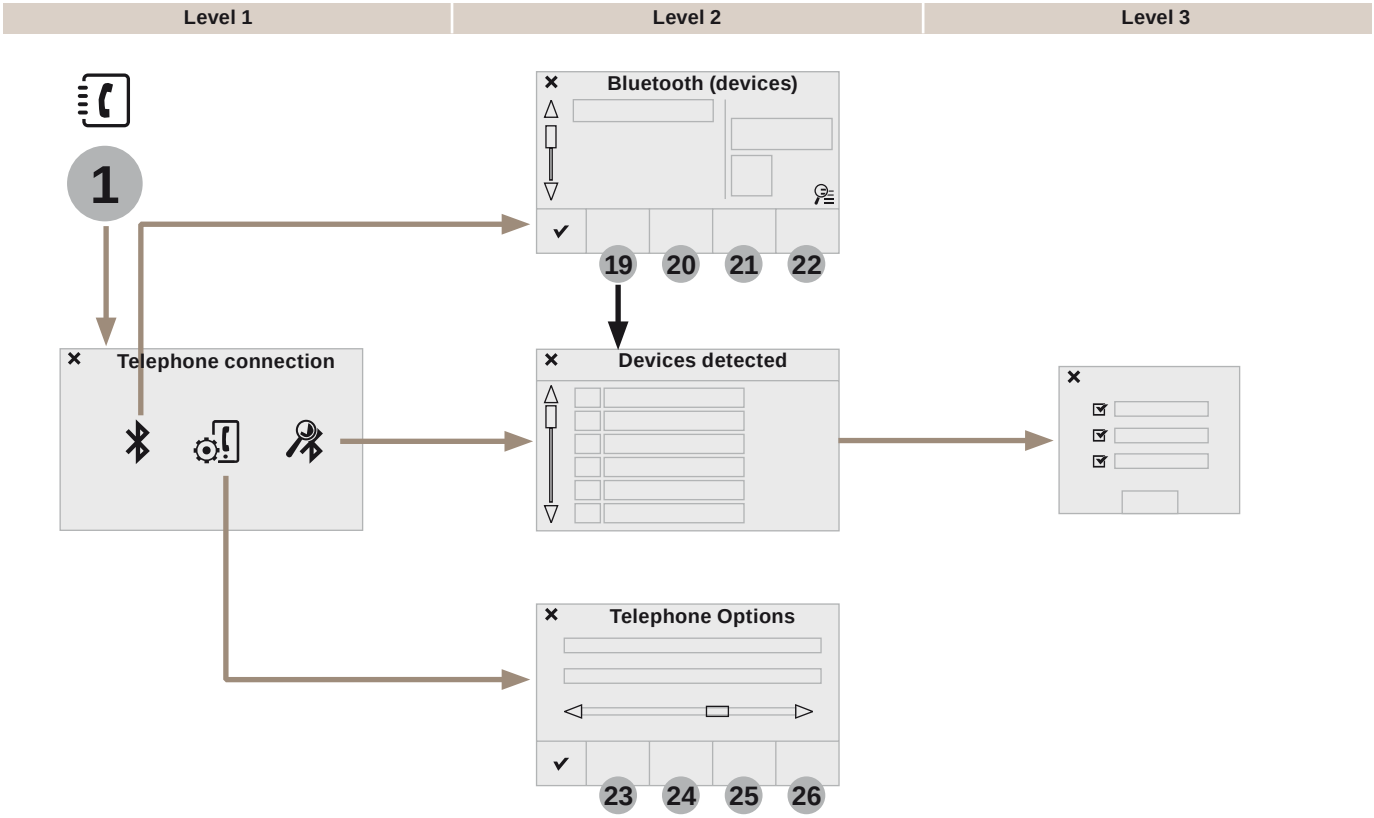
Press the end of the lighting control stalk to start voice recognition of your smartphone via the system.

Telephone

Level 1	Level 2	Level 3



Level 1		Level 2		Level 3		Comments
	Telephone ↓ Call log		All calls			After making choices, start the call.
			Incoming calls			
			Outgoing calls			
			Contacts			
			Magnifying glass		View	
					Create	
			Call			
	Telephone ↓ Contacts		Addresses			After making choices, start the call.
			View		Create	
					Modify	
					Delete	
					Delete all	
					By name	
					Confirm	
			Navigate to			
			Search for contact			
			Call			


Level 1
Level 2
Level 3
1
Telephone connection
Bluetooth (devices)
19
20
21
22
Devices detected
Telephone Options
23
24
25
26

Level 1	Level 2	Level 3	Comments
Telephone connection ↓ Secondary page ↓ Bluetooth connection	Search		Start the search for another peripheral device to connect.
	Connect / Disconnect		Start or stop the Bluetooth® connection to the selected peripheral device.
	Update		Import the contacts from the selected telephone to store them in the audio system.
	Delete		Delete the selected telephone.
	Confirm		Save the settings.
Telephone connection ↓ Secondary page ↓ Search for devices		Telephone	Start the search for peripheral devices.
	Devices detected	Audio streaming	
		Internet	
Telephone connection ↓ Secondary page ↓ Telephone Options	Put on hold		Cut the microphone temporarily so that the contact cannot hear your conversation with a passenger.
	Update		Import the contacts from the selected telephone to save then in the audio system.
	Ringtones		Choose the telephone ringtone and volume.
	Memory info.		Contact records used and free, percentage of storage space used by internal contacts and Bluetooth® contacts.
	Confirm		Save the settings.

Pairing a Bluetooth® telephone

! For reasons of safety and because they require prolonged attention on the part of the driver, the operations for pairing the Bluetooth® mobile telephone to the hands-free system of the audio system must be carried out with the **vehicle stationary**.

Procedure (short) from the telephone

In the Bluetooth® menu of your device, select the system name in the list of devices detected.

Enter a code of at least 4 figures in the device and confirm.

✔ Enter this same code in the system, select "**OK**" and confirm.

Procedure from the system

Activate the telephone's Bluetooth® function and ensure that it is "visible to all" (telephone configuration).

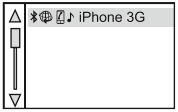
Press on **Telephone** to display the primary page.

1 Press on the secondary page.

Select "**Bluetooth connection**".

19 Select "**Search for devices**". The list of telephones detected is displayed.

i If the telephone is not detected, it is recommended that you switch the Bluetooth® function on your telephone off and then on again.



Select the name of the desired peripheral from the list and "**Confirm**".

✔ Enter a code of at least 4 figures for the connection then "**Confirm**".

Enter this same code in the telephone then accept the connection.

The system offers to connect the telephone:
- in "**Telephone**" (hands-free kit, telephone only),
- in "**Audio streaming**" (streaming: wireless playing of audio files from the telephone),
- in "**Internet**" (internet browsing, only if your telephone is compatible with the "DUN" Dial-Up Networking Bluetooth® standard).

Select one or more profiles and confirm.

! The services available depend on the network, the SIM card and the compatibility of the Bluetooth® telephone used. Check the telephone manual and with your network provider for details of the services available to you.

! The ability of the system to connect with only one profile depends on the telephone. The three profiles may all connect by default.

Visit www.citroen.co.uk for more information (compatibility, additional help, ...).

The recognised telephone appears in the list.

Depending on your telephone, you may be asked to accept automatic connection every time the ignition is switched on.

! Depending on the type of telephone, the system will ask you to accept or not the transfer of your contacts.

If not, select "**Update**".

On return to the vehicle, if the last telephone connected is present again, it is reconnected automatically and within around 30 seconds after switching on the ignition the pairing is done without any action on your part, with (Bluetooth® activated).
To modify the automatic connection mode, select the telephone in the list then select the desired profile.

Connecting a Bluetooth® peripheral device

Automatic reconnection

On switching on the ignition, the telephone connected when the ignition was last switched off is automatically reconnected, if this connection mode had been activated during the pairing procedure.

The connection is confirmed by the display of a message and the name of the telephone.

Manual connection

Press on **Telephone** to display the primary page.

Press on the secondary page.

Select "**Bluetooth**" to display the list of paired peripherals.

Select the peripheral to connect.

Press on "**Search for devices**".

The connection is confirmed by the display of a message and the name of the telephone.

Managing paired telephones

This function allows the connection or disconnection of a peripheral device as well as the deletion of a pairing.

Press on **Telephone** to display the primary page.

1 Press on the secondary page.

Select "**Bluetooth**" to display the list of paired peripheral devices.

Select the peripheral in the list.

19 Select "**Search for devices** "

Or

20 "**Connect / Disconnect**" to start or end the Bluetooth connection with the selected device.

Or

22 "**Delete**" to delete the pairing.

Receiving a call

An incoming call is announced by a ring and a superimposed display in the screen.

SRC Make a short press on the steering mounted **TEL** button to accept an incoming call.

+2s Make a long press

SRC on the steering mounted **TEL** button to reject the call.

Or

Select "**End call**".

Making a call

Using the telephone is not recommended while driving.
Park the vehicle.
Make the call using the steering mounted controls.

Calling a new number

Press on **Telephone** to display the primary page.

Enter the phone number using the digital keypad.
Press "**Call**" to start the call.

Calling a contact

Press on **Telephone** to display the primary page.

+2s Or make a long press

SRC on the steering mounted **TEL** button.

3 Select "**Contacts**".

Select the desired contact from the list offered.

Select "**Call**".

Calling a recently used number

Press on **Telephone** to display the primary page.

2 Select "**Call log**".

Select the desired contact from the list offered.

i It is always possible to make a call directly from the telephone; park the vehicle first as a safety measure.

Managing contacts / entries

Press on **Telephone** to display the primary page.

3 Select "**Contacts**".

9 Select "**View**".

14 Select "**Create**" to add a new contact, observing the "international format".

Or

15 "**Modify**" to edit the selected contact.

Or

16 "**Delete**" to delete the selected contact.

Or

17 "**Delete all**" to delete all information for the selected contact.

18 Select "**By name**" to view the list of contacts.

Frequently asked questions

The following table groups together the answers to the most frequently asked questions concerning your audio system.

Navigation

QUESTION	ANSWER	SOLUTION
The route calculation is not successful.	The route settings may conflict with the current location (exclusion of toll roads on a toll motorway).	Check the route settings in the "Navigation" menu.
The POIs do not appear.	The POIs have not been selected.	Select the POIs in the list of POIs.
The Risk areas audible warning does not work.	The audible warning is not active.	Activate audible warnings in the "Navigation" menu.
The system does not suggest a detour around an incident on the route.	The guidance criteria do not take account of TMC messages.	Select the "Information" function in the list of route settings.
I receive a Risk areas alert which is not on my route.	Other than guidance, the system announces all Risk areas positioned in a cone located in front of the vehicle. It may provide an alert for Risk areas located on nearby or parallel roads.	Zoom in on the map to view the exact position of the Risk areas. Select "On the route" to no longer receive alerts other than navigation instructions or to reduce the time for the announcement.

QUESTION	ANSWER	SOLUTION
Certain traffic jams along the route are not indicated in real time.	On starting, it is several minutes before the system begins to receive the traffic information.	Wait until the traffic information is being received correctly (display of the traffic information icons on the map).
	The filters are too restrictive.	Modify the settings.
	In certain countries, only major routes (motorways...) are listed for the traffic information.	This phenomenon is normal. The system is dependent on the traffic information available.
The altitude is not displayed.	On starting, the initialisation of the GPS may take up to 3 minutes to receive more than 4 satellites correctly.	Wait until the system has started up completely so that there is GPS coverage by at least 4 satellites.
	Depending on the geographical environment (tunnel...) or the weather, the conditions of reception of the GPS signal may vary.	This phenomenon is normal. The system is dependent on the GPS signal reception conditions.

Radio

QUESTION	ANSWER	SOLUTION
The quality of reception of the radio station listened to gradually deteriorates or the stored stations do not function (no sound, 87.5 Mhz is displayed...).	The vehicle is too far from the transmitter used by the station listened to or there is no transmitter in the geographical area through which the vehicle is travelling.	Activate the "RDS" function by means of the short-cut menu to enable the system to check whether there is a more powerful transmitter in the geographical area.
	The environment (hills, buildings, tunnels, basement car parks...) block reception, including in RDS mode.	This phenomenon is normal and does not indicate a fault with the audio system.
	The aerial is absent or has been damaged (for example when going through a car wash or into an underground car park).	Have the aerial checked by a CITROËN dealer.
I cannot find some radio stations in the list of stations received.	The station is not received or its name has changed in the list.	Press and hold the "List" button at the steering mounted controls to update the list of stations received or press on the system update function: "Update list".
The name of the radio station changes.	Some radio stations send other information in place of their name (the title of the song for example). The system interprets this information as the name of the station.	

Media

QUESTION	ANSWER	SOLUTION
Playback of my USB memory stick starts only after a very long wait (around 2 to 3 minutes).	Some files supplied with the memory stick may greatly slow down access to reading the memory stick (multiplication by 10 of the catalogue time).	Delete the files supplied with the memory stick and limit the number of sub-folders in the file structure on the memory stick.
When I connect my iPhone as a telephone and to the USB port at the same time, I am unable to play the music files.	When the iPhone connects automatically as a telephone, it forces the streaming function. The streaming function takes the place of the USB function which is then not useable, there is a period without sound of the track being played with Apple® players.	Disconnect and reconnect to the USB port (the USB function takes priority over streaming).
The CD is ejected automatically or is not played by the player.	The CD is inserted upside down, is unplayable, does not contain any audio data or contains an audio format which the player cannot play.	Check that the CD is inserted in the player the right way up. Check the condition of the CD: the CD cannot be played if it is too badly damaged. Check the content in the case of a recorded CD: refer to the advice in the "AUDIO" section. The audio system's CD player does not play DVDs. Some recorded CDs will not be played by the audio system because they are not of adequate quality.
	The CD has been recorded in a format that is not compatible with the player (udf...).	
	The CD is protected by an anti-pirating protection system which is not recognised by the audio system.	
There is a long waiting period following the insertion of a CD or connection of a USB memory stick.	When a new medium is inserted, the system reads a certain amount of data (directory, title, artist, etc.). This may take from a few seconds to a few minutes.	This phenomenon is normal.

QUESTION	ANSWER	SOLUTION
The CD player sound is poor.	The CD used is scratched or of poor quality.	Insert good quality CDs and store them in suitable conditions.
	The audio equipment settings (bass, treble, ambiences) are unsuitable.	Set the treble or bass level to 0, without selecting an ambience.
Some characters in the media information are not displayed correctly while playing.	The audio system does not display some types of characters.	Use standard characters to name tracks and folders.
Playing of streaming files does not start.	The peripheral device connected does not support automatic play.	Start the playback from the device.
The names of tracks and the track length are not displayed on the screen when streaming audio.	The Bluetooth profile does not allow the transfer of this information.	

Settings

QUESTION	ANSWER	SOLUTION
In changing the setting of treble and bass the equalizer setting is deselected.	The selection of an equalizer setting imposes the balance settings. Modifying one without the other is not possible.	Modify the balance or equalizer settings to obtain the desired musical ambience.
In changing the equalizer setting, treble and bass return to zero.		
When changing the balance settings, the distribution setting is deselected.	The selection of a distribution setting imposes the balance settings. Modifying one without the other is not possible.	Modify the balance or distribution settings to obtain the desired musical ambience.
When changing an distribution setting, the balance setting is deselected.		
When the "All passengers" mode is selected, the distribution is not as I would like.	The choice of an "All passengers" distribution setting can be programmed.	Modify the distribution setting using the slider on the touch screen.

QUESTION	ANSWER	SOLUTION
There is a difference in sound quality between the different audio sources.	For optimum sound quality, the audio settings for Loudness, Ambience, Treble, Bass, Volume can be adapted to the different sound sources, which may result in audible differences when changing source.	Check that the audio settings (Loudness, Ambience, Treble, Bass, Volume) are adapted to the sources listened to. Adjust Balance, Treble and Bass to the middle position, select the "None" musical ambience and set the loudness correction to the "Active" position in CD mode or to the "Inactive" position in radio mode.
With the engine off, the system switches off after a few minutes of use.	When the engine is switched off, the system's operating time depends on the state of charge of the battery. The switch-off is normal: the system switches to economy mode and switches off to prevent discharging of the vehicle's battery.	Start the vehicle's engine to increase the battery charge.

Telephone

QUESTION	ANSWER	SOLUTION
I cannot connect my Bluetooth telephone.	The telephone's Bluetooth function may be switched off or the telephone may not be visible.	Check that your telephone's Bluetooth function is switched on. Check in the telephone settings that it is "visible to all".
	The Bluetooth telephone is not compatible with the system.	You can check the compatibility of your telephone at www.citroen.co.uk (services).
The volume of the telephone connected in Bluetooth mode is inaudible.	The volume depends both on the system and on the telephone.	Increase the volume of the audio system, to maximum if required, and increase the volume of the telephone if necessary.
	The ambient noise level has an influence on the quality of telephone communication.	Reduce the ambient noise level (close the windows, reduce the booster fan speed, slow down...).
Some contacts are duplicated in the list.	The options for synchronizing contacts are synchronizing the contacts on the SIM card, the contacts on the telephone, or both. When both synchronizations are selected, some contacts may be duplicated.	Select "Display SIM card contacts" or "Display telephone contacts".
Contacts are not shown in alphabetical order.	Some telephones offer display options. Depending on the settings chosen, contacts can be transferred in a specific order.	Modify the display setting in the telephone directory.
The system does not receive SMS text messages.	The Bluetooth mode does not permit sending SMS text messages to the system.	

MAGNETI MARELLI

MM-BTEL
SMEG+ iV2

E2 10R-04 14155

CE 0682

COFETEL : RCPMASM15-1111

La operación de este equipo está sujeta a las siguientes dos condiciones: (1) es posible que este equipo o dispositivo no cause interferencia perjudicial y (2) este equipo o dispositivo debe aceptar cualquier interferencia, incluyendo la que pueda causar su operación no deseada.
The operation of this equipment is subject to the following two conditions: (1) it is possible that this equipment or device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) the equipment or device must accept any interference, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

NTC
Type Approved
No.ESD - 1510899C

NAME
ICT

Class A Equipment (Industrial Broadcasting & Communication Equipment):
이 기기는 업무용(A급) 전자파 적합기기로서 판매자 또는 사용자는 이 점을 주의하시기 바라며, 가정외의 지역에서 사용하는 것을 목적으로 합니다.

MSIP -CMM-RX2-SMEGIV2

מספר אישור אלחוטי של משרד התקשורת הוא 51-52173

אסור להחליף את האנטנה המקורית של המכשיר, ולא לעשות בו כל שינוי טכני אחר

AGREE PAR L'ANRT MAROC
Numéro d'agrément : MR 10436 ANRT 2015
Date d'agrément : 29/05/2015

IC A SA
TA - 2015/372
APPROVED

TRA
REGISTERED No:
ER39309/15
DEALER No:
0016935/09

INDOTEL identification for Dominican republic

CONATEL : 2015-06-I-0000190

Aprobado CNC C-14786

INCM: 16EBP15

TRC/SS/2015/258

ESD

H 005 15
P1615057400

Type Approved Reg. No.
2015 / 033

R 005-101030
T AD15-0101005

IctQATAR
Type Approval reg.no.:
CRA/SA/2015/R-4814

MS
SIRIM

ANATEL
Agência Nacional de Telecomunicações
2183-15-5386
(01) 0789838176 105 3

CCAH15LP1260T4

R33724

41554/SDPPI/2015
5142

SyTRA
REGISTERED No:
2015 / 0725

BOCRA
REGISTERED No:
2015/2058

Agrée par l'ARPT.
Référence d'agrément :
721/IR/AGR/PC/ARPT/2015

1024

Este equipamento opera em caráter secundário, isto é, não tem direito à proteção contra interferência prejudicial, mesmo de estações do mesmo tipo e não pode causar interferência a sistemas operando em caráter primário.

PD 2795

OMAN - TRA
TA-R/2604/15
D100428

Complies with
IDA Standards
DA105282

Audio system / Bluetooth®

Contents

First steps	378
Steering mounted controls	379
Menus	380
Radio	381
DAB (Digital Audio Broadcasting) radio	383
Media	385
Telephone	390
Audio settings	397
Screen menu map(s)	398
Screen C	398
Frequently asked questions	400

i The system is coded in such a way that it will only operate in your vehicle.

! As a safety measure, the driver must only carry out operations which require prolonged attention while the vehicle is stationary. When the engine is switched off and to prevent discharging of the battery, the audio system may switch off after a few minutes.

First steps

On/Off.

Volume adjustment.

Audio settings:
audio ambiences, treble, bass, loudness, distribution, left/right balance, front/rear fader, automatic volume.

1 Select preset radio station.
Long press: store a station.

LIST Display the list of stations received, CD/MP3 tracks or folders.
Long press: managing the classification of MP3/WMA files/ update the list of stations received.

TA INFO TA (Traffic Announcement) function On/Off.
Long press: access to type of information.

MENU Access to main menu.

SOURCE Select source:
Radio, CD, AUX, USB, Streaming.
Accept an incoming call.

OK Confirmation or display of contextual menu.

Manual step by step search up/down for radio frequencies.
Select previous/next MP3 folder.
Select previous/next folder/genre/ artist/playlist in the USB device.
Navigation in a list.

Automatic search up/down for radio frequencies.
Select previous/next CD, USB, streaming track.
Navigation in a list.

Abandon the current operation.
Up one level (menu or folder).

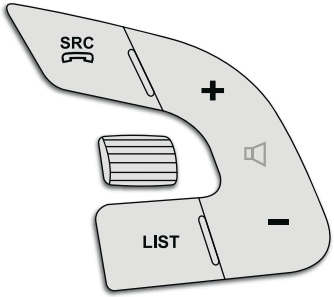
Select screen display between modes:
Full screen: Audio
(or telephone if call in progress)/
In a window: Audio (or telephone if call in progress) - Time or Trip computer.
Long press: black screen (DARK).

BAND Selection of FM / DAB / AM* wavebands.

* Depending on model.

Steering mounted controls

Audio / Bluetooth telephone system



SRC Media: change the multimedia source.
Telephone: start a call.
Call in progress: access to the telephone menu (End call, Secret mode, Hands-free mode).
Telephone, press and hold: reject an incoming call, end a call in progress; other than call in progress, access to the telephone menu.

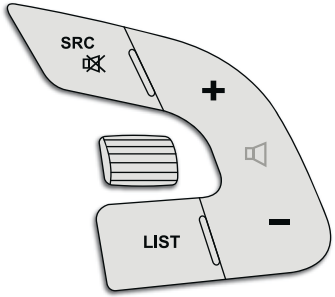
Radio, rotate: automatic search for previous / next station.
Media, rotate: previous / next track.
Press: confirm a selection.

LIST Radio: display the list of stations.
Media: display the list of tracks.
Radio, press and hold: update the list of stations received.

+ Increase volume.

– Decrease volume.

Audio system



SRC Media: change the multimedia source.
Press and hold: mute / restore sound.

Menus

Screen C

"**Multimedia**": Media parameters, Radio parameters.

"**Trip computer**": Warning log.

"**Bluetooth connection**": Connections management, Search for a device.

"**Telephone**": Call, Directory management, Telephone management, Hang up.

"**Personalisation-configuration**": Define the vehicle parameters, Choice of language, Display configuration, Choice of units, Date and time adjustment.

i For a detailed global view of the menus available, refer to "Screen menu map" section.

Radio

Selecting a station

! The exterior environment (hills, buildings, tunnel, car park, below ground...) may prevent reception, even in RDS station tracking mode. This phenomenon is normal in the propagation of radio waves and is in no way indicative of a fault with the audio system.

SOURCE Press **SOURCE** or **SRC** several times in succession and select radio.

BAND Press **BAND** to select a waveband.

LIST Press **LIST** to display the list of stations received in alphabetical order.

▲ ▼ Select the desired radio station and confirm by pressing **OK**.

◀◀ ▶▶ A press changes to the next or previous letter (e.g. A, B, D, F, G, J, K, ...).

LIST A long press on **LIST** builds or updates the list of stations; audio reception is cut momentarily.

RDS

i RDS, if displayed, enables you to continue listening to the same station by automatic retuning to alternative frequencies. However, in certain conditions, coverage of an RDS station may not be assured throughout the country as radio stations do not cover 100 % of the territory. This explains the loss of reception of the station during a journey.

OK When the radio is displayed on the screen, press **OK** to display the contextual menu.

OK Select "**RDS**" and confirm to save. "**RDS**" is displayed in the screen.

Receiving TA messages

The TA (Traffic Announcement) function gives priority to TA alert messages. To operate, this function needs good reception of a radio station transmitting this type of message. When a traffic report is transmitted, the current audio source (Radio, CD, USB, ...) is interrupted automatically to play the TA message. Normal playback of the audio source resumes at the end of the transmission of the message.

TA INFO Press **TA INFO** to activate or deactivate the reception of traffic messages.

Receiving INFO messages

The INFO function gives priority to TA alert messages. To be active, this function needs good reception of a radio station that transmits this type of message. When a message is transmitted, the current audio source (Radio, CD, USB, ...) is interrupted automatically to receive the INFO message. Normal play resumes at the end of the message transmission.

TA INFO Make a long press on **TA INFO** to display the list of categories.

▲ ▼ Select or deselect categories to activate or deactivate the reception of the corresponding messages.

Display RADIO TEXT

Radio text is information transmitted by the radio station related to the current programme or song.

Screen C

OK With the radio displayed on the screen, press **OK** to display the contextual menu.

▲ ▼ Select "**RadioText (TXT) display**" and confirm **OK** to save.

DAB (Digital Audio Broadcasting) radio

Display options:
if active but not available, the display will be struck out.

i If the "DAB" station being listened to is not available on "FM", "DAB FM" is struck out.

Display the name of the current station.

Preset stations, buttons 1 to 6.
Short press: select the preset radio station.
Long press: preset a radio station.

Display the name of the multiplex service being used.

Represents the signal strength for the band being listened to.

Display of RadioText (TXT) for the current radio station.

Digital radio

Digital radio provides a superior audio quality and also additional categories of traffic announcements (TA INFO).
The different "multiplex services" offer a choice of radio stations in alphabetical order.

BAND Change band (FM1, FM2, DAB, ...).

Change of station within the same "multiplex service".

Start a search for the next "multiplex service".

TA INFO Long press: select the desired categories of announcements from Transport, News, Entertainment and Flash special (availability according to the station).

When the radio station is displayed in the screen, press on "**OK**" to display the contextual menu.
(Frequency hopping (RDS), DAB / FM auto tracking, RadioText (TXT) display, Information on the station, ...)

DAB / FM tracking

"DAB" does not have 100% coverage of the country.
When the digital signal is weak, "DAB / FM auto tracking" allows you to continue listening to the same station, by automatically switching to the corresponding analogue "FM" station (if it exists).

MENU Press the "**Menu**" button.

Select "**Multimedia**" and confirm.

Select "**DAB / FM auto tracking**" and confirm

If "DAB / FM auto tracking" is on, there will be a difference of a few seconds in the programme when the system changes to analogue "FM" radio, with sometimes a variation in volume.
When the strength of the digital signal is good again, the system automatically switches back to "DAB"

If the "DAB" station you are listening to is not available on "FM" ("**DAB/FM**" option barred), or if "DAB / FM auto tracking" is not on, the sound will be cut when the digital signal is too weak.

Media

Audio CD

Playing a CD

Insert 12 cm diameter circular compact discs only.
Some anti-pirating systems, on original discs or CDs copied using a personal recorder, may cause faults which are no reflection on the quality of the original player.
Without pressing the **EJECT** button, insert a CD in the player, play begins automatically.

SOURCE To play a disc which has already been inserted, press the **SOURCE** or **SRC** button several times in succession and select "**CD**".

◀◀ ▶▶ Press one of the buttons to select a track on the CD.

LIST Press **LIST** to display the list of tracks on the CD.

◀◀ ▶▶ Press and hold one of the buttons for fast forward or backward.

CD, USB

Information and advice

The audio system will only play files with extension ".mp3" or ".wma" and a compression rate that is constant or variable between 32 Kbps and 320 Kbps.

It is advisable to restrict file names to 20 characters without using special characters (e.g. " ? ; ù) to avoid any playing or displaying problems.

The playlists accepted are types .m3u and .pls.
The number of files is limited to 5 000 in 500 directories on a maximum of 8 levels.

! On a single disc, the CD player can read up to 255 MP3 files spread over 8 directory levels. However, it is recommended that this be kept to 2 levels so as to limit the time taken to access and play the CD.
During play, the folder structure is not observed.

In order to be able to play a recorded CDR or CDRW, when recording it is preferable to select standards ISO 9660 level 1. 2 or Joliet.
If the disc is recorded in another format, it may not be played correctly.
It is recommended that the same recording standard is always used for an individual disc, with as low a speed as possible (4x maximum) for optimum sound quality.
In the particular case of a multi-session CD, the Joliet standard is recommended.

Use only USB memory sticks formatted FAT32 (File Allocation Table).

! To protect the system, do not use a USB hub.

! Do not connect a hard disk or USB device other than audio players to the USB port. This may cause damage to your installation.

CD, USB

Playing a compilation

! Insert an MP3 compilation in the CD player or connect a memory stick to the USB port, directly or via an extension lead.

The system creates playlists (temporary memory) the creation time for which can take from a few seconds to several minutes.
The playlists are updated every time the ignition is switched off or a USB memory stick is connected.
Play starts automatically after a period which depends on the capacity of the USB memory stick.

At a first connection, the order suggested is by folder. When connecting again, the order previously chosen is retained.

SOURCE — To play a disc or memory stick which has already been inserted, press **SOURCE** or **SRC** several times in succession and select "**CD**" or "**USB**".

◀◀ ▶▶ — Press one of the buttons to select the next or previous track.

▲ ▼ — Press one of the buttons to select the next or previous folder in the order chosen.

◀◀ ▶▶ — Press and hold one of the buttons for fast forwards or backwards.

LIST — Press **LIST** to display the menu of folders in the compilation.

▲ ▼ — Select a line in the list.

OK — Select a track or a folder.

↩ — Up a level in the menu.

◀◀ ▶▶ — Skip a track.

USB memory stick - File sorting

LIST

Make a long press on **LIST** or press **MENU**, select "**Multimedia**", then "**Media parameters**" and finally "**Choice of track listing**" to display the different types of sorting.

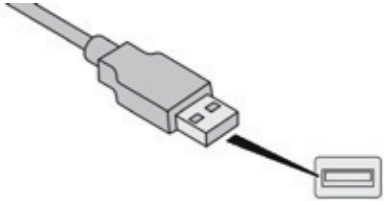
▲
▼

Having selected the desired sorting ("**By folders**", "**By artists**", "**By genres**", "**By playlists**") press **OK**. Then confirm **OK** to save the modifications.

OK

- **By folders**: all folders containing audio files recognised on the peripheral device, in alphabetical order without following the folder structure.
- **By artists**: all of the artist names defined in the ID3 Tags, in alphabetical order.
- **By genres**: all of the genres defined in the ID3 Tags.
- **By playlists**: if playlists have been saved.

USB port



The audio files on a Mass Storage portable player* can be heard through the vehicle's speakers by connecting it to the USB port (cable not supplied).

! To protect the system, do not use a USB hub.

i Management of the device is via the audio system controls.

If the portable player is not recognised by the USB port, connect it to the auxiliary Jack socket.

The Apple® player must be updated regularly for the best connection.

The playlists are those defined in the Apple® player.

The Apple® player must be generation 5 or later.

* Check your player's manual.

Auxiliary socket (AUX)

The auxiliary Jack socket permits the connection of a portable non-mass storage device or an Apple® player if not recognised by the USB port.

! Do not connect a device to the USB port and to the auxiliary Jack socket at the same time.

Connect the portable device to the auxiliary Jack socket using a suitable cable (not supplied).

SOURCE Press the **SOURCE** or **SRC** button several times in succession and select "**AUX**".

First adjust the volume on your portable device.

Then adjust the volume of the audio system.

The display and management of controls is on the portable device.

Streaming - Playing audio files via Bluetooth

Depending on the compatibility of the phone

Streaming allows music files on a telephone to be heard via the vehicle's speakers.
The telephone must support the appropriate Bluetooth profiles (Profiles A2DP / AVRCP).

Pair/connect the telephone: see the "USING THE TELEPHONE" section.

SOURCE Activate the streaming source by pressing **SOURCE** or **SRC**. Control of playback is via the audio system. The contextual information can be displayed in the screen.

! In certain cases, playing of the audio files must be initiated from the telephone.

The audio quality depends on the quality of the transmission from the telephone.

Play mode

The play modes available are:
- Normal: the tracks are played in order, depending on the classification of the selected files.
- Random: the tracks in an album or folder are played in a random order.
- Random all: all of the tracks saved in the media are played in random order.
- Repeat: the tracks played are only those from the current album or folder.

MENU Press **OK** for access to the contextual menu.
or
Press **MENU**.

Select "**Multimedia**" and confirm.

OK

Select "**Media parameters**" and confirm.

OK

Select "**Read mode**" and confirm.

OK

Select the desired play mode and confirm **OK** to save the modifications.

OK

Telephone

Pairing a telephone

First connection

The services offered depend on the network, the SIM card and the compatibility of the Bluetooth telephone used.
Consult your telephone's manual and your operator to find out which services are available to you.

! As a safety measure and because they require prolonged attention on the part of the driver, the operations for pairing of the Bluetooth mobile telephone with the Bluetooth hands-free system of your audio system must be carried out with the **vehicle stationary** and the ignition on.
Visit www.citroen.co.uk for more information (compatibility, additional help, ...).

Activate the telephone's Bluetooth function and ensure that it is "visible to all" (refer to the telephone user guide).

Press **MENU**.

MENU

Select "**Bluetooth connection**" and confirm.

OK

Select "**Search for a device**".

OK

A window is displayed "**Search in progress...**".

Select the telephone to be connected from the list. Only one telephone can be connected at a time.

OK

In some cases, the reference number of the telephone or the Bluetooth address may appear instead of the name of the telephone.

A virtual keypad is displayed on the screen: enter a code with at least 4 digits and conform with **OK**.

OK

A message is displayed on the screen of the telephone: enter the same code and confirm.

If pairing fails, try again; the number of attempts is not limited.

Accept the connection to the telephone.

A message appears in the screen to confirm successful connection.

! Pairing can also be initiated from the telephone by searching for detected Bluetooth devices.

The directory and the calls list can be accessed after the synchronisation period (if the telephone is compatible). Automatic connection must be configured in the telephone to allow the connection each time the vehicle is started.

Streaming - Playing audio files via Bluetooth

Pair/connect the telephone then play the files: see the "Pairing" section.

Managing connections

i The telephone connection automatically includes hands free operation and audio streaming.
The ability of the system to connect to just one profile depends on the telephone. Both profiles may connect by default.

MENU

Press **MENU**.

Select "**Bluetooth connection**" and confirm.

OK

Select "**Connections management**" and confirm. The list of paired telephones is displayed.

OK

Indicates that a device is connected.

Indicates connection of the audio steaming profile.

Indicates connection of the hands-free profile.

Select a telephone and confirm.

OK

Making a call - Dialling

▲
▼
OK

Then select and confirm:
- "**Connect telephone**" / "**Disconnect telephone**": to connect / disconnect the telephone or the hands-free connection only.
- "**Connect media player**" / "**Disconnect media player**": to connect / disconnect only streaming.
- "**Connect telephone + media player**" / "**Disconnect telephone + media player**": to connect / disconnect the telephone (hands-free and streaming).
- "**Delete connection**": to delete the pairing.

SOURCE
OK

To display the "**TELEPHONE**" menu:
- Make along press on **SOURCE** or **SRC**.
- Or, press **OK** to display the contextual menu. Select "**Call**" and confirm.
- Or, press **MENU**, select "**Telephone**" and confirm. Select "**Call**" and confirm.

▲
▼
OK

Select "**Dial**" to enter a number and confirm.

◀◀ ▶▶
OK

Select numbers one at a time using the ◀◀ and ▶▶ buttons and confirm.

Correction allows numbers to be deleted one at a time.

▲
▼
OK

Select **OK** and confirm to start the call.

Making a call - Recently called numbers*

SOURCE

To display the "**TELEPHONE**" menu:
- Make a long press on **SRC/TEL**.
- Or, press the dial to display the contextual menu. Select "**Call**" and confirm.
- Or, press **MENU**, select "**Telephone**" and confirm. Select "**Call**" and confirm.

▲ ▼

Select "**Calls list**" and confirm.

OK

▲ ▼

Select the number and confirm to start the call.

OK

i The calls list includes calls sent and received in the vehicle using the connected telephone.

! It is possible to make a call directly from the telephone; park the vehicle first as a safety measure.

Making a call - From the directory of contacts

SOURCE

To display the "**TELEPHONE**" menu:
- Make a long press on **SRC/TEL**.
- Or, press the dial to display the contextual menu. Select "**Call**" and confirm.
- Or, press **MENU**, select "**Telephone**" and confirm. Select "**Call**" and confirm.

▲ ▼

Select "**Directory**" and confirm.

OK

* Depending on the compatibility of the telephone.

Select a contact then confirm.

Home

Business

Mobile
(depending on the information available in the contact records of the telephone connected).

Select the number and confirm.

Receiving a call

An incoming call is announced by a ring and a superimposed display in the multifunction screen.

"**YES**" to accept the call is selected by default.
Press **OK** to accept the call.
Select "**NO**" and confirm to reject the call.
or
Press one of these buttons to accept the call.

A long press on **ESC** or on **TEL**, **SOURCE** or **SRC** also rejects an incoming call.

Managing calls

During a call, press **OK** to display the contextual menu.

Hang up

In the contextual menu, select "**Hang up**" to end the call.

A long press on one of these buttons also ends the call.

Secret - Mute

▲ ▼ (so that the caller cannot hear)

OK

▲ ▼ In the contextual menu:
- select "**Micro OFF**" to switch off the microphone.
- deselect "**Micro OFF**" to switch the microphone on.

OK

Combined mode

(to leave the vehicle without ending the call)

▲ ▼ In the contextual menu:
- select "**Telephone mode**" to transfer the call to the telephone.
- deselect "**Telephone mode**" to transfer the call to the vehicle.

OK

In certain cases, the combined mode has to activated from the telephone.
If the contact has been cut off, when you reconnect on returning to the vehicle, the Bluetooth connection will be restored automatically (depending on the compatibility of the telephone).

Interactive voice response

▲ ▼ From the contextual menu, select "**DTMF tones**" and confirm to use the digital keypad to navigate in the interactive voice response menu.

OK

Consultation call

▲ ▼ From the contextual menu, select "**Switch**" and conform to return to a call left on hold.

OK

Directory

The system accesses the telephone's contacts directory, depending on its compatibility, and while it is connected by Bluetooth®.

With certain telephones connected by Bluetooth® you can send a contact to the directory of the audio system. Contacts imported in this way are saved in a permanent directory visible to all, whatever the telephone connected.
The menu for the directory is not accessible if it is empty.

SOURCE

Make a long press on **SOURCE** or **SRC** for access to the directory or press **OK**, and select "**Call**" and confirm.

▲
▼

OK

▲
▼

Select "**Directory**" to see the list of contacts.

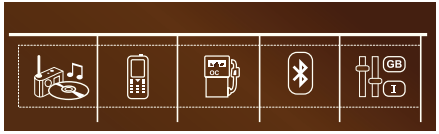
OK

MENU

To modify the contacts saved in the system, press **MENU** then select "**Telephone**" and confirm.
Select "**Directory management**" and confirm.
You can:
- "**Consult an entry**",
- "**Delete an entry**",
- "**Delete all entries**".

Audio settings

Screen C



Press ♫ to display the audio settings menu.

Select and confirm "**Other settings...**" to display the next setting in the list.

OK

The settings available are:
- Ambience,
- Bass,
- Treble,
- Loudness,
- Distribution: Personalised or Driver,
- Left / right balance,
- Fader (front / rear balance),
- Auto. volume.

The distribution (or spatialisation using the Arkamys© system), is an audio process which allows the sound quality to be improved according to the setting chosen, corresponding to the position of the listeners in the vehicle.

The Ambience, Treble and Bass audio settings are different and independent for each sound source.

On-board audio: Arkamys© Sound Staging optimises sound distribution in the passenger compartment.

Screen menu map(s)
Screen C
Main function

1 Option A

2 **Option A1**

3 Option A11

1 Option B...

MEDIA

1 Media parameters

2 **Choice of playback mode**

3 Normal

3 Random

3 Random all

3 Repeat

2 **Choice of track listing**

3 By folders

3 By artists

3 By genres

3 By playlists

1 Radio parameters

TELEPHONE

1 Call

2 **Dial**

2 **Directory**

2 **Calls list**

2 **Voice mail box**

1 Directory management

2 **Consult an entry**

2 **Delete an entry**

2 **Delete all entries**

1 Telephone management

2 **Telephone status**

1 Hang up

TRIP COMPUTER

1 **Vehicle diagnosis**

BLUETOOTH CONNECTION

1 Connections management

1 Search for a device

PERSONALISATION - CONFIGURATION

1 Define the vehicle parameters*

1 Choice of language

1 Display configuration

2 **Choice of units**

2 **Date and time adjustment**

2 **Display parameters**

2 **Brightness**

1 Choice of sounds

* Depending on vehicle equipment.

Frequently asked questions

The following tables contain answers to the most frequently asked questions.

QUESTION	ANSWER	SOLUTION
There is a difference in sound quality between the different audio sources (radio, CD...).	For optimum sound quality, the audio settings (Volume, Bass, Treble, Ambience, Loudness) can be adapted to the different sound sources, which may result in audible differences when changing source (radio, CD...).	Check that the audio settings (Volume, Bass, Treble, Ambience, Loudness) are adapted to the sources listened to. It is advisable to set the AUDIO functions (Bass, Treble, Front-Rear Fader, Left-Right Balance) to the middle position, select the musical ambience "None" and set the loudness correction to the "Active" position in CD mode or to the "Inactive" position in radio mode.
If the bass and treble settings are modified, the ambience selected is cancelled.	The selection of an ambience imposes specific bass and treble settings.	To obtain the desired sound quality, modify the treble and bass settings or select a pre-defined ambience setting.
If the ambience setting is changed, the previous settings for treble and bass are cancelled.		
If the "Driver" / "All passengers" distribution is modified, the balance settings are cancelled.	Choosing a distribution setting imposes a specific balance setting. Modifying one without the other is not possible.	Modify the balance setting or the distribution setting to obtain the desired sound quality.
When changing the balance setting, the "Driver" / "All passengers" distribution is cancelled.		

QUESTION	ANSWER	SOLUTION
The quality of reception of the radio station listened to gradually deteriorates or the stored stations do not function (no sound, 87.5 MHz is displayed...).	The vehicle is too far from the transmitter used by the station listened to or there is no transmitter in the geographical area through which the vehicle is travelling.	Activate the RDS function to enable the system to check whether there is a more powerful transmitter in the geographical area.
	The environment (hills, buildings, tunnels, basement car parks...) block reception, including in RDS mode.	This phenomenon is normal and does not indicate a failure of the audio equipment.
	The aerial is absent or has been damaged (for example when going through an automatic car wash or in an underground car park).	Have the aerial checked by a CITROËN dealer.
Sound cut-outs of 1 to 2 seconds in radio mode.	During this brief sound cut-out, the RDS searches for another frequency giving better reception of the station.	Deactivate the RDS function if the phenomenon is too frequent and always on the same route.
The traffic announcement (TA) is displayed. I do not receive any traffic information.	The radio station does not broadcast traffic information.	Tune to a radio station which broadcasts traffic information.
The stored stations are not found (no sound, 87.5 MHz is displayed...).	An incorrect waveband is selected.	Press the BAND button to return to the waveband on which the stations are stored.

QUESTION	ANSWER	SOLUTION
The CD is ejected automatically or is not played by the player.	The CD is inserted upside down, is unplayable, does not contain any audio data or contains an audio format which the player cannot play. The CD is protected by an anti-pirating protection system which is not recognised by the audio equipment.	- Check that the CD is inserted in the player the right way up. - Check the condition of the CD: the CD cannot be played if it is too damaged. - Check the content in the case of a recorded CD: consult the advice in the "Audio" section. - The audio equipment's CD player does not play DVDs. - Due to their quality level, certain writeable CDs will not be played by the audio system.
The CD player sound is poor.	The CD used is scratched or of poor quality.	Insert good quality CDs and store them in suitable conditions.
	The audio settings (bass, treble, ambience) are unsuitable.	Set the treble or bass level to 0, without selecting an ambience.
I am unable to connect my Bluetooth telephone.	It is possible that Bluetooth is switched off on the telephone or that the telephone has not been made not visible.	- Check that your telephone has Bluetooth switched on. - Check in the telephone's settings that it is "Visible to all".
	The Bluetooth telephone is not compatible with the system.	You can check the compatibility of your telephone on www.citroen.co.uk (services).
The Bluetooth connection is cut.	The battery of the peripheral may not be sufficiently charged.	Recharge the battery of the peripheral device.

QUESTION	ANSWER	SOLUTION
The message "USB peripheral error" or "Peripheral not recognised" is displayed in the screen.	The USB memory stick is not recognised. The memory stick may be corrupt.	Reformat the memory stick (FAT32).
A telephone connects automatically, disconnecting another telephone.	Automatic connection overrides manual connection.	Modify the telephone settings to remove automatic connection.
The Apple® player is not recognised when connecting to the USB port.	The Apple® player is of a generation that is not compatible with a USB connection.	Connect the Apple® player to the AUX Jack socket using a suitable cable (not supplied).
The hard disk or device is not recognised when connecting to the USB port.	Some hard disks and devices need a power supply greater than is provided by the audio system.	Connect the device to the 230 V socket, the 12 V socket or an external power supply. **Caution**: ensure that the device does not transmit a voltage greater than 5 V (risk of destruction of the system).
When streaming, the sound cuts momentarily.	Some models of telephone prioritise connection with the "hands-free" profile.	Delete the "hands-free" connection profile to improve streaming.
In "Random all" play, not all of the tracks are played.	In "Random all" play, the system can only take into account up to 999 tracks.	

QUESTION	ANSWER	SOLUTION
With the engine off, the audio system switches off after a few minutes of use.	When the engine is switched off, the audio system operating time depends on the state of charge of the battery. The switch-off is normal: energy economy mode is activated automatically to preserve the state of charge of the vehicle's battery. (See the "Energy Economy Mode" section).	Start the vehicle's engine to increase the battery charge.
The message "the audio system is overheated" appears on the display.	In order to protect the installation if the surrounding temperature is too high, the audio system switches to an automatic thermal protection mode leading to a reduction of the volume or stopping of the playing of the CD.	Switch the audio system off for a few minutes to allow the system to cool.

A

ABS and EBFD systems 154
Accessories 148, 191
Accessory position 191
AdBlue® 24, 37, 253, 254
Adjusting headlamps 134
Adjusting head restraints 94
Adjusting seat 92, 93
Adjusting the date 47, 55
Adjusting the height and reach
of the steering wheel 99
Adjusting the seat belt height 157, 158
Adjusting the time 47, 55
Advice on driving 184, 185
Airbags 23, 161
Airbags, curtain 164, 165
Airbags, front 162, 165
Airbags, lateral 164, 165
Air conditioning 10
Air conditioning, automatic 103, 106
Air conditioning, manual 103, 104
Alarm 83
Anti-lock braking system (ABS) 154
Anti-pinch 87
Anti-theft 186
Armrest, front 116, 117
Armrest, rear 121
Assistance call 150, 152
Audible warning 149
Audio streaming
(Bluetooth) 342, 345, 388, 391
Audio system 47, 377
Auxiliary 342

B

Back-up key 74
Battery 250, 292-295
Battery, charging 294
Battery, remote control 69, 75-77
Black panel 46
Blanking screen (snow shield) 232
Blind 114
Blind spot sensors 210
Blue HDi 43
BlueHDi 37, 253
Bluetooth (hands-free) 364, 365, 390
Bluetooth (telephone) 364, 365
Bonnet 242
Boot 81
Bottle holder 115
Brake discs 251, 252
Brake lamps 285
Brakes 251, 252
Braking assistance system 154
Braking, dynamic emergency 193
Bulbs (changing) 279, 285

C

Cable, audio 342
Cable, jack 342
Capacity, fuel tank 227
CarPlay connection 359
CD 342, 385
CD, MP3 ..... 342, 385, 386
Central locking 65, 71, 72, 78
Centre console 115
Changing a bulb 279, 285
Changing a fuse 288
Changing a wheel 271
Changing a wiper blade 140, 241
Changing the remote control
battery 69, 75, 76
CHECK 15, 43
Checking the engine oil level 33
Checking the levels 245-247, 249
Checking tyre pressures
(using the kit) 260, 267
Checks 243, 244, 250-252
Checks, routine 250-252
Child lock 180, 181
Children 173, 175-178
Children (safety) 180, 181
Child seats 160, 166, 167, 171-173, 179
Child seats, conventional 172
Child seats, ISOFIX 175-178
Cigar lighter 112
Citroën Localised Emergency Call 150, 152
Closing the boot 65, 81
Closing the doors 65, 71, 72, 80
Configuration, vehicle 16, 47, 53
Connection, Bluetooth 364, 365
Connection, MirrorLink 354, 356
Control, electric windows 87
Control, emergency boot release 82
Control, emergency door 68, 74
Control, heated seats 95
Controls, steering mounted 316, 379
Control stalk, lighting 128, 131
Control stalk, wipers 137, 138, 141
Courtesy lamps 133, 142
Cruise control 213, 218
Cup holder 115

D

DAB (Digital Audio Broadcasting) - Digital radio....340, 341, 383, 384
Date (setting)....47, 55
Daytime running lamps....131, 280, 283
Deactivating the passenger airbag....162
Deadlocking....66, 72
Defrosting....100, 111
Dimensions....307
Dipstick....33, 245
Direction indicators....130, 131, 280, 281, 285
Display screen, instrument panel....14, 15, 203
Display screen, multifunction (with audio system)....47
Doors....80
Doors, rear....181
Drawer, storage....120
Driving economically....10
Driving positions (storing)....97
Dynamic stability control (DSC)....155

E

Eco-driving....10
Eco-driving (advice)....10
Economy mode....239
Electronic brake force distribution (EBFD)....154
Emergency braking assistance (EBA)....154, 155
Emergency braking system....155
Emergency call....150, 152
Emergency warning lamps....149
Emissions control system, SCR....25
Energy economy mode....239
Engine compartment....243, 244
Engine, Diesel....230, 244, 298, 305
Engine, petrol....230, 243, 303
Engines....302, 303, 305
Environment....10, 77

F

Filling the fuel tank....227, 229, 230
Filter, air....250
Filter, oil....250
Filter, particle....249, 250
Filter, passenger compartment....250
Fitting a wheel....275
Fitting roof bars....240
Fittings, boot....122
Fittings, interior....112
Fittings, rear....121
Flap, fuel filler....227, 229
Flashing indicators....130, 131, 281, 283
Foglamps, front....129, 136, 280, 284
Foglamps, rear....129, 285, 287
Frequency (radio)....338, 339
Fuel....10, 230
Fuel consumption....10
Fuel tank....227, 229
Fusebox, dashboard....288
Fusebox, engine compartment....288
Fuses....288

G

Gauge, fuel....227
Gearbox, automatic....10, 198, 206, 251, 292
Gearbox, manual....10, 197, 206, 251
Gear efficiency indicator....203
Gear lever....10
Gear lever, automatic gearbox....198
Gear lever, manual gearbox....197
Glove box....112
Guide-me-home....132

H

Hazard warning lamps....149
Hazard warning lamps, automatic operation....149
Headlamp adjustment....134
Headlamps, automatic illumination....128, 132
Headlamps, dipped beam....280, 282
Headlamps, directional....134, 135, 280
Headlamps, halogen....280
Headlamps, main beam....280, 282
Headlamps, Xenon....280
Headlamp wash....139
Head restraints, front....94
Head restraints, rear....98
Heating....10, 104
Hill start assist....202
Hooks....122

I

Ignition 188, 191
Ignition on 191
Immobiliser, electronic 77, 186
Indicator, AdBlue® range 37
Indicator, engine oil level 33, 43
Indicator lamps, operation 17, 26
Indicator lamps, status 26
Indicators, direction 130, 281
Inflating tyres 10, 308
Inflating tyres and accessories
(using the kit) 260, 267
Input, auxiliary 388
Instrument panels 14-16, 43, 46
Intelligent Traction Control 155
ISOFIX 176, 177
Isofix mountings 175

J

Jack 271, 342
Jump starting 293

K

Key 70, 72, 76, 77
Key, electronic 70-72, 74, 190
Keyless Entry and Starting 70, 73, 77
Key not recognised 190
Key with remote control 64, 65, 186
Kit, hands-free 364, 365, 390
Kit, puncture repair 260
Kit, temporary puncture repair 260, 267

L

Labels, identification 308
Lamp, boot 123, 144
Lamps, parking 131
Lane Departure Warning System
(LDWS) 209
Level, brake fluid 246
Level, Diesel additive 249
Level, engine coolant 247
Level, engine oil 33, 245
Level, power steering fluid 246
Levels and checks 243-247, 249
Lighting, cornering 136
Lighting, dashboard 45
Lighting dimmer 14, 15, 45
Lighting, directional 135
Lighting, guide-me home 131, 132
Lighting, interior 142, 143
Lighting, mood 143
Lighting, welcome 133
Loading 10, 240
Load reduction mode 239
Localised Assistance Call 150, 152
Locating your vehicle 67, 73
Locking 77
Locking from the inside 78
Long objects, transporting 121
Low fuel level 227

M

Maintenance, routine 10
Map reading lamps 142
Markings, identification 308
Massage function 96
Mat 119
Memorising a speed 53, 213
Menu 318, 320, 324, 332,
334, 336, 346, 348, 350, 360, 362
Menu, main 380
Menus (audio) 332, 334, 336
Menus (Touch screen tablet) 313, 317
Mirror, rear view 102
Mirrors, door 100, 101, 210
Misfuel prevention 229
Mountings, Isofix 175
MP3 CD 385, 386

N

Navigation 318, 320, 324
Number plate lamps 286

O

Oil change 245
Oil consumption 245
OIl, engine 245
Opening the bonnet 242
Opening the boot 70, 81
Opening the doors 70, 80

P

Pads, brake 251, 252
Paint colour code 308
Parcel shelf, rear 122
Parking brake 192, 251, 252
Parking brake, electric 19, 20, 31, 193
Parking sensors, front 222
Parking sensors, rear 221
Personalisation 46
Player, Apple® 345
Player, MP3 CD 342, 385, 386
Player, USB 342
Port, USB 113, 342, 387
Pre-heater, Diesel 30
Pressures, tyres 308
Pre-tensioning seat belts 160
Priming pump 298
Priming the fuel system 298
Protecting children 162, 166, 167, 171, 173, 175-178
Puncture 260, 267

R

Radio 338, 339, 342, 381
Radio, digital (Digital Audio Broadcasting - DAB) 340, 341
Range, AdBlue 37, 39
RDS 339
Rear screen, demisting 100, 111
Recharging the battery 294
Reduction of electrical load 239
Regeneration of the particle filter 250
Reinitialising the electric windows 87
Reinitialising the remote control 69, 75, 76
Reminder, key in ignition 188
Remote control 64, 65, 70-73, 77
Removing a wheel 275
Removing the mat 119
Replacing bulbs 279, 285
Replacing fuses 288
Replacing the air filter 250
Replacing the oil filter 250
Replacing the passenger compartment filter 250
Resetting the service indicator 36
Resetting the trip recorder 44
Reset trip 59
Rev counter 14-16
Reversing camera 223
Reversing lamps 285
Risk areas (update) 329
Roof bars 240
Running out of fuel (Diesel) 298

S

Safety, children 162, 166, 167, 171, 173, 175-178
Screen, cold climate 232
Screen, colour and mapping 16
Screen menu map 318, 320, 324, 332, 334, 336, 346, 348, 350, 360, 362, 398, 399
Screen, monochrome 47, 398
Screen, multifunction (with audio system) 47, 380
Screenwash, front 139
Screenwash, rear 141
SCR (Selective Catalytic Reduction) 253
SCR system 37, 253
Seat belts 157, 158, 160, 172
Seat, rear bench 98
Seats, electric 93
Seats, front 92, 93, 97
Seats, heated 95
Seats, rear 98
Serial number, vehicle 308
Service indicator 34, 43
Servicing 10
Settings, equipment 16, 47, 53
Settings (Menus) 346, 348, 350
Settings, system 353
Sidelamps 131, 280, 283, 285
Side repeater 283
Ski flap 121
Snow chains 231
Socket, 12 V accessory 112, 121, 122
Socket, auxiliary 342, 388
Socket, JACK 113, 342, 388
Sockets, audio 113, 387, 388
Sockets, auxiliary 113
Speed limiter 213, 215
Speedometer 14, 15
Spotlamps, side 133, 284
Starting the engine 186
Starting the vehicle 186, 189, 190, 198
Starting using another battery 293
Station, radio 338, 339
Stay, bonnet 242
Steering wheel, adjustment 99
Stopping the vehicle 186, 189, 190, 198
Stop & Start 27, 60, 103, 107, 110, 206, 227, 242, 250, 295
Storage 112, 115-117
Storage box 115
Storage compartments 115
Storing driving positions 97

Stowing rings 124
Sun visor 114
Switching off the engine 186
Synchronising the remote control..... 69, 75, 76

T

Tables of fuses 288
Tank, fuel..... 227, 229
Technical data..... 303, 305
Telephone 360, 362, 364-366
Three flashes (direction indicators)..... 130
Time (setting) 47, 55
TMC (Traffic info) 330
Tools..... 271
Torch 123
Total distance recorder 44
Touch screen tablet 51, 54, 59
Touch screen tablet
(Menus)..... 51, 53, 54, 313, 317
Towball, quickly detachable..... 233
Towbar..... 185, 238
Towbar with quickly detachable towball 233
Towed loads 303, 305
Towing another vehicle 296
Traction control (ASR) 155
Traffic information (TA) 331, 382
Traffic information (TMC)..... 330
Trailer 185, 238
Trajectory control systems..... 155
Trip computer 56, 58-60
Trip distance recorder..... 44
Tyres..... 10, 308
Tyre under-inflation detection 204

U

Under floor storage 124
Under-inflation (detection) 204
Unlocking 70
Unlocking from the inside 78
Unlocking the boot 64
Unlocking the doors 64
Updating risk areas 329
Updating the date..... 55
Updating the time..... 55
UREA 37
USB 342
USB player 113

V

Ventilation 10, 103, 104
Voice recognition 355, 359

W

Warning and indicator lamps 17
Warning lamp, Diesel engine pre-heater 30
Warning lamps 17, 19, 20, 26, 43
Warning lamp, SCR emissions control
system..... 25
Warning lamp, Service..... 21
Washing (advice)..... 223
Weights 302
Wheel, spare 271, 273, 308
Window controls 87
Windscreen, panoramic..... 114
Wiper blades (changing)..... 140, 241
Wiper, rear..... 141
Wipers 30, 137, 138
Wipers, automatic rain sensitive..... 137, 138

Matt paint

The following recommendations should be taken into account in the care and maintenance of the matt paint. They also appear in the servicing and warranty booklet for the vehicle.

- Never clean the vehicle without water.
- Never clean your vehicle in an automatic roller-brush car wash.
- Never polish the body or the alloy wheels. This makes the paint bright.
- Do not use paint restorers, abrasive or polishing products or paint preservers (wax polish, for example) on the paintwork. These products are only suitable for bright finishes. Using them on vehicles finished with matt paint seriously damages the surface finish of the vehicle, resulting in particular in the appearance of irreversible bright or stained areas.
- Never use a high pressure jet washer fitted with a brush as this may scratch the paint surface.
- Never select a wash programme with a final hot wax cycle.

Reproduction or translation of all or part of this document is prohibited without written authorisation from the manufacturer.

The manufacturer declares, by application of the provisions of the European legislation (Directive 2000/53) relating to End of Life Vehicles, that it achieves the objectives set by this legislation and that recycled materials are used in the manufacture of the products that it sells.

Printed in the EU
Anglais

07-16

4Dconcept
Diadeis
Interak

Automobiles CITROËN
Siège social : 6, rue Fructidor 75017 Paris - France
Tél. : +33 (0) 1 58 79 79 79 - www.citroen.com
Société anonyme au capital de 159 000 000 € - R.C.S. : 642 050 199 R.C.S. Paris - SIRET : 642 050 199 00990 - APE : 7010Z

DS AUTOMOBILES

SPIRIT OF
AVANT-GARDE

DSautomobiles.com

Anglais
16DS4.0040

Advice on care and maintenance

Recommendations on the care and maintenance your vehicle are given in the servicing booklet.

Matt paint

If you vehicle is finished with a clear matt lacquer, please observe the following recommendations to avoid damaging the paintwork by the use of an inappropriate cleaning procedures.
These recommendations are also valid for alloy road wheels finished with clear matt lacquer.

! Never clean the vehicle without water.
Never wash your vehicle in an automatic roller brush car wash.
Never polish the vehicle body, nor the alloy wheels. Doing this will make the paintwork shiny.
Do not use paint cleaners, abrasive products or paint polishing or preserving products (such as wax, for example) on the paintwork. These products are only suitable for bright finishes. Application of these products on vehicles with a matt finish will seriously damage the paint surface of the vehicle, giving rise to irreversible shiny or stained areas.
Never use a high pressure jet wash with a lance fitted with a brush, this may scratch the paintwork.
Never select a wash programme that finishes with a hot wax cycle.

We recommend the use of a high pressure jet wash, or at least a water hose with a high output.
We recommend that the vehicle be rinsed using de-ionised water.
Use only a microfibre cloth to dry the vehicle. It must be clean and used without heavy pressure.
Lightly wipe off any fuel stains present on the lacquer using a soft cloth, then leave to dry.
From the range of cleaning and maintenance products recommended and approved by CITROËN, use only products for removing insects and car shampoo.
Always have paint repairs done by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Leather

Leather is a natural product. Appropriate regular care and cleaning is essential for its durability.

i Refer to your vehicle's servicing booklet for information on the special precautions to observe.